User Manual

Tektronix

AWG510 & AWG520
Arbitrary Waveform Generator

071-0099-51

This document applies to firmware version 3.0 and above.

www.tektronix.com

Tektronix, Inc., P.O. Box 500, Beaverton, OR 97077

WARRANTY

Tektronix warrants that the products that it manufactures and sells will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment. If a product proves defective during this warranty period, Tektronix, at its option, either will repair the defective product without charge for parts and labor, or will provide a replacement in exchange for the defective product.

In order to obtain service under this warranty, Customer must notify Tektronix of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period and make suitable arrangements for the performance of service. Customer shall be responsible for packaging and shipping the defective product to the service center designated by Tektronix, with shipping charges prepaid. Tektronix shall pay for the return of the product to Customer if the shipment is to a location within the country in which the Tektronix service center is located. Customer shall be responsible for paying all shipping charges, duties, taxes, and any other charges for products returned to any other locations.

This warranty shall not apply to any defect, failure or damage caused by improper use or improper or inadequate maintenance and care. Tektronix shall not be obligated to furnish service under this warranty a) to repair damage resulting from attempts by personnel other than Tektronix representatives to install, repair or service the product; b) to repair damage resulting from improper use or connection to incompatible equipment; c) to repair any damage or malfunction caused by the use of non-Tektronix supplies; or d) to service a product that has been modified or integrated with other products when the effect of such modification or integration increases the time or difficulty of servicing the product.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN BY TEKTRONIX IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TEKTRONIX' RESPONSIBILITY TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE PRODUCTS IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY PROVIDED TO THE CUSTOMER FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER TEKTRONIX OR THE VENDOR HAS ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Table of Contents

Reference

Appendices

Index

List of Figures

List of Tables

General Safety Summary

Review the following safety precautions to avoid injury and prevent damage to this product or any products connected to it. To avoid potential hazards, use this product only as specified.

Only qualified personnel should perform service procedures.

To Avoid Fire or Personal Injury

Use Proper Power Cord. Use only the power cord specified for this product and certified for the country of use.

Ground the Product. This product is grounded through the grounding conductor of the power cord. To avoid electric shock, the grounding conductor must be connected to earth ground. Before making connections to the input or output terminals of the product, ensure that the product is properly grounded.

Observe All Terminal Ratings. To avoid fire or shock hazard, observe all ratings and markings on the product. Consult the product manual for further ratings information before making connections to the product.

The common terminal is at ground potential. Do not connect the common terminal to elevated voltages.

Do not apply a potential to any terminal, including the common terminal, that exceeds the maximum rating of that terminal.

Do Not Operate Without Covers. Do not operate this product with covers or panels removed.

Use Proper Fuse. Use only the fuse type and rating specified for this product.

Avoid Exposed Circuitry. Do not touch exposed connections and components when power is present.

Do Not Operate With Suspected Failures. If you suspect there is damage to this product, have it inspected by qualified service personnel.

Do Not Operate in Wet/Damp Conditions.

Do Not Operate in an Explosive Atmosphere.

Keep Product Surfaces Clean and Dry.

Provide Proper Ventilation. Refer to the manual's installation instructions for details on installing the product so it has proper ventilation.

Symbols and Terms

Terms in this Manual. These terms may appear in this manual:

***WARNING.** Warning statements identify conditions or practices that could result in injury or loss of life.*

***CAUTION.** Caution statements identify conditions or practices that could result in damage to this product or other property.*

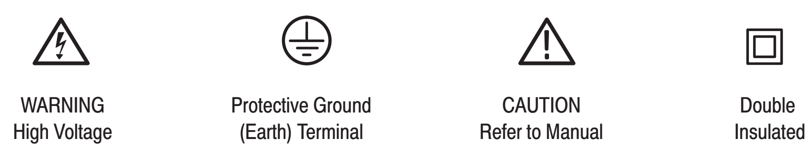
Terms on the Product. These terms may appear on the product:

DANGER indicates an injury hazard immediately accessible as you read the marking.

WARNING indicates an injury hazard not immediately accessible as you read the marking.

CAUTION indicates a hazard to property including the product.

Symbols on the Product. The following symbols may appear on the product:



Preface

This manual provides user information for the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generators.

Manual Structure

The *AWG510 & AWG520 User Manual* contains the following sections:

Getting Started covers initial instrument inspection, available options and accessories, instrument installation procedures, and power on and off procedures. In particular, the installation section covers the procedures required prior to turning on the unit and areas of the instrument that require special care or caution.

Operating Basics describes instrument controls and menus, introduces instrument-specific terminology, provides an overview of the instrument internal structure, operating principles, basic operating procedures, and numeric input methods. This section also provides basic signal editing examples.

Reference describes the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator functions and menu operations.

Appendices describe product specifications, performance verification procedures, and other information.

Conventions

This manual uses the following conventions:

- The term AWG500 refers to information common to the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generators.
- Front-panel button and control labels are printed in the manual in upper case text. For example, CLR, SHIFT, APPL. If it is part of a procedure, the button or control label is printed in boldface. For example, ’Select **CLR**’.
- Menu and on-screen form titles are printed in the manual in the same case (initial capitals or all uppercase) as they appear on the instrument screen. For example, Offset, Vertical. If it is part of a procedure, the menu title is shown in boldface. For example, ’Select the **Vertical** menu’.
- A list of buttons, controls, and/or menu items separated by an arrow symbol (→) indicates the order in which to perform the listed tasks. For example:

  Select **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Offset** (side)→**10MHz** (knob).

  The text in parenthesis indicates the type of button, knob, menu, or form item to select or modify, as described in the following table.

Type	Description
front	Push the indicated front-panel button
bottom	Push the indicated bottom-menu button
side	Push the indicated side-menu button
knob	Turn the indicated front–panel control knob (usually the general purpose knob)
popup	Make selections or change values in the indicated popup menu
dialog	Make selections or change values in the indicated dialog box
screen	Make selections or change values on the indicated instrument screen

Related Manuals

These other manuals are available for the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generators.

- The *AWG500/600 Series Programmer Manual* (Tektronix part number 070-A810-50) provides complete information on programming and remote control of the instrument through the GPIB interface. This manual is a standard accessory.
- The *AWG510 & AWG520 Service Manual* (Tektronix part number 071-0101-50) describes how to maintain and service the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator and provides a complete module-level description of the instrument operation. This manual is an optional accessory.

Contacting Tektronix

Phone	1-800-833-9200*
Address	Tektronix, Inc. Department or name (if known) 14200 SW Karl Braun Drive P.O. Box 500 Beaverton, OR 97077 USA
Web site	www.tektronix.com
Sales support	1-800-833-9200, select option 1*
Service support	1-800-833-9200, select option 2*
Technical support	Email: techsupport@tektronix.com 1-800-833-9200, select option 3* 1-503-627-2400 6:00 a.m. – 5:00 p.m. Pacific time

***	This phone number is toll free in North America. After office hours, please leave a voice mail message.**
Outside North America, contact a Tektronix sales office or distributor; see the Tektronix web site for a list of offices.

Product Description

The AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generators can generate both simple and arbitrary waveforms. The AWG510 generates one-channel differential output, while the AWG520 generates two-channel single-end arbitrary waveforms and function generator waveforms.

The AWG500-Series Generator contains a 1 GHz clock frequency, a 10-bit DA converter, and a 4 M-word waveform memory. The instrument also provides two arbitrary marker outputs per channel and a Digital Data Out option (Option 03) that bypasses the DA converter to directly output the waveform memory digital data.

The AWG510 and AWG520 includes five waveform editors, as described in the following table.

Table 1–1: AWG 500-Series waveform editors

Editor	Description
Waveform	Creates analog waveform data in graphic or tabular form.
Pattern	Creates digital waveform data in timing and table form.
Sequence	Creates sequences of waveforms by combining the waveform files created with the Waveform and/or Pattern Editors.
Text	Edits plain ASCII-format waveform files. For example, you can use the Text editor to edit ASCII-format waveform files that are read from an external device.
Equation	Creates files with equations and compiles them into waveform files.

- FG mode to generate a standard functional waveform easyly

The AWG500-Series Arbitrary Waveform generator allows you to create sine, triangle, square, ramp, and complex waves, as well as direct current and noises signals. It allows you to set waveform attributes such as frequency, amplitude, and offset.

This instrument contains a hard disk drive, a 3.5-inch floppy disk drive, and Ethernet interface for storing and recalling waveform data and instrument settings.

You can remotely control the instrument by sending commands through both the GPIB and 10BASE–T interfaces, as well as transfer waveform data directly from a digital storage oscilloscope to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator instrument using the GPIB interface. This enables you to use the instrument in combination with other measurement equipment and a computer.

Accessories and Options

This section describes the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generator options and standard and optional accessories.

Standard Accessories

The Waveform Generator comes standard with the accessories listed in Table 1–2. The fuse and fuse cap are installed to the instrument when it shipped.

Table 1–2: Standard accessories

Accessory	Part number
User Manual	071-0099-51
Programmer Manual	070-A810-50
Sample waveform floppy disk, 3.5 inch	063-2981-XX
GPIB sample program floppy disk, 3.5 inch	063-2982-XX
Performance check/adjustment floppy disk, 3.5 inch	063-2983-XX
Arb–Express Software Package	063-3763-XX
Arb–Express Software Package, Instructions	061-4288-XX
Fuse, 10 A FAST (UL198G, 3 AG) (installed to the instrument)	159-0407-00
Fuse cap (installed to the instrument)	200-2264-00
U.S. Power Cord	161-0230-01

Optional Accessories

You can also order the optional accessories listed in Table 1–3.

Table 1–3: Optional accessories

Accessory	Part number
Service Manual	071-0101-XX
Front cover	200-3696-01
Rack Mount Kit (for field conversion)	016-1675-XX
GPIB cable	012-0991-00
BNC cable, 50 Ω	012-1342-00

Table 1–3: Optional accessories (cont.)

Accessory	Part number
BNC cable, 50 Ω, double-shield	012-1256-00
SMB cable, 50 Ω	012-1458-00
SMB-to-BNC cable, 50 Ω	012-1459-00
BNC terminator, 50 Ω	011-0049-02
BNC power divider, 50 Ω, DC to 300 MHz, VSWR: 1.2 max.	015-0660-00
BNC low pass filter, 400 MHz	015-0659-00
BNC low pass filter, 200 MHz	015-0658-00
BNC low pass filter, 100 MHz	015-0657-00

Options

Table 1–4 lists the available instrument options:

Table 1–4: Options

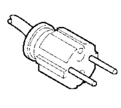
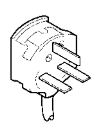
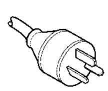
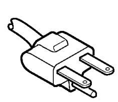
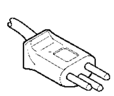
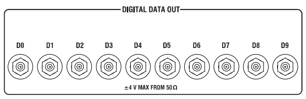
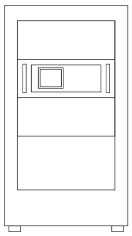
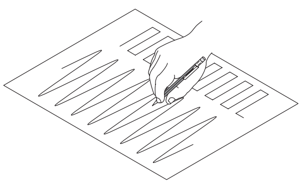
Option	Label	Description
A1 	Universal European power cord	220 V power cord Fuse 5A (T) (IEC 127) Fuse Cap Cable Retainer
A2 	UK power cord	240 V power cord Fuse 5A (T) (IEC 127) Fuse Cap Cable Retainer
A3 	Australian power cord	240 V power cord Fuse 5A (T) (IEC 127) Fuse Cap Cable Retainer
A4 	North American power cord	240 V power cord Cable Retainer
A5 	Switzerland power cord	220 V power cord Fuse 5A (T) (IEC 127) Fuse Cap Cable Retainer

Table 1–4: Options (cont.)

Option	Label	Description
03 	Digital data out	Outputs digital data from the waveform memory directly to the **DIGITAL DATA OUT** connectors on the rear panel without passing through the D/A converter.
1R 	Rackmount	Waveform generator comes configured for installation in a 19-inch wide instrument rack. For later field conversions, order kit # 016-1675-XX.
1S 	WaveWriter S3FTx00	WaveWriter is a PC computer application used to create waveforms for advanced signal generating and processing instruments. Many Tektronix instruments, such as arbitrary waveform generators and oscilloscopes with the “save-on-delta” feature, are enhanced by this program. WaveWriter helps users configure waveforms with a minimum of effort. With the WaveWriter package, you can create new waveforms or edit waveforms acquired from various instrument sources. WaveWriter gives you interactive control of the waveform generating process. WaveWriter operates within the Microsoft Windows™ environment.
10	78 MByte Flash Disk	A 78 Mbyte flash disk addition. The hard disk is deleted when this option is ordered. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator retains the state of the front panel ON/STB switch. The ON/STB switch must be left in the on position to be able to power on and power off the instrument using the principal power switch. ***NOTE:*** If the ON/STB switch is left in the off position, you will not be able to power on/off the instrument using the principal power switch or an external power switch unit.
D1	Certificate with Calibration Data	A Certificate of Traceable Calibration is provided when this option is specified.

Incoming Inspection

Before unpacking the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator from its shipping carton, inspect the package for signs of external damage. If the carton is damaged, notify the carrier. The carton contains the instrument and its standard accessories. Refer to *Accessories and Options* in Section 1.

This instrument was thoroughly inspected for mechanical and electrical defects before shipment. It should be free of dents or scratches. To confirm this, inspect the instrument for physical damage that happened in transit, and test instrument functionality by following the *Tutorial* in Section 2 of this manual. You can also perform a full Performance Verification as listed in *Appendix B*. If a discrepancy is found, contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative.

***NOTE**. Save the shipping carton and packaging materials for repackaging in case shipment becomes necessary.*

Installation

Before you use the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generator, you must check that it is properly installed and powered on.

Installation

Before installation, refer to the *Safety Summary* section at the front of this manual for power source, grounding, and other safety information.

Before you use the instrument, check that it is properly installed and powered on. To properly install and power on the instrument, perform the following steps:

1. Check that the operating environment is correct.

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator operates correctly in ambient temperatures from +10° C to +40° C and relative humidity from 20% to 80%. If the instrument is stored at temperatures outside this range, do not switch on the power until the chassis has come within the operating temperature range. For more operating environment information, refer to Appendix A, *Specifications*.

NOTE*. If you are installing the instrument in a rack, refer to the instruction sheet that comes with the rack mounting kit.*

---

2. Before switching on the power, check that there is nothing blocking the flow of air at the fan and air intake holes. The instrument exhausts air with the fan on its left side. Leave space at the sides of the instrument so that the instrument does not overheat. Here are the minimum space requirements for air flow around the instrument:

Rear:	7.5 cm (3 in)
Left and right :	15.0 cm (6 in)
Bottom:	2 cm (0.8 in)

(The feet on the bottom of the instrument provide the required clearance when set on a flat surface.)

__CAUTION.__ If the air flow is restricted and the internal temperature of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator exceeds the proper operating temperature range, the instrument display a messages ”Power fail or out of temperature limit” and temporary shuts down to protect the internal modules from overheating. To prevent temporary shutdown of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator, do not restrict air flow through the chassis.

If the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator shuts down unexpectedly, improve ventilation around the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator and wait a few minutes to allow it to cool down; then switch the power on again.

__CAUTION.__ You can not power on the instrument when the ambient temperature exceeds the instrument temperature operation range. Wait until the instrument cools down, or the ambient temperature decreases to valid operating temperatures, before turning on the instrument again.

3. Remove the fuse from the fuse holder on the rear panel and check the fuse. To remove the fuse, turn it counter-clock-wise with a screwdriver while pushing it in. There are two types of fuses provided. Table 1–5 lists the fuse types and ratings.

__WARNING.__ Always unplug the power cord from the socket before checking the line fuse.

Table 1–5: Fuse and fuse cap part number

Fuse	Fuse part number	Fuse cap part number
0.25 inch × 1.25 inch (UL 198G,3AG) : 10A FAST, 250 V	159-0407-00	200-2264-00
5 mm × 20 mm (IEC 127) : 5A (T), 250 V	159-0210-00	200-2265-00

__NOTE__. The second fuse listed in the table above is approved under the IEC standards. This fuse is used in equipment sold in the European market.

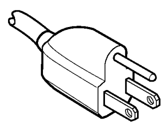
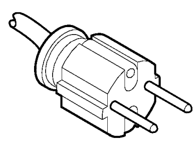
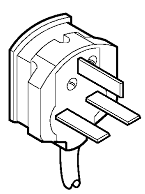
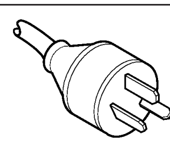
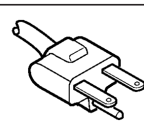
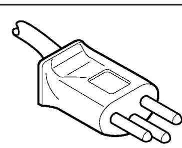
4. Check that you have the proper electrical connections. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator generator operates within the following power supply voltage and frequency ranges:

Line voltage range	100 – 240 V
Line frequency	48 – 63 Hz (100 – 240 V)
Maximum power	600 W

CAUTION. *The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator is shipped with a 115 V power cord. If the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator is to be used with 230 V power, the power cord must be replaced with one appropriate for the power source used. See Table 1–6,* Power cord identification, *for the available power cord types.*

5. Connect the proper power cord from the rear panel power connector to the power system.

Table 1–6: Power cord identification

Plug configuration	Normal usage	Option number
	North America 125 V	Standard
	Europe 220 V	A1
	United Kingdom 240 V	A2
	Australia 240 V	A3
	North America 240 V	A4
	Switzerland 220 V	A5

Powering the Instrument

Before you use the instrument, check that it is properly installed. Read the following text for directions on the correct way to power up and down the instrument.

Standby Power

Push the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** (shown in Figure 1–1) on the rear panel of the instrument. Power is now applied to the instrument standby circuitry. Once the instrument is installed, leave the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** on and use the **ON/STBY** switch, located on the front–panel, to turn the instrument on and off.

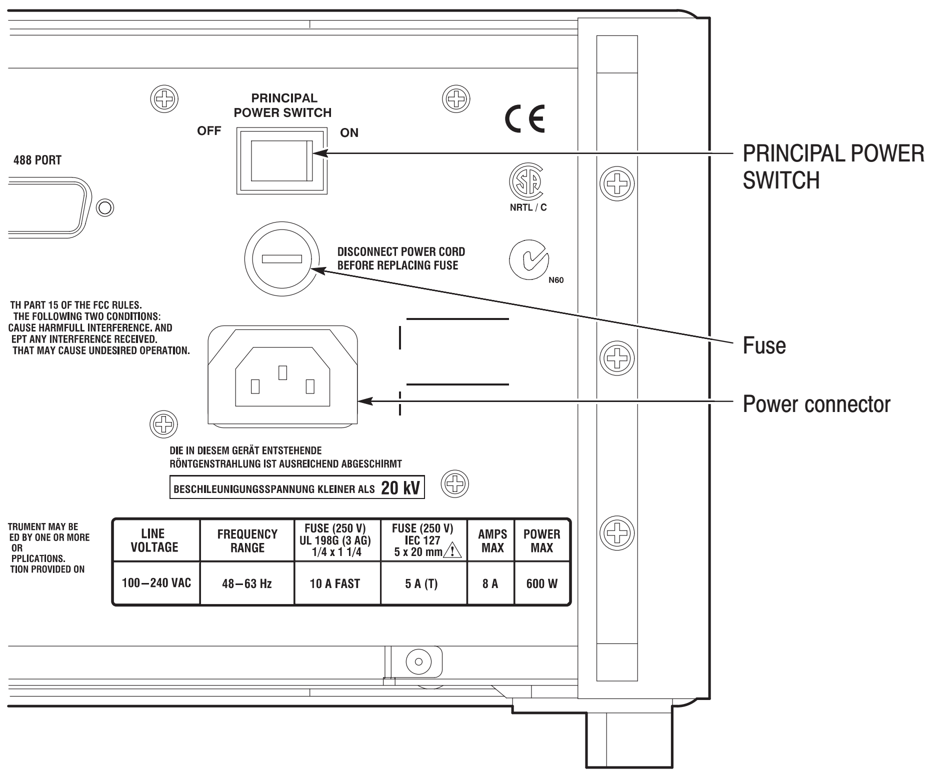


Figure 1–1: Rear panel power switch, fuse holder, and power connector.

Turning on the Instrument

Push the **ON/STBY** switch (shown in Figure 1–2) on the lower left side of the front–panel to power on the instrument. Check that the fan is blowing air out of the instrument.

***NOTE**. The instrument needs to be warmed up for at least 20 minutes and the clock calibrated in order to operate at its optimum accuracy.*

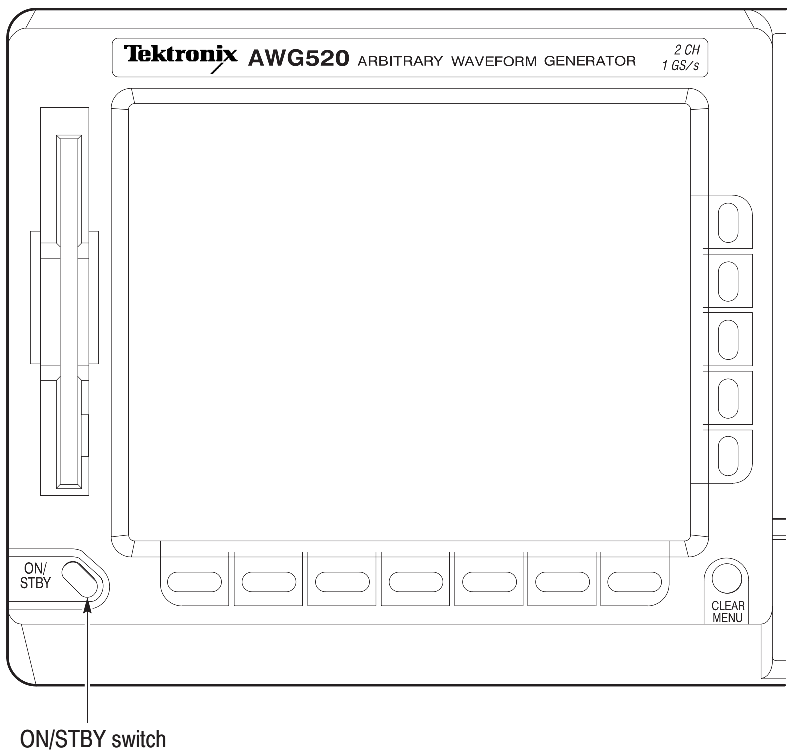


Figure 1–2: Location of the ON/STBY switch

Power-On Diagnostics

The instrument automatically runs power-on self-tests and internal calibration procedures to check that the instrument is operating normally.

Check the results of the power-on self-tests. If all the diagnostic tests are completed without error, the instrument displays *Pass* and then displays the SETUP menu screen.

If the system detects an error, the instrument displays *Fail* and the error code number on the screen. You can still operate the instrument if you exit this state, but the wave output accuracy is not guaranteed until the error is corrected. To exit the diagnosis/calibration mode, push any button. The system goes to the SETUP menu screen.

NOTE*. Contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative if the instrument displays an error message. Make sure to record the error code number.*

Turning Off the Instrument

To power down the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator generator, push the **ON/STBY** switch on the front–panel.

WARNING. *Some components in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator are still connected to line voltage after turning off the instrument from the front-panel* ***ON/STBY*** *button. To remove all power from the instrument, turn the* ***PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH*** *on the back panel to OFF, or disconnect the power cord from the instrument.*

Operating Basics

This section contains the following information:

- *Functional Overview*. Describes the instrument buttons, controls, connectors, and typical screen displays.
- *Basic Operations*. Describes how to operate menus and enter numeric and text values.
- *Editor Overview*. Introduces the waveform editor functions and operations.
- *Setup Overview*. Describes about the SETUP screen, and simple operations.
- *Tutorials*. Contains examples that show the fundamental operating procedures required to use the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to create and output waveforms. These examples quickly introduce you to the basic instrument operation and functions.
- *Menu Structures*. Shows the tree structure of each menu.

Functional Overview

This section describes the names and functions of the front and rear-panel buttons, knobs, and connectors. Also described are typical screen elements such as menus, forms (dialog, pop-up, and so on) and icons.

Front Panel Controls

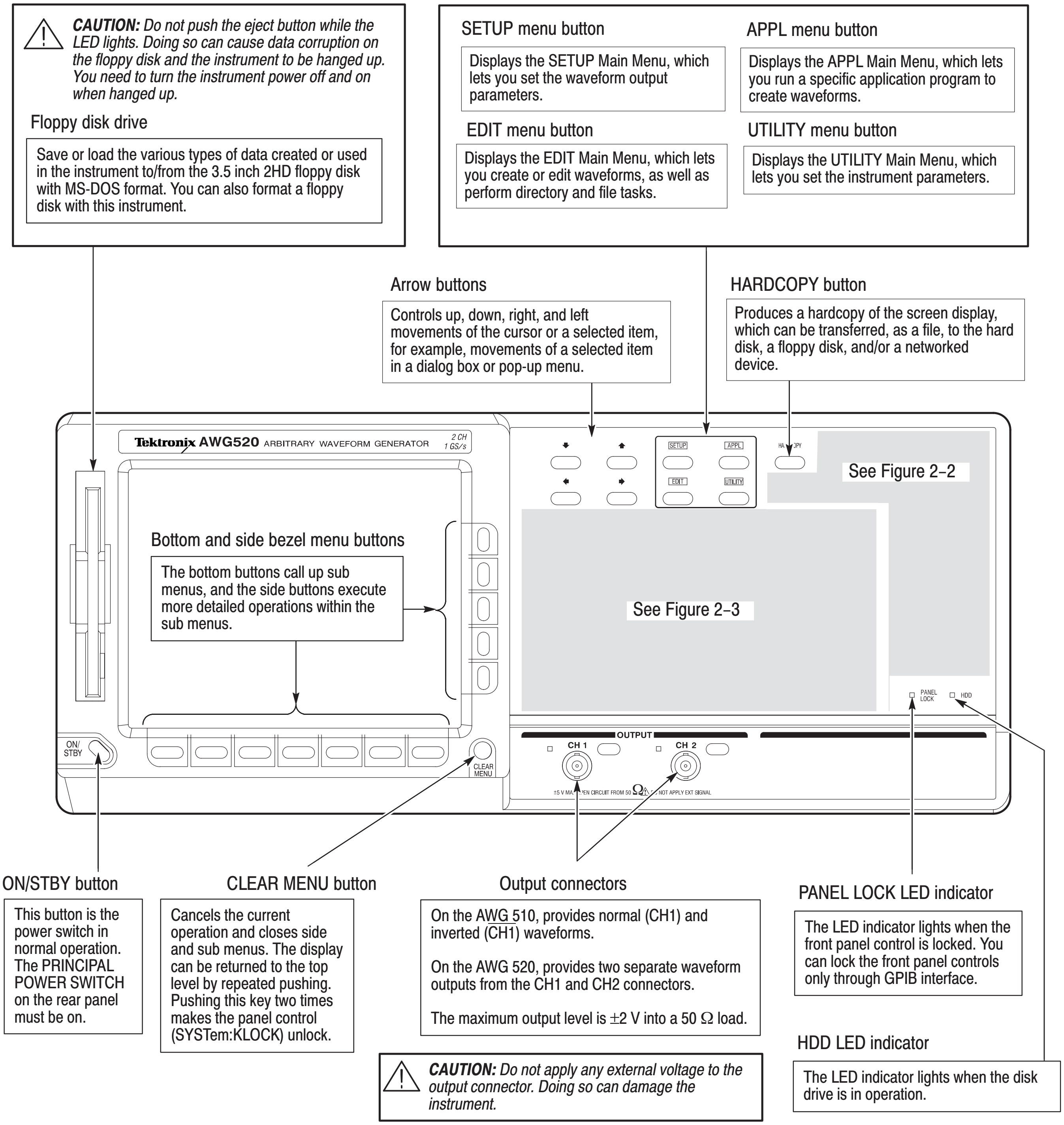


Figure 2–1: Front panel controls

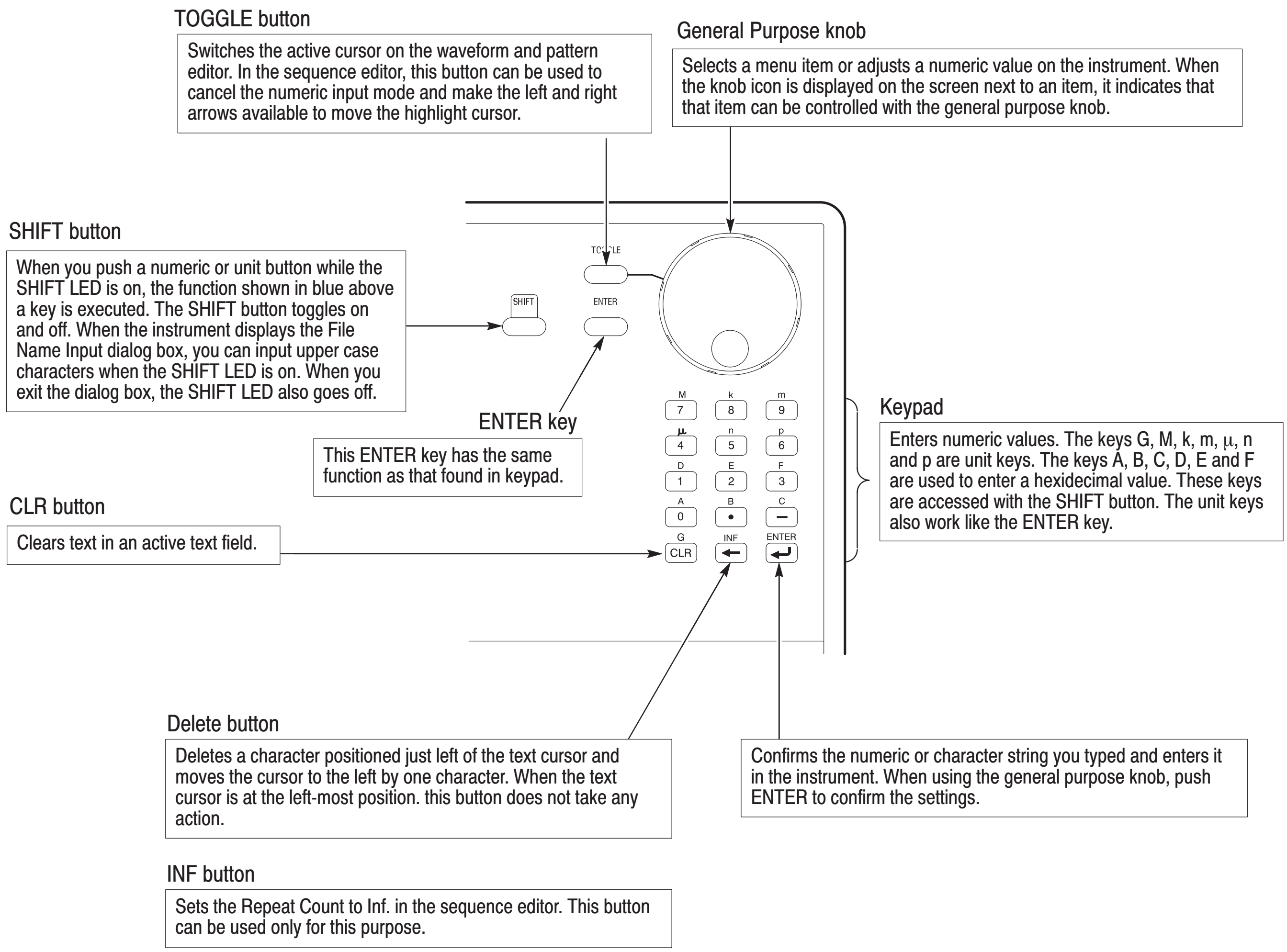


Figure 2–2: Front panel keypad area

QUICK EDIT button

Enters the QUICK EDIT mode from the waveform editor. Use of this button enables you to edit waveforms that have immediate effect on the output signal. Use together with the VERTICAL and HORIZONTAL controls for quick edit.

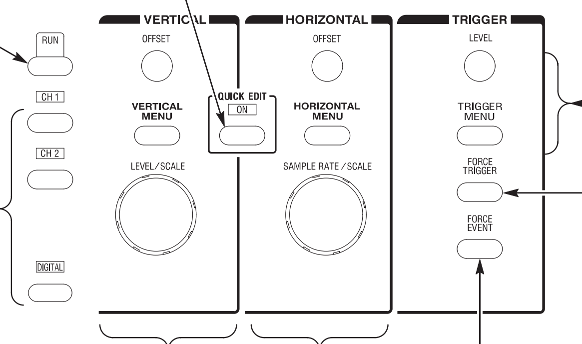
RUN button

Enables waveform output. The signal output depends on the RUN mode settings.

CH1, CH2, and DIGITAL buttons

Selects the channel to set on the SETUP menu screen. When you push the button, the button's LED lights. You cannot select CH1 and CH2 at the same time. You can select either CH1 or CH2, but when you select the DIGITAL, CH1 and CH2 are deselected. Likewise, when you push CH1 or CH2, the DIGITAL button is deselected.

The DIGITAL function is effective only when option 03 is installed. The CH2 function is available only for the AWG 520.



TRIGGER controls

Controls the trigger parameters.

Pushing the TRIGGER MENU button displays the Trigger side menu. This is the same effect as by pushing **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom).

The LEVEL knob adjusts the trigger level.

FORCE TRIGGER button

Pushing the FORCE TRIGGER button generates an internal trigger event.

FORCE EVENT button

Pushing the FORCE EVENT button generates an internal event signal.

VERTICAL controls

Used to control the output vertical axis parameters.

Pushing the VERTICAL MENU button displays the VERTICAL side menu. This is the same effect as by selecting **SETUP** (front)→ **Vertical** (bottom).

The OFFSET knob,adjusts the vertical offset.

The LEVEL/SCALE knob adjusts the amplitude.

HORIZONTAL controls

Used to control the output horizontal axis parameters.

Pushing the HORIZONTAL MENU button displays the Horizontal side menu. This is the same as by selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom).

The OFFSET knob adjusts the horizontal position.

The SAMPLE RATE/SCALE knob adjusts the clock frequency.

Figure 2–3: Front panel trigger and output controls

Rear Panel

> ⚠ ***CAUTION:*** *Only apply signals within the stipulated range to the* ***INPUT*** *connector. Voltages in excess of the stipulated range can damage the instrument.*

> ⚠ ***CAUTION:*** *Do no apply any external voltage to the* ***OUTPUT*** *connector. Doing so can damage the instrument.*

TRIG IN connector
External trigger signal input.

10 MHz REF IN connector
External 10 MHz reference clock signal input.

EXT CLOCK IN connector
External clock signal input.

NOISE OUT connector
Noise signal output.

ADD IN connector
Add signal input.

CLOCK OUT connector
Sampling clock signal output.

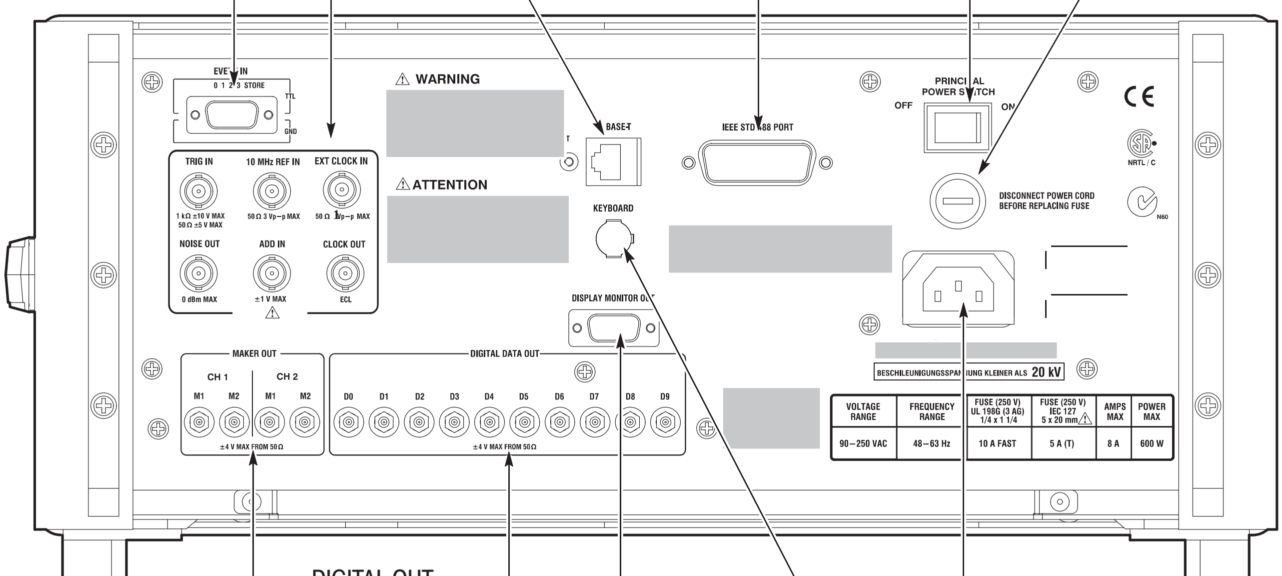
PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH
Applies power to the standby circuit. In addition to this switch being on, the front panel **ON/STBY** switch must also be turned on.

EVENT IN connector
Inputs external event signals. This signal can be used for sequence control in Enhanced mode

10BASE-T connector
Connect to the Ethernet network.

IEEE STD 488 connector
A GPIB connector for remote computer control through an IEEE 488 standard parallel interface.

Power supply fuse holder
The 10 A fast blow and 5 A (T) fuse are used for 115 V and 230 V systems, respectively



DIGITAL OUT connector (Option 03 only)
Outputs waveform digital data D0 to D9.

KEYBOARD connector
Connect to a standard PC 101-key keyboard.

Power connector
Connect the provided power cable to this connector.

MARKER OUT connector
Outputs marker signals. Each channel is equipped with two MARKER OUT connectors.

> ⚠ ***CAUTION:*** *If external voltages are applied to the digital data output connectors, be sure to set the high-impedance control correctly so that signal collisions do not result in output currents or voltages in excess of the rated values.*

DISPLAY MONITOR OUT connector
Connect to an external monitor.

Figure 2–4: Rear panel map

Basic Operations

This section describes the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator menu system and numeric and text input methods.

Menu Operations

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator uses menus to make selections. There are four menu buttons, labeled EDIT, SETUP, APPL, and UTILITY, as shown in Figure 2–5. Pushing a menu button displays the corresponding screen and menu buttons. These menus let you edit waveforms, initialize instrument settings, define instrument operation, and specify waveform output parameters.

You select items within the displayed menu by pushing the bottom or side bezel button nearest to the menu item. These buttons consist of seven bottom buttons and five side buttons, as shown in Figure 2–5. These menu bezel buttons are referred to as bottom menu buttons (or bottom buttons) and side menu buttons (or side buttons).

The **CLEAR MENU** button cancels the current menu operation, clears the current menus from the screen, and exits to the previous instrument state.

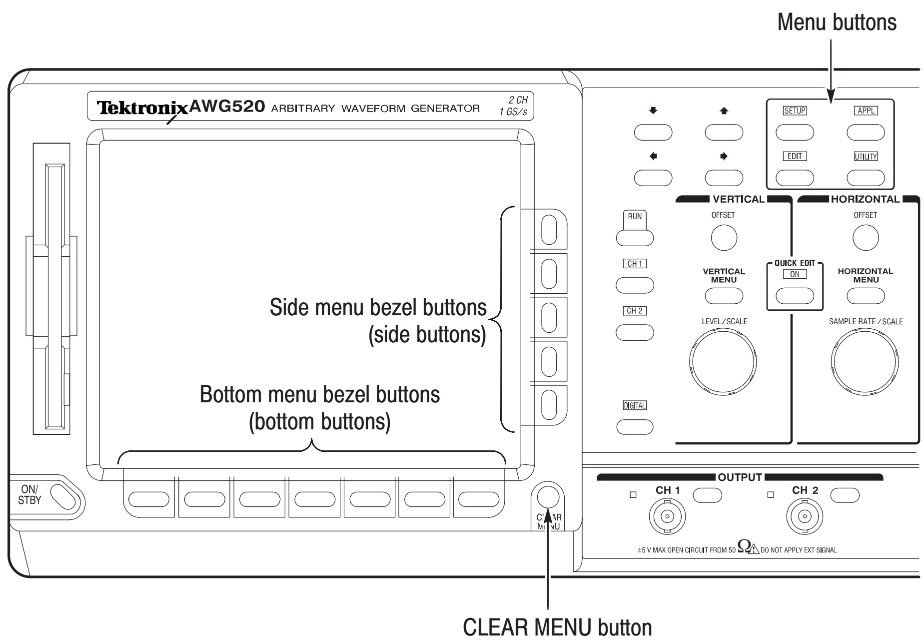


Figure 2–5: Menu buttons, bezel menu buttons, and the CLEAR MENU button

Menu Elements

Pushing a front-panel menu button displays that buttons screen and bottom menu items. You select a bottom menu item by pushing the button directly below that menu item.

Pushing a bottom button displays a side menu, pop-up menu, list, or dialog box. Figures 2–6 through 2–8 show examples of the side menu, pop-up menu and dialog box, respectively.

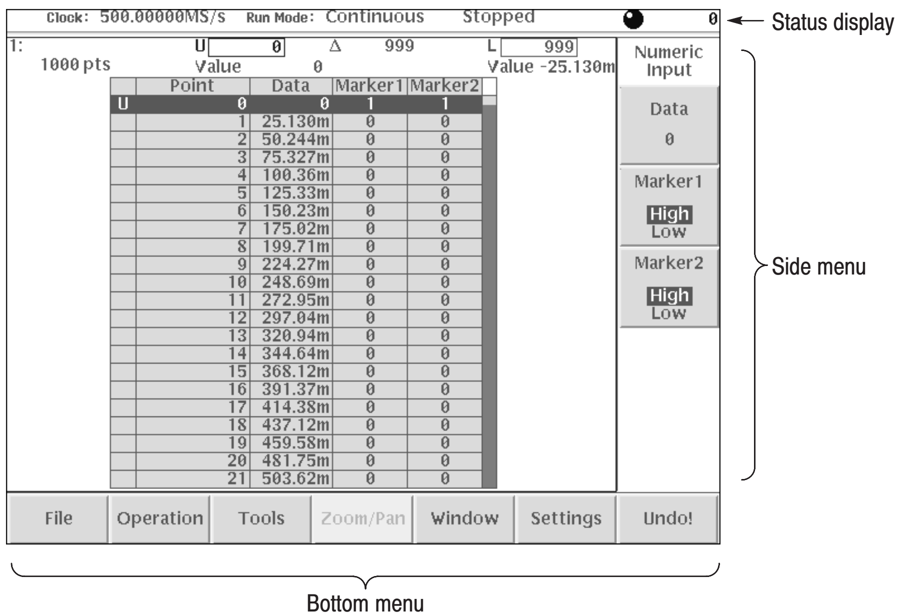


Figure 2–6: Bottom and side menus

You use a side menu button to display a side submenu, set a parameter, perform a task, or cancel an operation. Table 2–1 describes the side menu button types.

Table 2–1: Side menu elements

Menu items	Description	Menu items	Description
External	Executes the displayed function immediately.	Up Level	Cannot be used in the current instrument state (menu item is grayed out).
Output Normal Direct	Switches between two parameters each time the side button is pushed.	Filter 20 MHz	Allows making selections by using the general purpose knob.
Amplitude 1.000Vpp	Allows entering numeric values using the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.	Marker...	Displays sub menus. Note that the label on the item is followed by an ellipsis (...).

A pop-up menu, shown in Figure 2–7, displays a list of choices from which you make a selection. Use the general purpose knob or the front-panel arrow buttons to move up or down in the list. Push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button to confirm the selected item.

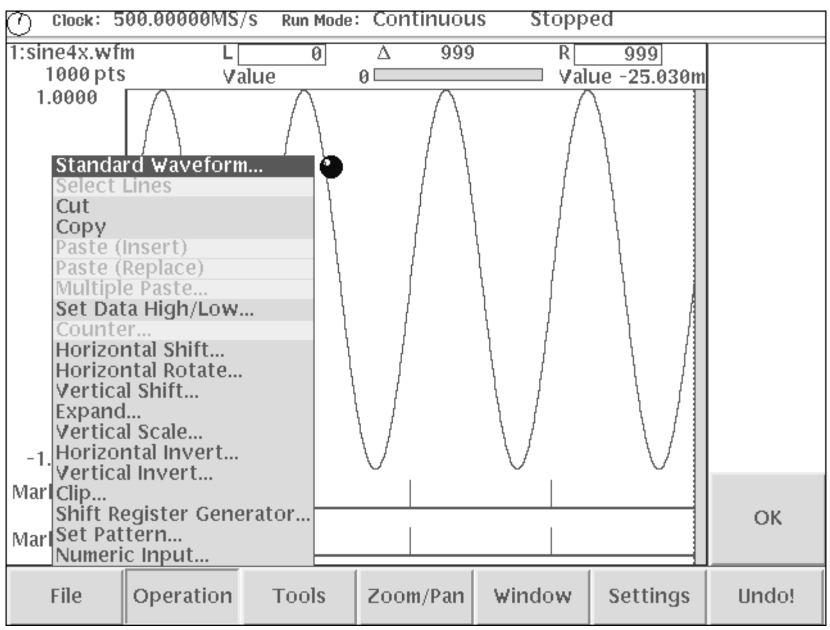


Figure 2–7: Pop-up menu example

A dialog box, shown in Figure 2–8, displays a form in which you make selections or enter values. Use the front-panel arrow buttons to select items or fields. A selected field or item is highlighted. Use the keypad buttons or the general purpose knob to change values in selected text/numeric fields or change 1-of-N fields. A 1-of-N field contains two or more choices of which only one can be selected at a time.

Push the **OK** side button to confirm the dialog box; push the **Cancel** side button or the **CLEAR MENU** button to exit the dialog box without making any changes.

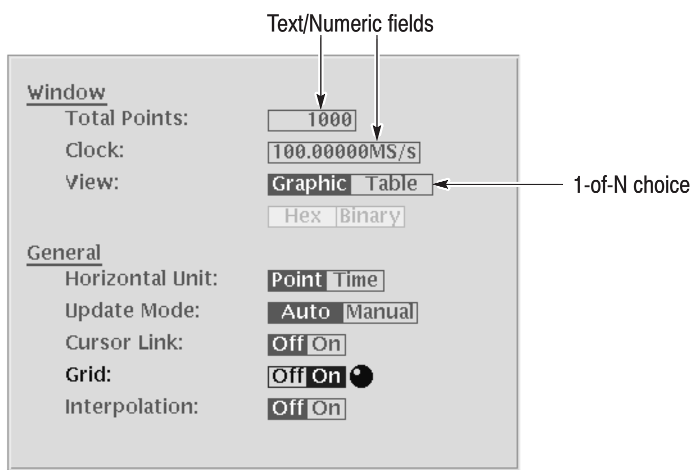


Figure 2–8: Dialog box example

Refer to *Numeric Input* on page 2–10 and *Text Input* on page 2–13 for more information on selecting and entering values in menus and dialog boxes.

Numeric Input

You can enter numeric values by using either the numeric keypad or the general purpose knob. If the side menu item displays a value, you can alter this value using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons.

Pushing the type of side menu button or selecting a parameter in a pop-up menu causes the current setting to appear on the right end of the Status Display area as shown in Figure 2–9.

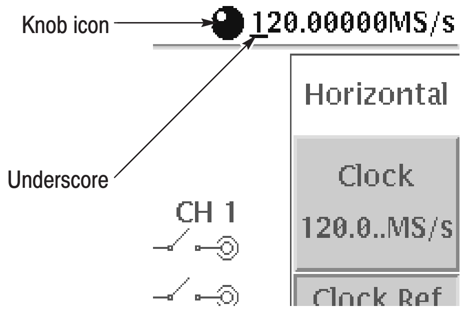


Figure 2–9: Knob icon displayed in Status Display Area

The General Purpose Knob

A knob icon with a numeric value that includes an underscore character indicates that you can change the value at the underscore location by using the general purpose knob or keypad buttons. By default, the underscore character is positioned under the digit specified depending on the parameters. You can only change the value represented by the digits at and to the left of the underscore. Use the ◀ and ▶ arrow buttons to move the underscore to the desired position and then turn the general purpose knob to change the value.

If the numeric value has the knob icon, but does not have the underscore, then turning the general purpose knob cycles through a predefined set of values.

When using the general purpose knob, values you change in side menus and menu screens take effect immediately: values in pop-up menus are not effective until you push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button.

The Numeric Keypad

Figure 2–10 shows the numeric keypad, with descriptions of the button operations.

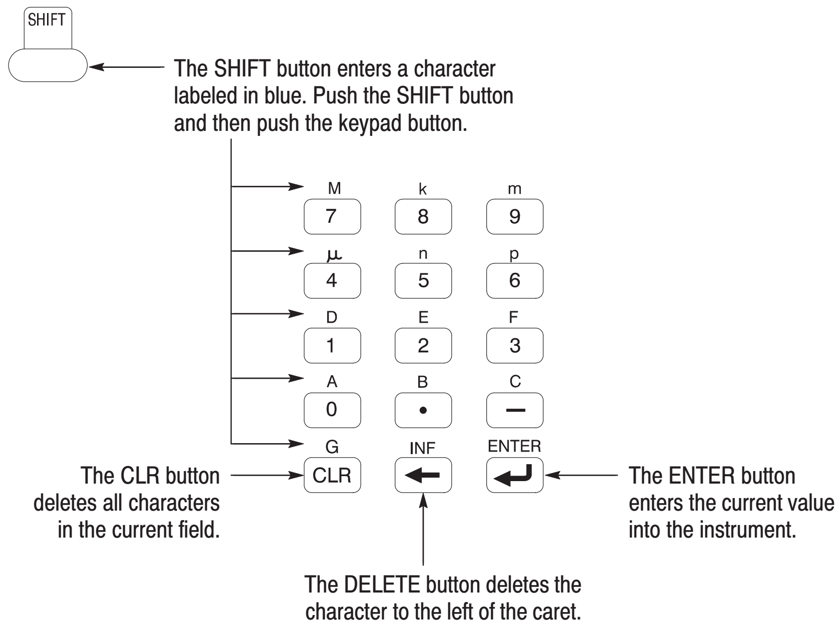


Figure 2–10: Keypad buttons

The G, M, k, m, μ, n, and p are unit buttons. The A, B, C, D, E, and F buttons are used for entering hexadecimal values.

To use the numeric keypad to enter a value, position the caret to where you want to change a value and then push a keypad button. If you want to enter a unit value labeled in blue just above each numeric button, push or hold down the **SHIFT** button and then push the corresponding numeric button.

To enter or change more than one character, move the caret to the next position to change. When you are done entering values, push the **ENTER** button to confirm the changes and enter them into the instrument. For example, to enter 200.5 μs, push **2**, **0**, **0**, **.**, **5**, **μ** (**SHIFT** + **4**), and **ENTER**.

When you enter a value larger than the maximum value in the range for the parameter, the parameter will be set to the maximum value. As the same fashion, when you enter a value smaller than the minimum value, the minimum value will be set in the parameter. To set to the maximum or minimum value, enter a great larger value or smaller value. This is useful when you do not know the range that can be set.

Note that the current unit is always kept when you just use the **ENTER** after entering digits. For example, suppose that the Clock is currently set to 100.0 MS/s. When you press **5**, **0** and **ENTER** buttons in this order, the Clock will be set to 50.0 MS/s. To set to 500 kS/s, press **0**, **.**, **5** and **ENTER** buttons, or **5**, **0**, **0**, **SHIFT**, and **8** buttons in this order.

Text Input

When you need to assign a name to a waveform file or equation, or a IP address to the instrument, the instrument displays a text dialog box, of which the ones shown in Figure 2–11 are typical. The text field is where you enter or change an existing character string. The character palette is where you select alphanumeric characters to insert into the text field. You can also select equation or file names from the name list to insert into the text field.

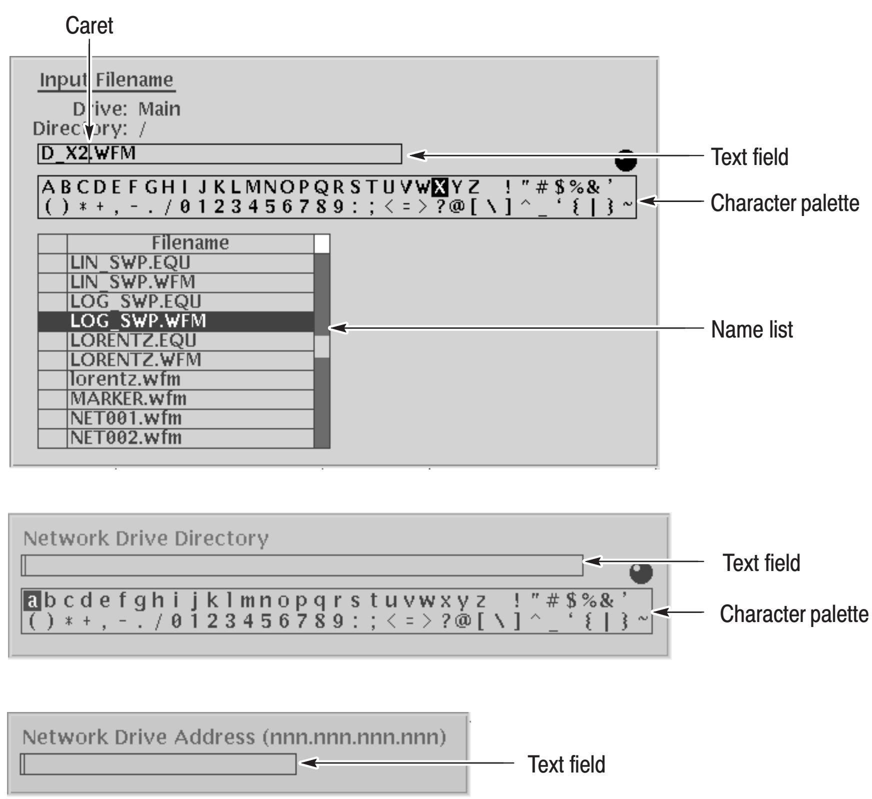


Figure 2–11: Three type of Input text dialog boxes

To select a character from the character palette, use the general purpose knob to highlight a character and then push the **ENTER** to insert the character into the text field. Repeat this step until you have entered all characters in the text field. By default, the character palette is selected. To select text from a file name list, use the ⏶ and ⏷ arrow buttons to move the knob icon to the file name list. Table 2–2 describes all the controls you can use for entering and editing textual input.

Table 2–2: Text input button functions

Control	Description
General purpose knob	Selects the character to insert into the text field.
⏴ and ⏵ arrow buttons	Moves the character insertion caret left or right in the text field.
ENTER button	Inserts the selected character or character string into the text field.
← button	Deletes one character to the left of the caret.
CLR button	Clears the entire text field.
Numeric buttons	Enters numeric characters into the text field.
SHIFT button	Enters a selected character in upper case. When you push the SHIFT button, the SHIFT LED lights. When the dialog box disappears, the SHIFT LED also goes off.

Shortcut Controls

Figure 2–12 shows the shortcut buttons and knobs that control specific instrument setup parameters. Using the shortcut controls lets you adjust the output setup parameters even while you are displaying another menu. Table 2–3 describes the shortcut controls.

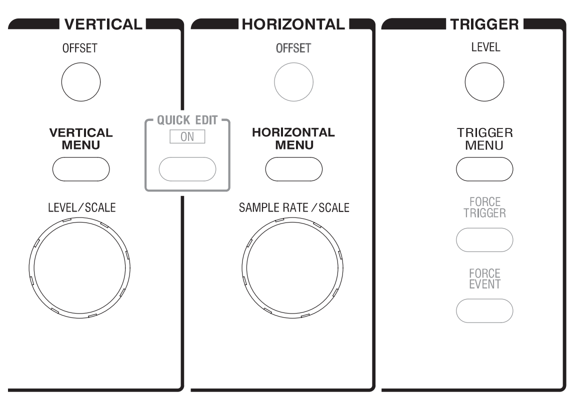


Figure 2–12: Shortcut controls

Table 2–3: Shortcut controls

Controls	Description
VERTICAL	
VERTICAL MENU	Displays the Vertical side menu. This is the same operation as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom).
OFFSET	Adjusts the vertical offset parameters. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Offset** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.
LEVEL / SCALE	Adjusts the amplitude parameters. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.
HORIZONTAL	
HORIZONTAL MENU	Displays the Horizontal side menu. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom).
SAMPLE RATE / SCALE	Adjusts the clock setting. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.
TRIGGER	
TRIGGER MENU	Displays the Trigger side menu. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom).
LEVEL	Adjusts the trigger level setting. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Level** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.

File Management

This section is an overview of the instrument commands and operations for doing file management tasks. Refer to *File Management* on page 3–185 for more information.

File Type Extensions

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator uses numerous file formats to hold different types of data. These file types are listed in Table 2–4. Note that the instrument checks the file format and processes the file based on its content, regardless of the file extension.

Table 2–4: AWG500-Series Waveform Generator file types

Extensions	Files	Recomended file extension
.WFM	Waveform file	Contains waveform data. All signal data must be in waveform format before it can be output. Created with the waveform editor, by compiling an equation file, or when importing waveforms from external equipment.
.PAT	Pattern file	Contains digital pattern data. Created with the pattern editor.
.SEQ	Sequence file	Contains waveform sequence and trigger data. Created with the sequence editor.
.EQU	Equation file	Contains equations that describe a waveform. Created with the equation/text editor.
.TXT	Text file	Contains ASCII text. Created with the equation/text editor.
.SET	Setup file	Contains instrument setup and configuration data. Created from the SETUP menu.

Locating Files

There are three locations for storing waveform data on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator: the instrument hard disk drive, the instrument floppy disk drive, or a remote storage device accessible through the Ethernet interface. If the file you want to load is not on the current drive, use the EDIT menu main screen **Drive** and **Directory** bottom menu buttons to open side menus that let you change the current drive location. Table 2–5 describes the Drive and Directory bottom buttons.

Table 2–5: Drive and Directory menus

Bottom menu	Side menu	Description
Drive	Main Floppy Net1 Net2 Net3	Changes the instrument current drive. To select a drive, push the appropriate side menu button. Note that there must be a floppy disk inserted in the instrument floppy disk drive in order to select the floppy drive. Note that the label Net1, Net2 and Net3 vary depending on the net name settings in the UTILITY menu.
Directory	Up Level	Moves you up a directory level.
	Down Level	Moves you down a directory level. To move down a directory level, select a directory name in the pop-up list and then push the Down Level side button. The filename list changes to show the contents of the directory.
	Make Directory	Creates a directory at the current level. To create a directory, push the Make Directory side button to display the Input New Directory Name dialog box. Enter the directory name in the name field, then push the OK side button. The instrument creates the new directory.

***NOTE**. In the following procedures, you may have to push the EDIT button twice to quit the editor. When the instrument does not display the file list, try to push the EDIT button again. If you are prompted, refer to* Saving Files *on page 2–19.*

Copying Files

Copying files is done from the EDIT menu screen. Do the following steps to copy a file:

1. Push **EDIT** (front). The instrument displays the file list.
2. Select the file to copy.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Copy** (side)
4. Enter the new name for the copied file in the file name field
5. Push **OK** (side). The file is copied and renamed.

You can copy a file or all files in another way. Refer to *Double Windows* on page 2–20 , for those methods.

***NOTE**. You can also move a file or all files. Refer to* Double Windows *on page 2–20 for those methods.*

Renaming Files

Renaming files is done from the EDIT menu screen. Do the following steps to rename a file:

1. Push **EDIT** (front). The instrument displays the file list.
2. Select the file to rename.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Rename** (side)
4. Enter the new name for the file in the file name field
5. Push **OK** (side). The file is renamed.

Deleting Files

Deleting files is done from the EDIT menu screen. Do the following steps to delete a file:

1. Push **EDIT** (front). The instrument displays the file list.
2. Select the file to delete.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Delete** (side). The instrument displays a message box asking you to confirm deleting the file.

4. Push **OK** (side) to delete the file, or **Cancel** to cancel the operation and keep the file.

You can also delete all files on the current drive and directory by doing the following steps:

1. Push **EDIT** (front)→**File** (bottom)→**Delete All** (side). The instrument displays a message box asking you to confirm deleting all files.
2. Push **OK** (side) to delete all files, or **Cancel** to cancel the operation and keep all files.

Read Only Attribute

You can change an attribute: read only or read/write on a file. Do the following steps to change the file attribute:

1. Push **EDIT** (front). The instrument displays the file list.
2. Select the file to change the attribute.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Attribute *xxxx*** (side). The ***xxxx*** is **Read/Write** or **Read Only** that is the attribution of the selected file. Pushing this side button immediately changes the file attribute.

The file with read only attribute is marked by , and the directory by . See Figure 2–13.

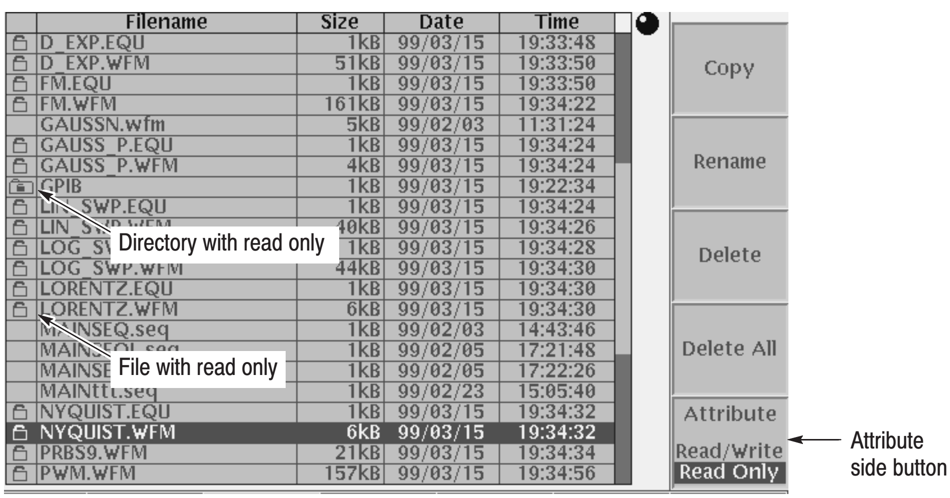


Figure 2–13: Files and directories with read only attribute

Saving Files

File saving is done from within each editor screen. You have the choice of saving your waveform data to the current file name or to a new file name. To save a waveform to its current file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save** (pop-up)→ **OK** (side).

If you are saving a waveform for the first time, the instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–14. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a different storage media or directory by pushing the **Drive...** side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

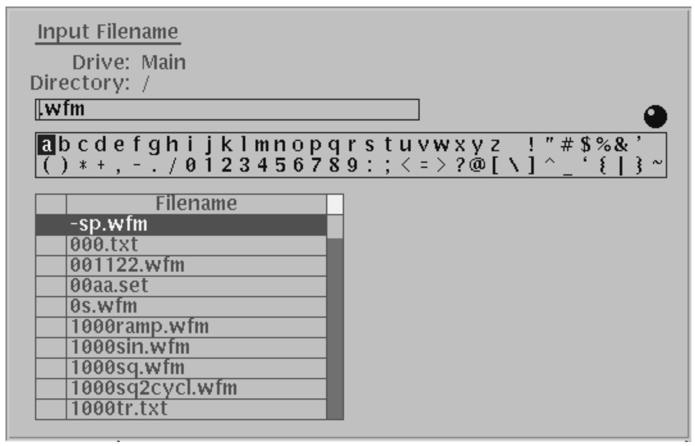


Figure 2–14: Input Filename dialog box

***NOTE**. When you exit an editor without saving edited data, the instrument displays the message* Save the changes you made?. *Push the **Yes** side button to save the waveform data.*

To save waveform data to a new file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save As** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–14. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a storage media or directory by pushing the **Drive...** side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

If you are saving a file with a record length larger than 256 data points and the record is not evenly divisible by four, the instrument needs to adjust the record length to meet internal memory record length requirements. The instrument displays one of the messages shown in Table 2–6. You can push the **OK** side button to accept the recommended change, or cancel the save and then edit the file to satisfy the data record length requirements.

Table 2–6: Waveform record length adjustment messages

Message	Description
Leave as it is	The data is saved, as it is, without making changes. The instrument will display an error message if you try to load a file that does not meet the instrument waveform constraints.
Append 0	With Level–0 data added after the data, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created.
Expand	With the waveform data expanded, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created.
Expand with Clock	With the waveform data expanded, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created. In addition, the clock frequency increases without change in scaling factor. The settings are saved in the file.
Repeat	With repetitions of the original data linked, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created. If the total length of the linked data exceeds 4M points, this will cause an error.

Double Windows

When the **Window** bottom button is displayed, you can divide the file list in the Edit Screen into two as shown in Figure 2–15. This function is called Double Windows.

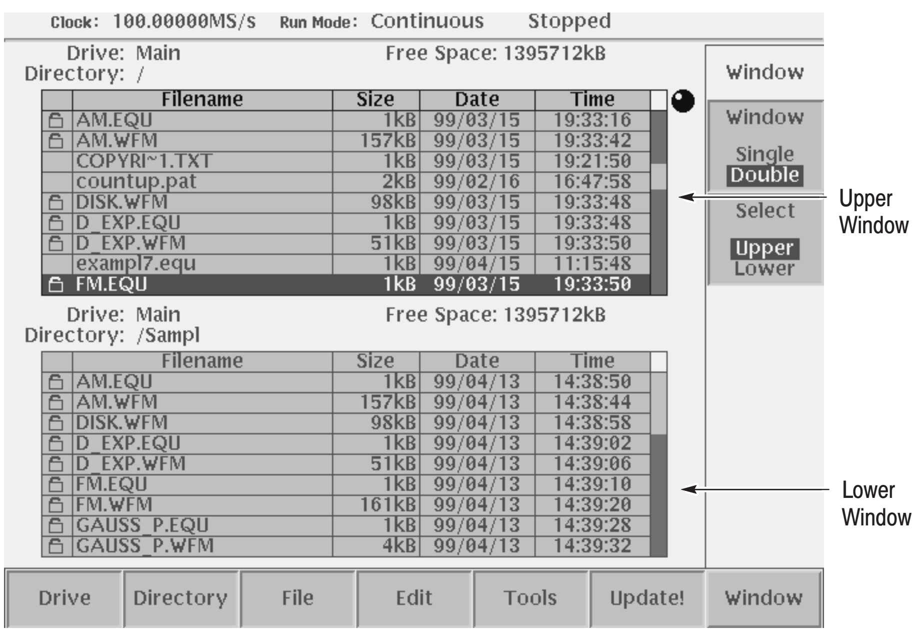


Figure 2–15: Double Windows

In Double Windows, for example, you can display the file list of the hard disk and the one of the floppy disk, or the file list of a directory and the one of an another directory. All the functions invoked from the bottom buttons except the **File** are available.

The most important functions to be used in two file lists displayed at the same time are Copy and Move file operations. The explanation follows Window Operation below.

Window Operation

The windows are named as Upper and Lower windows as indicated in Figure 2–15. You should select a window for operation.

When you push **EDIT** (front) → **Window** (bottom) , the Window side button appears. Push the **Window** side button to select **Double** that causes to display double windows. Push again the **Window** side button to select **Single** that causes to return the display back into the signal file list.

When you display the double windows, the **Select** side button will be available. Push the **Select** side button to select **Upper** for file operation in the upper file list window. Push again the **Select** side button to select **Lower** for file operation in the lower file list window.

Operation in Double Windows

The most useful functions to be used in the double windows may be those invoked from the **File** bottom button. The functions available in the **File** bottom button is described in Table 2–7.

Table 2–7: File operation in double windows

Operation	Description
Copy	Copies a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Copy All	Copies all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot copy the directory or directory structure.
Move	Moves a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Move All	Moves all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot move the directory or directory structure.

***NOTE**.* You cannot use the **Rename**, **Delete**, **Delete All**, and **Attribute** side buttons unless you display the single file list window.

In copy or move operation, when the files with the same file name exist in the destination, the message *Overwrite existing file <filename>* appears. At the same time, the **Cancel**, **No**, **Yes to All**, and **Yes** side buttons appears. Press any of those side buttons to proceed the operation.

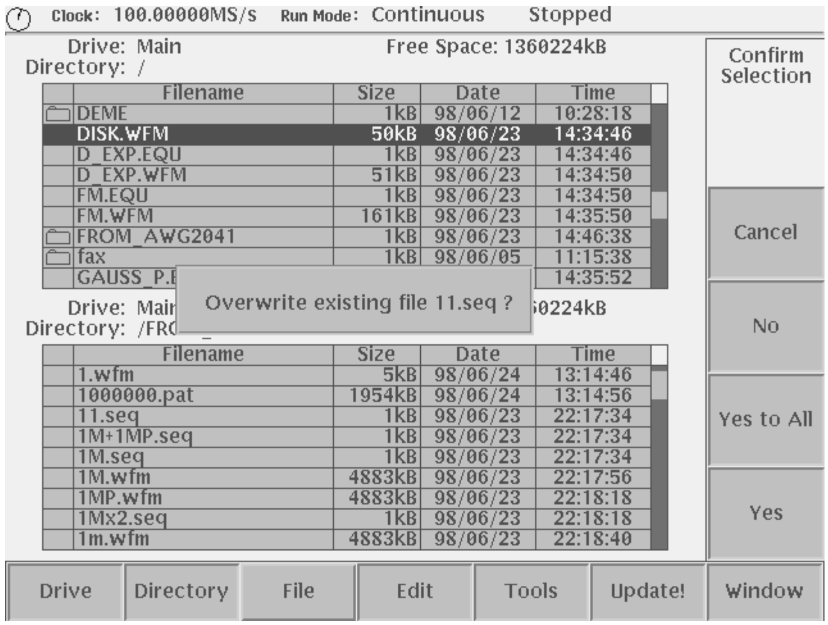


Figure 2-16: Overwrite confirmation

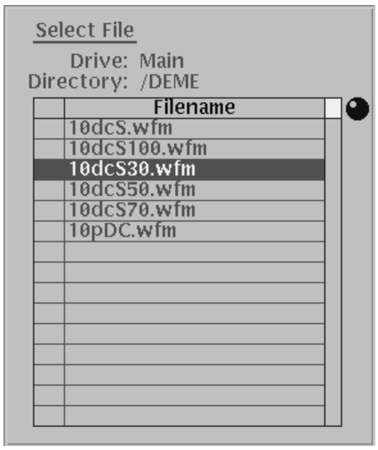
Table 2-8: Confirmation selection for copy-all and move-all operations

Side menu	Description
Cancel	Cancels and stops copy or move operation.
No	Skips the copy or move operation for the file indicated in the message.
Yes to All	Overwrites the all files without displaying any messages until the operation is finished.
Yes	Overwrites the file indicated in the message and proceeds the operation.

You cannot copy or move the directory. In copy–all or move–all operation, the message *Directory cannot be copied* appears when a directory is being tried to move or copy. Press **OK** side button to confirm and proceed the operation.

Quick View

Before loading or handling a file, you sometimes want to look at the content of a file to confirm the successive operation. The quick view function displays the view window and allows you to view a waveform or pattern file selected in a file list. This function is always available when a file list is displayed on the screen.



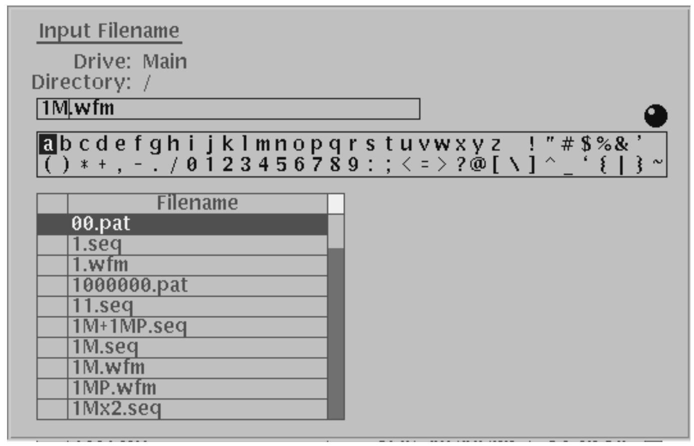


Figure 2–17: File list window examples – in which Quick View is available

At the file list window, first select a file with the general purpose knob and then press the **SHIFT** and **ENTER** front–panel buttons at the same time. The view window displaying the waveform or pattern appears as shown in Figure 2–18.

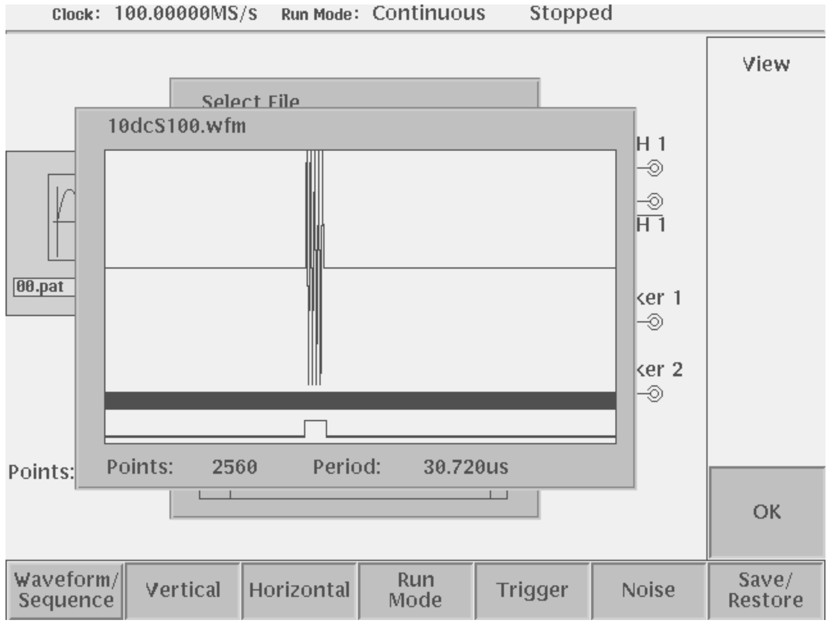


Figure 2-18: Viewing a file by Quick View function

Push the **OK** side menu button to close the view window. You cannot view files other than waveform or pattern in this function.

This function is always available when a file list window or file list dialog box is displayed on the screen.

Editor Overview

This section provides an overview of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform editors. These editors, of which there are five, provide the tools for creating simple or complicated waveforms. Having more than one editor allows you to create waveforms using your preferred method or the one best suited to the waveform type.

The Edit menu, displayed by pushing the EDIT front-panel button, is the main way to open editors. Most of the editor screens have common elements except for the Sequence and Equation editors. This section introduces the editor screen, describes the screen elements, and discusses concepts common to most of the editors. Refer to the *Reference* section for more detailed information about each waveform editor.

Editor Modes

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator provides five editor modes, as listed in Table 2–9. These editors let you create, edit, and sequence waveforms using the technique best suited to your waveform. You access these editors through the main Edit screen, which is described in the following text.

Table 2–9: Editors

Editors	Description
Waveform Editor	Creates and edits analog waveforms.
Quick Editor	Lets you modify and/or output, in real time, any part of a waveform you are currently editing with the Waveform Editor.
Pattern Editor	Creates and edits digital waveform patterns.
Sequence Editor	Creates and edits tables that define the sequence and control conditions for outputting one or more waveforms.
Text/Equation Editor	Creates, edits, and compiles equation waveform definitions into a waveform file. You can also use this editor to edit ASCII-format waveform data files created by other equipment (such as Tektronix Digital Sampling oscillo-scopes).

The Main Edit Screen

To display the main Edit screen, push the **EDIT** front-panel button. If there is no waveform file currently loaded into the edit buffer, the instrument displays the main Edit screen and a list of files in the current drive, as shown in Figure 2–19. Table 2–10 lists the bottom menu button functions. If there is a waveform loaded for editing, the screen will show the loaded waveform in the appropriate editor.

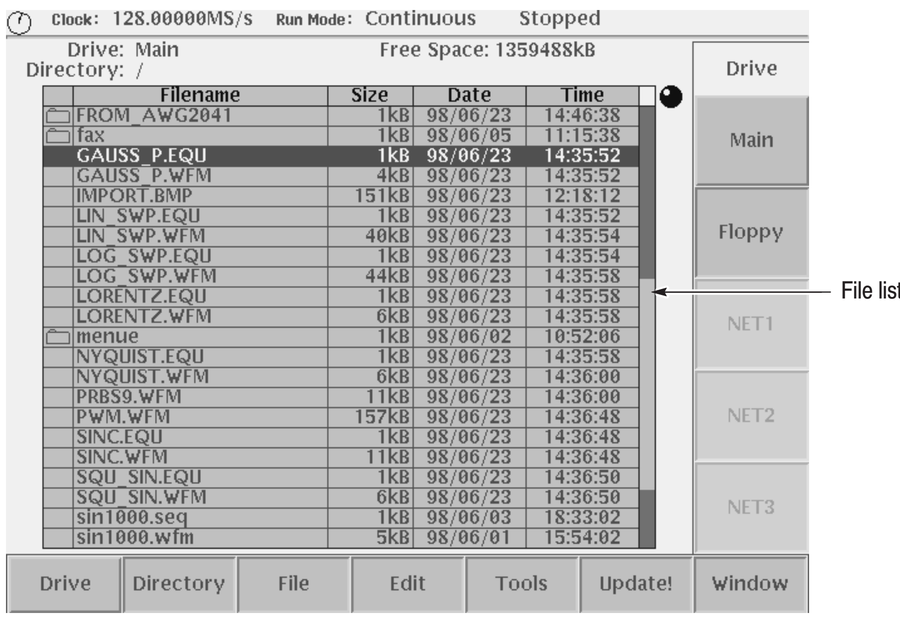


Figure 2–19: Edit main screen

Table 2–10: Edit screen bottom menu buttons

Button	Description
Drive	Specifies the current drive to use for loading or storing waveform files
Directory	Lets you navigate and create directories on the current drive
File	Lets you copy, rename, delete, and assign attributes to files on the current drive
Edit	Displays the Edit side menu for editing existing or new waveform files
Tools	Displays the Tools side menu for importing and converting file data
Update!	Updates the waveform file name list
Window	Opens up to two windows in which a file list of a specified directory or drive. Refer to *Double Windows* on page 2–20 for more detail.

Loading a Waveform File to Edit

The default Edit screen displays a list of files in the current drive. To load a file and open an editor window, use the general purpose knob or the front-panel arrow buttons to highlight a file name. Then push the **ENTER** front-panel button. The instrument loads the selected file and opens the editor appropriate for that file type.

You can also edit an existing file by selecting the file in the list, pushing the **Edit** bottom button, then pushing the **Edit** side button. This process takes two more steps than that described in the previous paragraph.

If the file you want to edit is located in a different directory of the hard disk drive, on a floppy disk, or on a network drive, use the bottom menu **Drive**, **Directory**, and **File** buttons to change the current drive and load a file from another location. Refer to *File Management* on page 2–16 for information on locating and saving files.

***NOTE**. There are waveform data restrictions deriving from the instrument waveform memory block size. The waveform memory is internally divided into blocks, each of which contains 32 data points. For example, a 256-point waveform uses 8 memory blocks (256 / 32 = 8 blocks with no remainder) for a total of 256 points. However, a 260-point waveform uses 9 memory blocks (256 points in blocks1 through 8 plus 4 points in block 9) for a total of 288 points.*

Therefore, the required waveform memory size can be as much as 31 data points larger than the actual file data point size. As a result, you may be unable to output a waveform even if the total number of points of the output waveform is less than 4M. This is especially true for sequence tables containing multiple waveform files.

Creating a New Waveform

To create a new waveform file, push the Edit bottom menu button. This displays the Edit side menu items as shown in Figure 2–19. Table 2–11 provides an overview of the Edit side menu button functions.

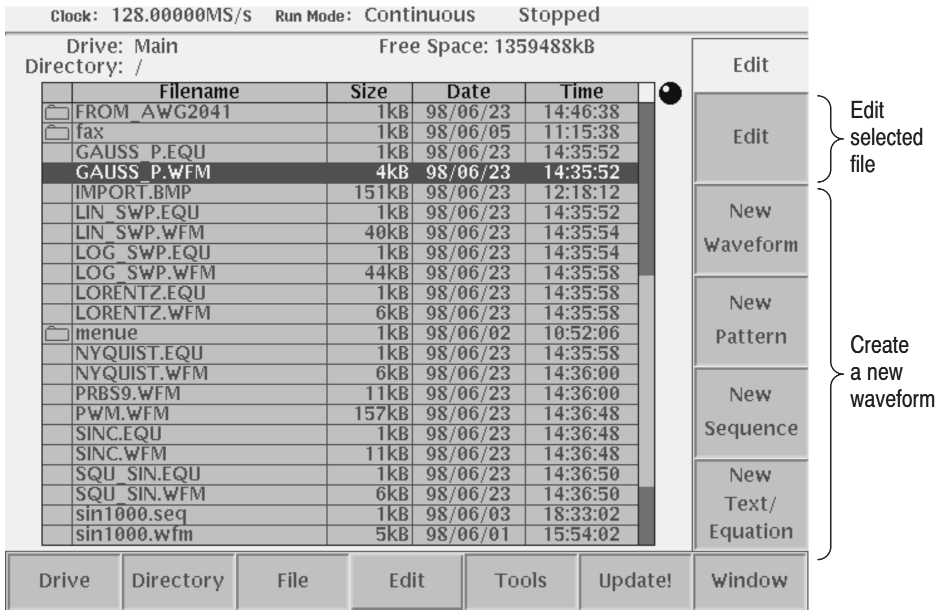


Figure 2–20: Edit top level menu screen with Edit side menu

Table 2–11: Edit side menu buttons

Button	Description
Edit	Loads the selected waveform file and opens the appropriate editor screen
New Waveform	Opens a new Waveform Editor screen
New Pattern	Opens a new Pattern Editor screen
New Sequence	Opens a new Sequence Editor screen
New Text/Equation	Opens a new Equation Editor screen

Editor Screen Elements

Figure 2–21 shows elements that are common to many of the editor screens. What elements are in an editor depends on which editor is open. The *Reference* section describes each editor in detail. Figure 2–21 is to familiarize you with the common screen elements of most of the editors.

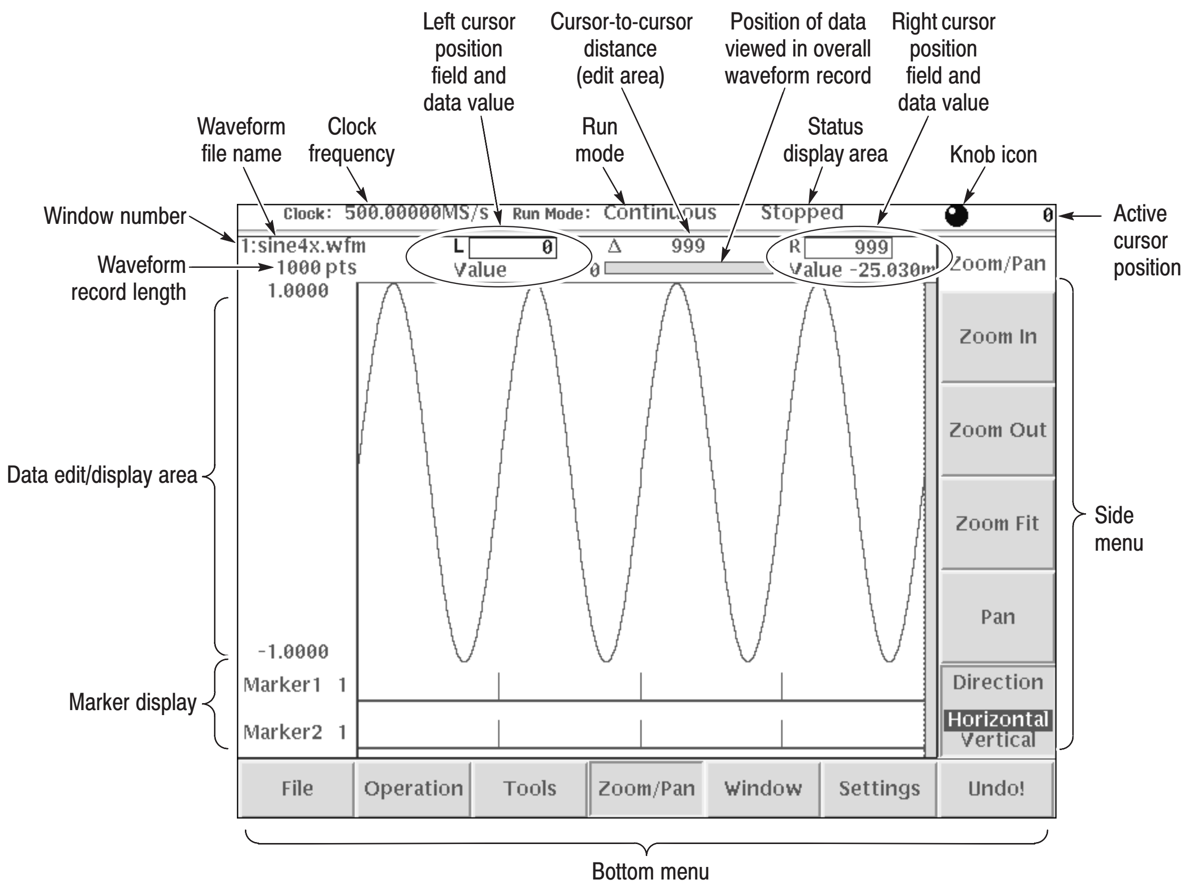


Figure 2–21: Editor screen elements

Cursors and Editing

The edit window cursors define the data affected by all edit operations except the Tools menu commands. Most of the edit commands affect the data located between the left and right cursor positions. This region is called the edit area or scope. Figure 2–22 shows an example of an edit area (shown as a lighter area between the cursors in this figure for illustration purposes only), in this case all data located from left cursor position 300 to right cursor position 779.

Other edit operations use the active (selected) cursor position for inserting waveform data. The active cursor is shown as a solid vertical line. The inactive cursor is shown as a dashed vertical line.

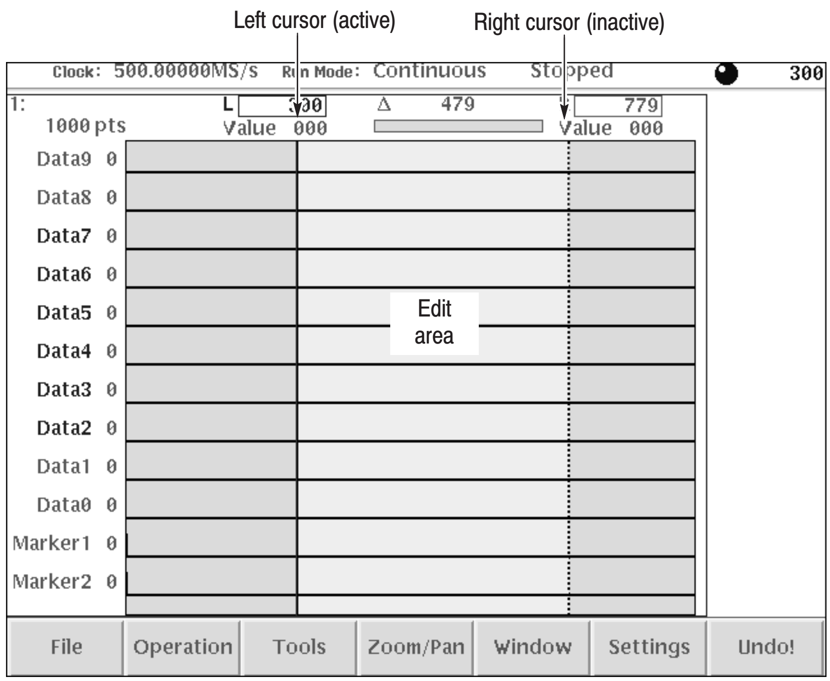


Figure 2–22: Cursors and edit area

When you edit a waveform, you must first specify the edit area or a single cursor position, depending on the operation you want to do. To select the active cursor, push the **TOGGLE** front–panel button to switch between the left and right cursor. To move a cursor, turn the general purpose knob, use the left or right arrow keys, or use the keypad or keyboard to enter a position in the cursor position field. The cursor position field is active when the corresponding cursor is active.

Multiple Editor Windows

The AWG500-Series Generator can open and edit up to three waveform and/or pattern files, in any combination. The wave data is displayed in separate windows, with each window stacked vertically on the screen. Multiple editor windows are very useful for creating a new waveform by cutting and pasting waveform data from other files. Figure 2–23 shows an example of three opened editor windows (one pattern and two waveform files).

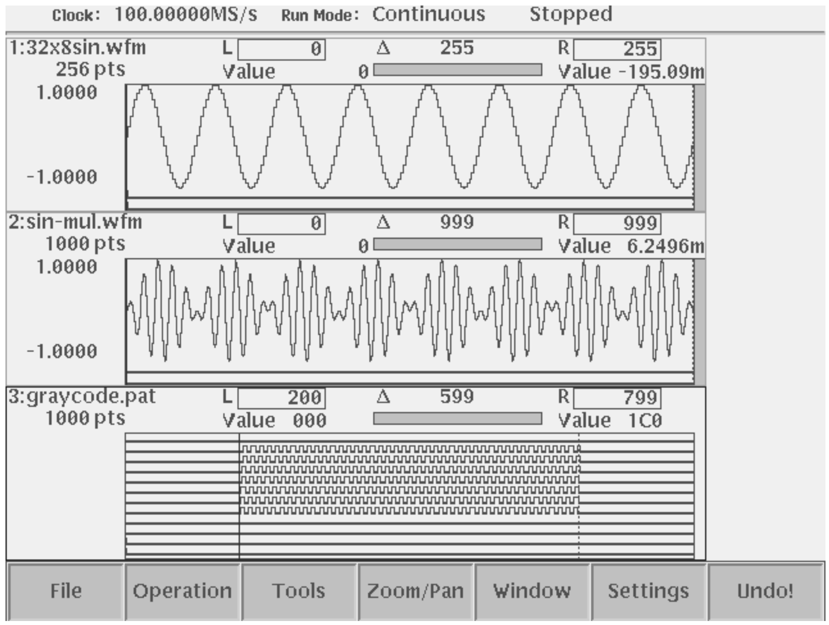


Figure 2–23: Multiple editor windows

NOTE. *You cannot open a sequence, text, or equation file from within the Waveform or Pattern Editor. If you are in the Waveform or Pattern Editor, you must exit to the EDIT main main screen and then load the sequence, text, or equation file.*

Some editor information is not displayed when three Waveform editor windows are open.

Opening Multiple Editor Windows

Do the following steps to load a waveform data file into an editor window:

1. From the editor screen, push **File** (bottom)→**Open...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Select File dialog box appears. If you cannot select the Open... menu item, you already have three windows opened.

2. Select a waveform or pattern file from the Select File list. If necessary, use the **Drive...** side menu to select the storage drive where the file to load is located.

3. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument opens a new window for the waveform or pattern data, stacking the windows vertically to fit on the screen. If you attempt to load a sequence, text, or equation file, you will receive an error message.

Creating a New Waveform or Pattern in a Multiple Editor Window

To create a new empty Waveform or Pattern Editor window, push **File** (bottom)→ **New Waveform** or **New Pattern** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument opens a new window for the waveform or pattern editor, stacking the windows vertically to fit on the screen. If you cannot select the New Waveform or New Pattern pop-up menu item, you already have three editor windows opened.

Selecting the Active Edit Window

Although you can have up to three open editor windows, you can only do editing tasks in one window at a time. To select the active window, push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side). All editing operations will affect the waveform data in that window until you change to another editor window.

Quitting Editors

You can quit an editor by using either the File bottom button or the EDIT front-panel button.

With File Bottom Menu

1. Push **File** (bottom)→**Close** (pop-up) to quit the waveform and pattern editors.

   OR

   Push **File** (bottom)→**Close** (side) to quit the sequence and text/equation editors.

2. If you have made no modifications to the data, the editor is immediately exited. If you have made modifications, the message box *Save the changes you made?* appears. Push the **Yes**, **No**, or **Cancel** side button.

With EDIT Button

1. Push **EDIT** button on the front–panel.
2. If you have made no modifications to the data, the editor is immediately exited. If you have not saved the data after modifications, the message box *Save the changes you made?* appears. Push **Yes**, **No**, or **Cancel** side button.

Setup Overview

The Setup screen is where you load and set up the waveform for output. This section gives you an overview of the Setup screen, how to load a file, how to set the signal output parameters, and how to enable signal output. Refer to *The Setup Menu* in the *Reference* section for more information.

The Main Setup Screen

To display the main Setup screen, push the **SETUP** front-panel button. The instrument displays the main Setup screen as shown in Figure 2–24 (AWG520). Table 2–12 describes the screen waveform parameter icons. Table 2–13 lists the bottom menu functions.

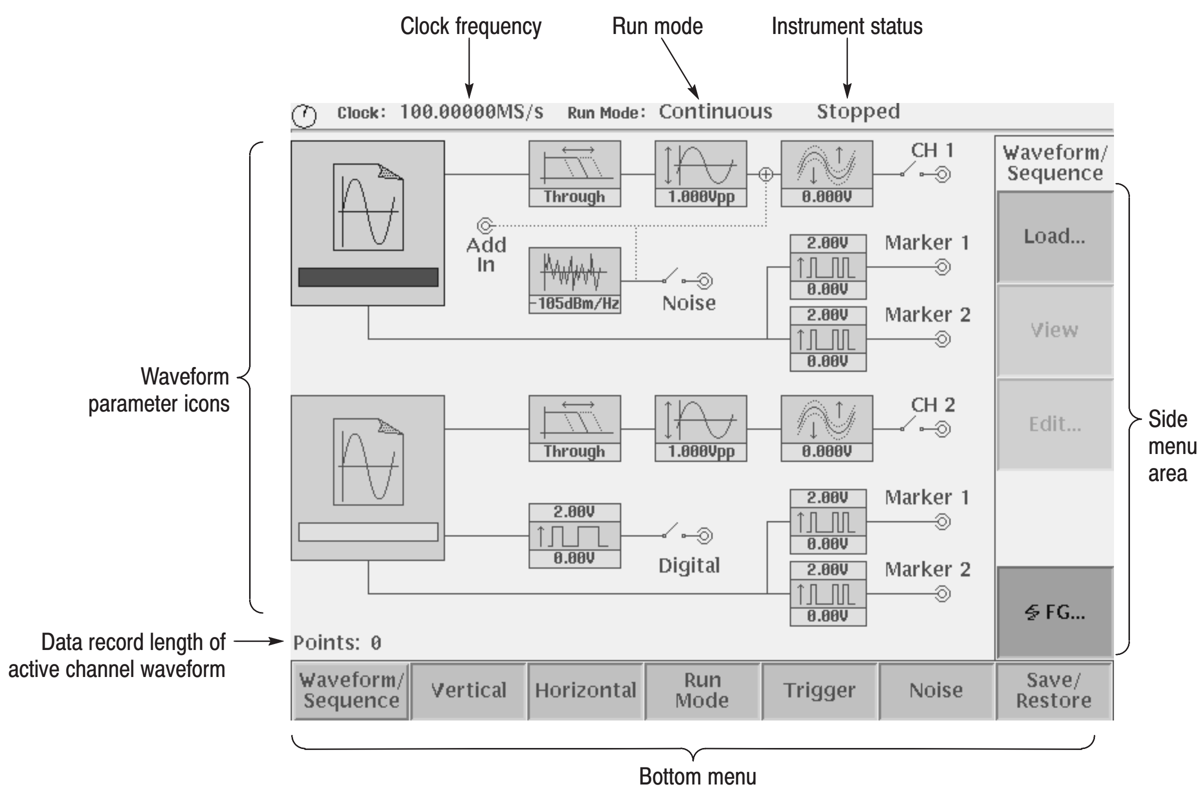


Figure 2–24: Setup main screen

Table 2–12: Setup screen parameter icons

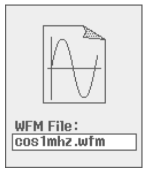
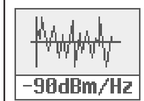
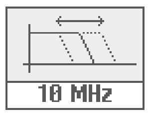
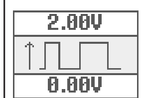
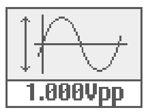
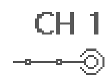
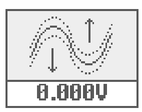
Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the file name of the waveform, pattern, or sequence file loaded for output. Note: use the View button to display the loaded waveform.		Displays the noise signal level to add to the waveform when enabled.
	Displays the bandpass filter setting through which the waveform is passed.		Displays the digital output and marker signal minimum and maximum voltage settings.
	Displays the peak-to-peak signal amplitude setting.		Indicates that the channel output is enabled or disabled. If the switch is shown open, that channel output is disabled.
	Displays the signal offset setting.		Indicates that the marker output is enabled. Marker outputs are always enabled.

Table 2–13: Setup bottom menu buttons

Bottom menu button	Description
Waveform/Sequence	Displays the side menu for loading, viewing, and editing waveform files, and for entering the FG mode main screen.
Vertical	Displays the Vertical side menu for setting waveform peak-to-peak amplitude, offset, bandpass filter, marker, and other output parameters.
Horizontal	Displays the Horizontal side menu for setting the clock source, clock frequency, and marker signal delay parameters.
Run Mode	Displays the Run Mode side menu for setting the instrument run mode. Refer to *Run Modes* in the *Reference* section for an explanation of the different run modes.
Trigger	Displays the Trigger side menu for setting trigger source, slope, level, external trigger impedance, and interval parameters.
Noise	Displays the Noise side menu to set noise dB level and external output parameters.
Save/Restore	Displays the Save/Restore side menu to save and restore setup output parameters.

Loading a Waveform File to Output

Do the following steps to load a waveform file into the Setup screen:

1. Push the **CH 1** or **CH 2** front–panel button (near the side menu buttons) to select the channel into which to load the waveform file.

2. Push the Waveform/Sequence bottom menu button. This opens the Waveform/Sequence side menu.

3. Push the **Load...** side button. The instrument opens the Select File list as shown in Figure 2–25.

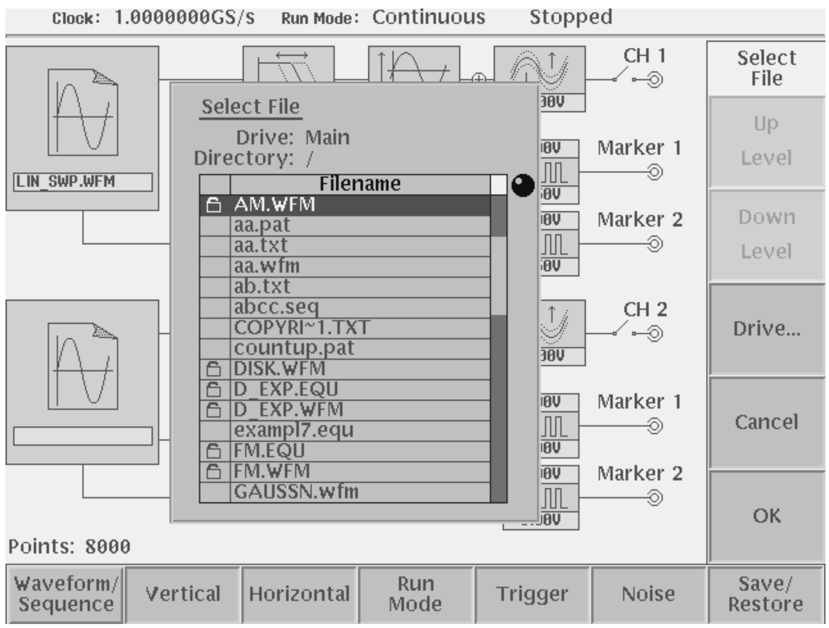


Figure 2–25: Setup Waveform/Sequence menu

4. Use the general purpose knob or arrow buttons to select the file name to load. If the file you want to load is located in a different drive or directory, use the side menu buttons to change the current drive.

5. Push the **ENTER** front-panel button or **OK** side button. The instrument loads the file and displays the file name in the selected channel file icon. Push the **Cancel** side button to exit the file load process.

The procedures above is to load a waveform or pattern into the waveform memory, and/or sequence file into the sequence memory, which will be scanned to output. The waveform memory, sequence memory and the edit buffer are completely independent. So, you can edit a waveform, pattern, sequence or equation/text while outputting an another waveform or sequence.

However, when you push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Edit** (side) to copy the waveform in the waveform memory to the edit buffer, you must save the currently edited waveform, pattern, sequence or equation/text into a file.

You can enter into the QUICK EDIT mode only from the waveform editor. When you enter into the quick edit mode, the instrument copies the data in the edit buffer into the undo buffer. All the changes you make immediately reflect to the data in the edit buffer, and also to the data in the waveform memory if that data is being loaded to output.

Before loading, you can view a waveform or pattern. Refer to *Quick View* on page 2–23 for more detail.

Viewing a Waveform

To view the loaded waveform file, push the **View** side menu button. The instrument opens a window on the screen that displays the waveform, as shown in Figure 2–26. Push the **OK** side menu button or **ENTER** front–panel button to close the view window.

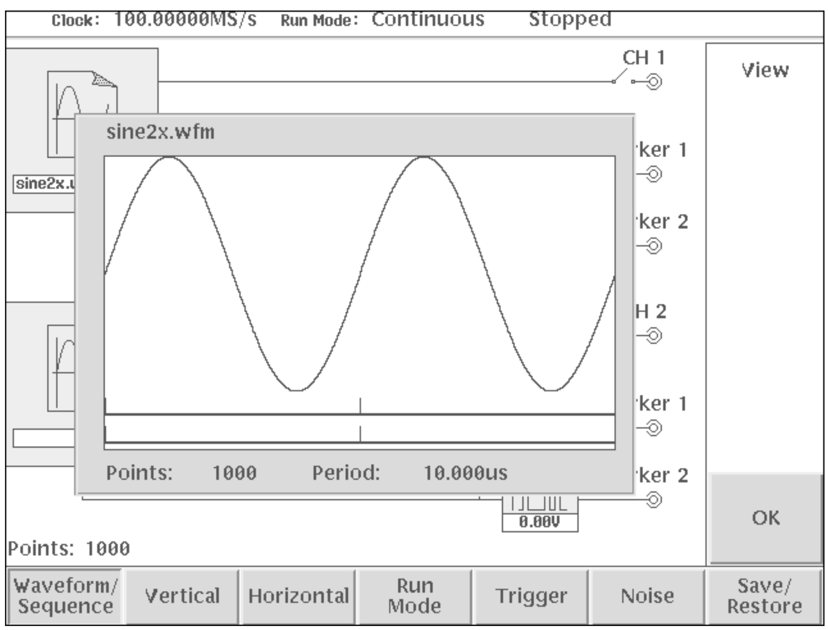


Figure 2–26: Viewing a file in the Setup screen

Note that the view function always display the waveform in the file that you specified, but not the waveform in the waveform memory. Even when you change the waveform with the editor and update the waveform memory, the view function still display the waveform before updated unless you do not save the file.

Editing a Waveform

To edit the loaded waveform file, push the **Edit...** side menu button. The instrument opens the appropriate edit window for the already loaded file type.

If you have not loaded a file in the Setup screen, the instrument displays the message *No output data*, and you can not enter into the editor.

The editors are described in more detail in the *Reference* section.

Setting Waveform Output Parameters

The Setup side menus provide commands for setting and adjusting waveform output parameters. The steps for setting output parameters are discussed in detail in the *Reference* section. Table 2–14 provides an overview of the Setup side menu operations.

Table 2–14: Setup output parameter operations

Bottom button	Side button	Description
Waveform/ Sequence	Load...	Displays the Select File dialog box that lists files in the current drive and directory. Select a file to load or use the side menu buttons to change drives and/or directories.
	View	Displays the loaded file in a window. Push the OK side menu button to close the view window.
	Edit...	Opens the appropriate editor for the loaded file.
	Ez FG...	Enters the FG mode for easy generation of standard functional waveform.
Vertical	Amplitude	Sets the signal peak-to-peak amplitude in increments of 0.001 V. The maximum value is 2 V_{pp}. Use the general purpose knob or the keypad to enter new values.
	Offset	Sets the signal offset value in increments of 0.001 V. The offset voltage range is ±1 V_{pp}. Use the general purpose knob or the keypad to enter new values.
	Filter	Selects bandpass filter to insert into signal path. Filter values are Through (no filter), 10 MHz, 20 MHz, 50 MHz, and 100 MHz. Use the general purpose knob to enter new values.
	Marker...	Displays a side menu to set Marker 1 and Marker 2 signal high and low values. The marker signal voltage range is ±2.0 V_{pp} into 50 Ω and ±4.0 V_{pp} into 1 kΩ. Use the general purpose knob or the keypad to enter new values.
	Add/Direct Out...	Displays a side menu for selecting additional signal sources (Noise, External, None) to add to the channel 1 waveform, or connect the DAC outputs directly to the chanel connector with no adjustments.
Horizontal	Clock	Sets the clock sample rate, from 50 kS/s to 1 GS/s.
	Clock Src	Sets the clock source to either Internal or External. When you select Internal, AWG500 uses the internal clock. When you select External, AWG500 uses the external clock signal connected rear EXT CLOCK IN connector. A valid external clock signal is 10 MHz ¿1GHz with a voltage level of 0.25 to 1.0 V_{p-p}.
	Clock Ref	Sets the 10MHz reference clock source to either Internal or External. A valid external clock signal is 10 MHz ±0.1 MHz with a voltage level of 0.2 to 3.0 V_{p-p}.
	Marker 1 Delay	Sets the Marker 1 signal delay value from 0 s to 2.0 ns.
	Marker 2 Delay	Sets the Marker 2 signal delay value from 0 s to 2.0 ns.

Table 2–14: Setup output parameter operations (cont.)

Bottom button	Side button	Description
Run Mode	Continuous Triggered Gated Enhanced	Displays the Run Mode side menu for setting the instrument run mode. Refer to the *Run Mode Menu* section on page 3–114 for an explanation of the different run modes.
Trigger	Source	Sets trigger source to Internal or External. If External selected, all other side menu items are not selectable except Interval.
	Slope	Sets the trigger slope to Positive or Negative.
	Level	Sets the trigger signal level. The trigger level range is ±5.0 V in 0.1 V increments.
	Impedance	Sets the external trigger input line impedance to either 50 Ω or 1 kΩ.
	Interval	Sets trigger interval from 1.0 μs to 10.0 s.
Noise	Output	Enables or disables the internal noise signal output to the external connector.
	Level	Displays the current noise signal dBm/Hz level and sets noise signal dB level from –145 dbm/Hz to –105 dBm/Hz.[1]
Save/Restore	Save Setup	Save the setup parameters set by SETUP window as a setup file.
	Resore Set-up	Restore a setup file.

1 **Turning noise output on in the noise menu disables the noise signal from being added to the output waveform. Turning noise output back on does not enable the noise signal from being able to add to the waveform signal. Use the Vertical menu to reconnect the noise signal to the waveform output.**

Outputting a Waveform

To output a loaded waveform, push the **CH 1 OUT** and/or **CH 2 OUT** front-panel button, then the **RUN** front-panel button. The LEDs near each button light up to indicate they are enabled. The instrument outputs the waveform depending on the Run mode. You can turn either or both channel outputs on or off while the instrument is running by pushing the **CH 1 OUT** or **CH 2 OUT** buttons. To stop waveform output, push the **RUN** button so that the LED goes out.

Saving and Restoring Setup Parameters

The waveform or pattern file contains only the waveform and clock information. When you load a waveform or pattern file, the output signal will use the current instrument setup parameters.

To save you from doing a manual setup procedure each time you load a waveform, the AWG500-Series Generator lets you save setup parameters into a setup file. You can then restore the saved settings for use with waveforms.

Do the following steps to save the current setup parameters:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→**Save Setup** (side). The Select Setup Filename dialog box appears.
2. Enter a setup file name. The setup file name must have the extension .set.
3. Push the **OK** side button. The setup information is saved to the designated file.

Do the following steps to restore setup parameters from a file:

1. Select **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→**Restore Setup** (side). The message box displaying *Restoring setup destroys current settings.* appears. The instrument then opens the Input Filename dialog box.
2. Enter or select the setup file name to load.
3. Push the **OK** side button to load the file and restore the setup parameters, or push the **Cancel** side button to exit the restore process without loading the setup file.

Tutorials

This section contains tutorials to help you learn how to operate the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator. These tutorials provide a good introduction to the following basic features of the instrument:

1. Instrument setup
2. Loading and outputting a sample waveform
3. Creating and editing standard function waveforms
4. Editing a waveform using quick editor
5. Using the equation editor
6. Creating and executing sequences

***NOTE**. These tutorials do not cover all the features and functions of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator. They are intended only to introduce the basic instrument functions.*

Optional Equipment

You do not need any equipment to do the tutorials in this section. However, connecting an oscilloscope to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator and observing the waveforms output can help you understand more quickly how the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator works. To observe the instrument waveforms you will need the following equipment:

- A digital storage oscilloscope
  (A Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscope or equivalent)
- One 50 Ω BNC cable

Connect the oscilloscope to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator as shown in Figure 2–27.

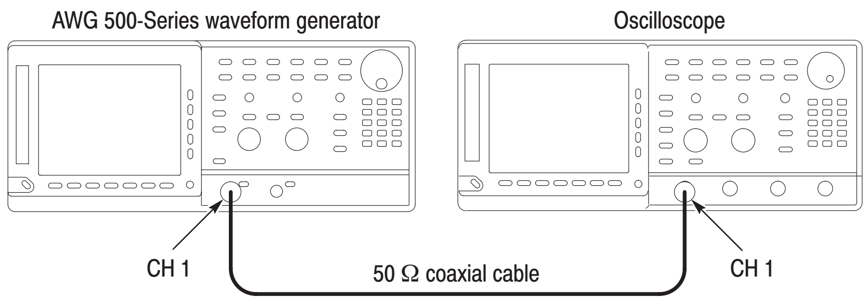


Figure 2–27: Cable connection between Waveform Generator and oscilloscope

Before Starting Tutorials

Before going on to the tutorials, confirm that the instrument is installed correctly. Refer to *Installation* on page 1–6.

Push the **ON/STBY** button to turn on the instrument. Refer to *Power the Instrument On* on page 1–9. After you turn on the power and the startup diagnostic routines complete without error, the instrument displays an initial screen similar to that shown in Figure 2–28. You are now ready to perform the tutorials.

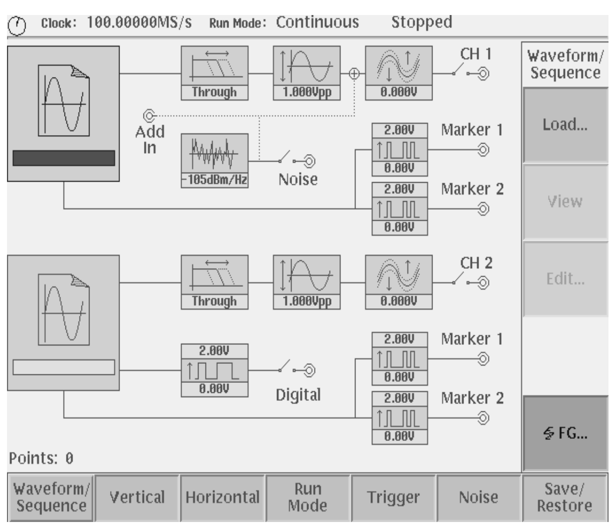


Figure 2–28: Initial screen (for the AWG520)

If the instrument does not power on correctly or does not pass the power-on diagnostics, you cannot do the tutorials in this section. Contact the nearest Tektronix service center for help.

Tutorial 1: Instrument Setup

This tutorial shows you how to use the UTILITY menu to set the instrument internal clock (date and time) and adjust the screen brightness.

What you will learn in this tutorial	How to use the arrow button and general purpose knob. How to set the date and time. How to adjust the screen brightness.

***NOTE**. You can skip this tutorial and go to page 2–45.*

Display the UTILITY menu

1. Display the system utility screen as following steps:

a. Press the **UTILITY** button on the front–panel to display the UTILITY menu.

b. Press the **System** bottom button that is the lower most-left button on the bezel. The instrument displays the system utility screen as shown in Figure 2–29.

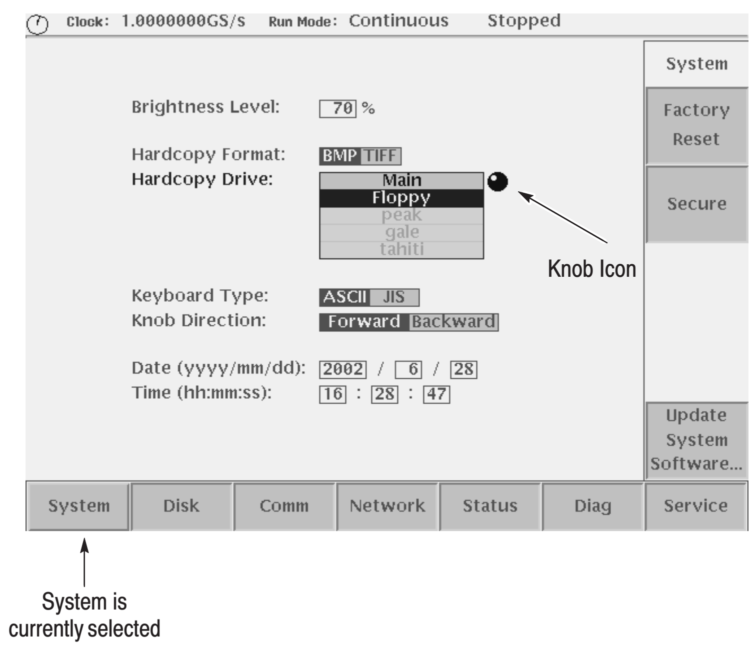


Figure 2–29: System utility screen

Set the Date and Time

2. Do the following steps to set the year:

a. Using arrow buttons: repeatedly press the ▼ button at the upper middle part of the front–panel until the **Year:** in the screen highlights.

b. Using the general purpose knob: Note that the current displayed year in the **Year:** is also displayed at the upper right of the screen, together with the icon knob. This means that you can adjust the value using the general purpose knob. Turn the general purpose knob at the right upper corner of the front–panel clockwise or counterclockwise until the word *year* is displayed.

3. Do the following steps to set the month and day:

a. Press the ▼ button once to highlight the **Month:**.

b. Use the general purpose knob to set the month.

c. Set the *day* in the **Day:** as was done in step **a** and **b** above.

4. Using the ▼ button and the general purpose knob, set the *hour*, *minute* and *second* in the **Hour:**, **Min:** and **Sec:**, respectively, as were done in step 3.

Adjust Screen Brightness

5. Do the following steps to adjust the screen brightness:

a. Repeatedly press the ▼ button until the **Brightness Level:** in the screen highlights.

b. Turn the general purpose knob clockwise or counterclockwise while looking at the screen until you get the most suitable brightness for you.

The changes made during this tutorial take effect immediately. You can display the system utility screen and adjust the screen brightness at any time without exiting current tasks.

You have completed the Instrument Setup tutorial.

Tutorial 2: Loading and Outputting a Sample Waveform

This tutorial shows you how to load and output a waveform from the sample waveform floppy disk provided with the AWG500-Series Generator..

What you will learn in this tutorial	How to select a drive. How to select and load a file. How to view a loaded file. How to output the loaded waveform file.

Display the SETUP Menu

1. Push the **SETUP** front-panel button to display the SETUP menu screen. The SETUP menu screen is the initial power-on screen shown in Figure 2–28 on page 2–42. If you skipped Tutorial 1, you are already at the **SETUP** menu.

Select a Drive

2. Insert the sample waveform floppy disk into the drive unit to the left of the screen.

3. Push the **Waveform/Sequence** bottom button to display the waveform/sequence side menu. This side menu contains three items: **Load...**, **View**, and **Edit...**. The ellipsis (...) means that this menu item will display a sub-menu (side or pop-up) when selected.

4. Push the **Load...** side button to display the Select File list, shown in Figure 2–30. Make sure that the sub-side menu displays **Drive...**, **Cancel** and **OK** items.

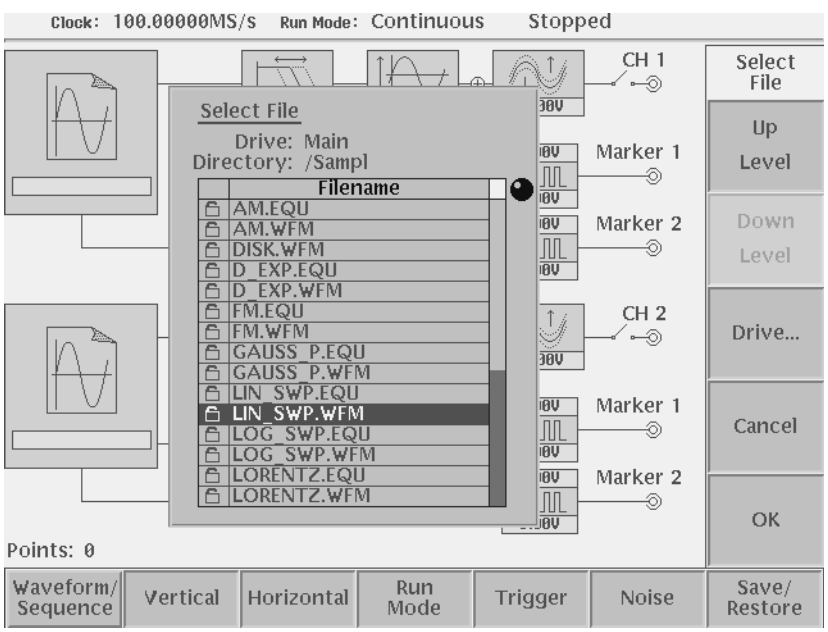


Figure 2–30: The Select File list

5. Push the **Drive...** side menu button. The Select Drive dialog box appears at the corner of the screen and the Drive... sub-side menu also appears. Note that the knob icon appears in the dialog box. This means that you can use the general purpose knob to select a drive from the list.

6. Turn the general purpose knob or use the navigation arrow buttons to highlight the word *Floppy* and then push the **OK** side button. The dialog box now lists the files in the sample waveform floppy disk.

Load a Sample Waveform

7. Turn the general purpose knob to select *LIN_SWP.WFM* from the file listing in the dialog box. Then push the **OK** side menu button and wait until the LED of the floppy disk drive goes off.

   This operation loads the selected waveform file into the instrument waveform memory. Confirm that 8000 is displayed in the Points: display field at the lower left of the screen and that LIN_SWP.WFM is displayed in the WFM File: display field.

View the Sample Waveform

Do the following steps to view the waveform you just loaded:

8. Push the **View** side menu button to display the waveform. The waveform is displayed on the screen as shown in Figure 2–31.

9. When you are done viewing the waveform, push the **OK** side menu button to exit the viewer.

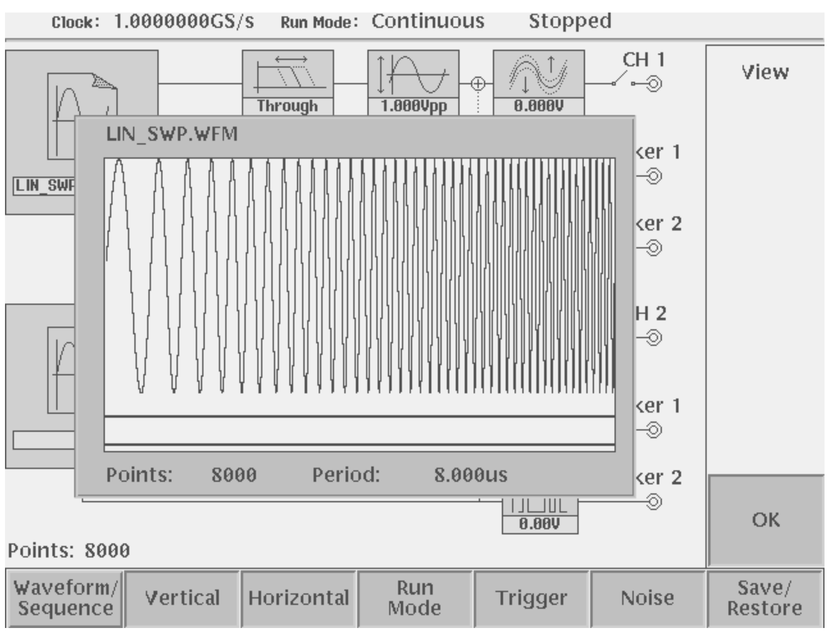


Figure 2–31: Viewing a waveform loaded into memory

Output the Waveform

Do the following steps to output the waveform from the channel 1 output connector:

10. Push the **RUN** button on the front–panel. Pushing the **RUN** button causes the instrument to output the analog waveform. Push the **RUN** button again to stop waveform output.

***NOTE**. You must push the RUN button to output a waveform. The instrument does not automatically output a signal after loading a data file unless the instrument was in the Run state when you loaded the new data file.*

11. Push the **CH 1 OUT** button near the CH1 output connector. Pushing the **CH 1 OUT** button connects the channel one output to the **CH 1** connector. Push the **CH 1 OUT** button again to turn off CH 1 output.

12. If you connected an oscilloscope to the Waveform Generator, observe that the waveform on the oscilloscope is the same as that shown in Figure 2–31.

You have completed the Loading and Outputting a Sample Waveform tutorial.

Tutorial 3: Creating and Editing Standard Function Waveforms

This tutorial shows you how to create a new waveform by combining two standard function waveforms in the waveform editor. You will create a sine wave and then multiply the sine waveform by another sine waveform.

What you will learn in this tutorial	How to reset the instrument to factory defaults. How to open the waveform editor. How to create a standard function waveform. How to do a waveform mathematical operation. How to save and output the new waveform.

Reset the Instrument

Do the following steps to reset the instrument to factory default settings:

1. Push the **UTILITY** button on the front–panel to display the UTILITY menu screen.
2. Push the **Factory Reset** side menu button. If the Factory Reset side menu item is not shown, push the **System** bottom menu button and then push the **Factory Reset** side menu button. The SETUP menu screen appears.
3. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument is reset to the factory default setting.

Open the Waveform Editor

Do the following steps to open the waveform editor screen:

4. Push the **EDIT** bottom on the front–panel.
5. Push the **Edit** bottom menu button.
6. Push the **New Waveform** side menu button. The instrument displays the waveform editor initial screen as shown in Figure 2–32.

Create a Sine Wave

Do the following steps to create a standard sine function waveform:

7. Push the **Operation** bottom button. The instrument displays the Operation pop-up menu.
8. Select **Standard Waveform...** from the pop-up menu by using the general purpose knob. By default, **Standard Waveform...** is selected.
9. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument displays the standard function dialog box as shown in Figure 2–33.

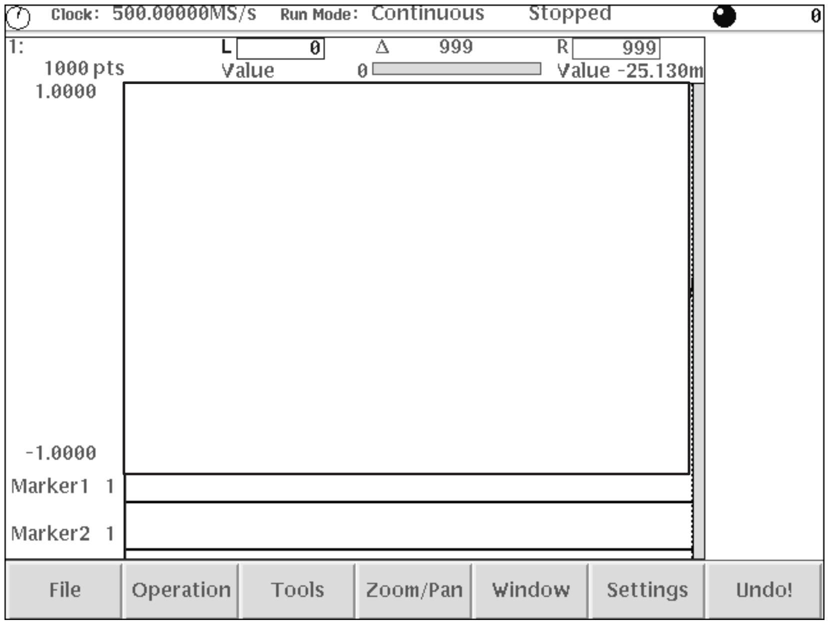


Figure 2-32: Waveform editor initial screen

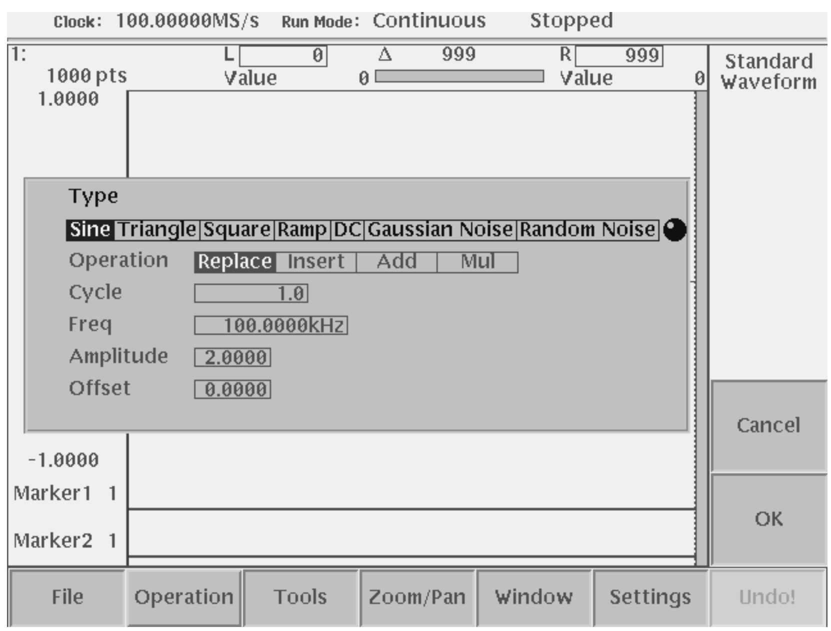


Figure 2-33: The Standard Function dialog box

10. Confirm that the knob icon is located to the right of the Type field items. This is the default selection for this dialog box. If Type is not selected, use the ⏶ or ⏷ button on the front–panel to select the Type field.

11. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **Sine** field item. Note that **Sine** is the default selection.

12. Push the the ⏷ button twice to select the **Cycle** field.

13. Turn the general purpose knob to set the cycle to **5.0**.

14. Push the **Enter** button to enter the value in the field.

15. Push the **OK** side button. You have created a five-cycle sine wave with a peak-to-peak range of 2.0 digital to analog converter (DAC) units, as shown in Figure 2–34.

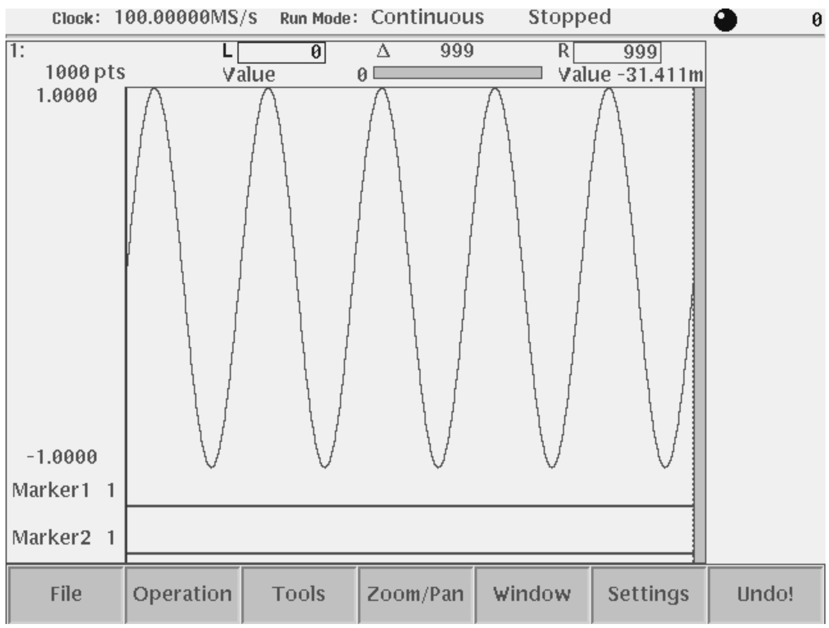


Figure 2–34: Standard sine wave function created in the Waveform editor

***NOTE**. The waveform amplitude shown in the Waveform editor does not directly correspond to the output waveform voltage amplitude. The levels in the Waveform Editor correspond to the instrument 10-bit digital to analog convertor (DAC) resolution. A signal with a –1.000 to +1.000 range utilizes the full resolution of the DAC circuit.*

The actual output signal values (peak-to-peak and offset) are set in the Setup menu. The Setup menu output values are multipliers, and assume that the edited waveform signal uses the full ±1.000 waveform range.

Math Operation

Do the following steps to create a new waveform by multiplying the current sine waveform with a second sine function waveform:

16. Push the **Operation** bottom button. The instrument displays the Operation pop-up menu.

17. Select **Standard Waveform...** from the pop-up menu by using the general purpose knob. By default, **Standard Waveform...** is selected.

18. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument displays the standard function dialog box as shown in Figure 2–33.

19. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **Sine** item in the Type field. Note that **Sine** is the default type menu selection.

20. Select **Operation** in the pop-up menu using the ↓ button.

21. Select *Mul* item using the general purpose knob.

22. Push the the ↓ button once to select the **Cycle** field.

23. Use the general purpose knob to set the number of cycles to **20.0**.

24. Push the ↓ button twice to select the **Amplitude** field.

25. Use the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to **1.0** .

26. Push the **OK** side button to perform the multiply operation; this action multiplies the sine wave in the waveform editor by the sine wave you have specified in the Standard Function dialog box. Figure 2–35 shows the resulting waveform.

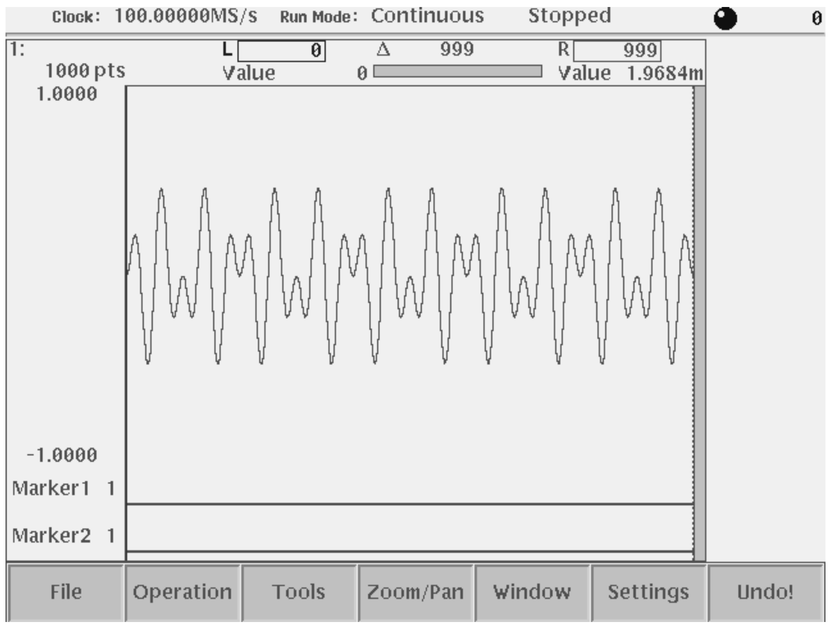


Figure 2–35: Waveform created with the multiply operation

Save the Waveform

To output the waveform in the waveform editor, you must first save the waveform into a file and then load the file into the waveform memory. Do the following steps to save the waveform:

27. Push the **File** bottom button. The File pop-up menu appears.

28. Select **Save** from the pop-up menu using the general purpose knob

29. Push the **OK** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 2–36. Note that *.wfm* is displayed in the file name field.

30. Push the **SHIFT** button on the front–panel (the SHIFT LED lights). This operation lets you input uppercase characters with the keypad. The SHIFT LED goes off when the Input File Name dialog box disappears.

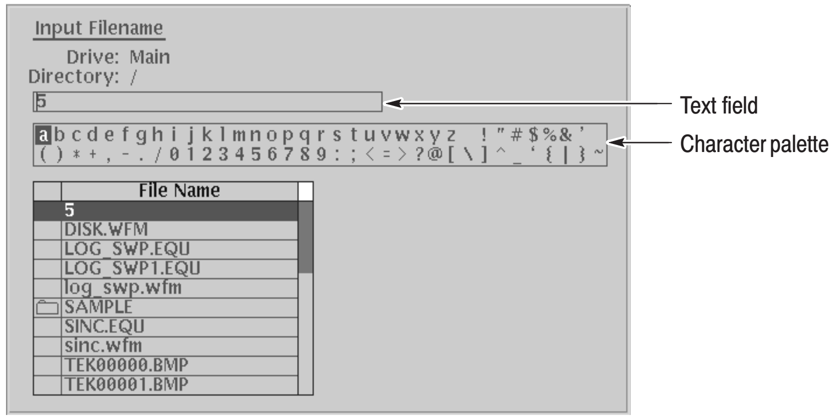


Figure 2–36: File Name Input dialog box

31. Push the **ENTER** button once. Confirm that the letter A is inserted into the text field.
32. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the letter **B** in the character palette, and push the **ENTER** button.
33. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the letter **C** in the character palette, and push the **ENTER** button.
34. Push the **4** and **5** buttons on the front–panel keypad. Now, **ABC45.WFM** is displayed in the text field.
35. Push the **OK** side button. The waveform in the editor is now saved in the file *ABC45.WFM*.

Output the Waveform

Do the following steps to load and output the saved waveform:

36. Push the **SETUP** button on the front–panel to display the SETUP menu.

37. Load the file *ABC45.WFM*. Refer to *Loading Sample Waveform* on page 2–45 if you need help.

38. Push the **RUN** button on the front–panel to output the analog waveform.

***NOTE**. Pushing the **RUN** button causes the instrument to output the waveform. Push the **RUN** button again to stop output. The instrument does not automatically output the waveform from a newly-loaded file.*

---

39. Push the **CH 1** button near the CH 1 output connector on the front–panel. If you connected an oscilloscope to the Waveform Generator, observe that the waveform on the oscilloscope is the same as that you viewed in Figure 2–35.

You have completed the Creating and Editing Standard Function Waveforms tutorial.

Tutorial 4: Editing a Waveform Using Quick Editor

Quick editor is a function that lets you simultaneously edit and output a waveform. Although you open the quick editor from within the waveform editor, you can consider that the waveforms in the quick editor waveform is completely independent of the waveform editor. When you exit from the quick editor, you can select whether to save or cancel the changes.

What you will learn in this tutorial	How to enter into the quick editor. How to edit a waveform. How to save the changes in the waveform editor.

Preparation

Do the following steps to set the instrument to the factory default settings and load a sample waveform:

1. Reset the instrument to the factory default settings (refer to page 2–48). The SETUP menu screen appears.

2. Load the waveform *LIN_SWP.WFM* from the sample waveform floppy disk (refer to Tutorial 1 for how to load a waveform file from a floppy disk).

Open the Quick Editor

You can enter in the quick editor only from the waveform editor. First you open a file in the waveform editor, and then you enable the quick editor mode.

***NOTE**. You can enter in the quick editor only from the waveform editor. First you open a file in the waveform editor, and then you enable the quick editor mode.*

3. Push the **Edit...** side button for editing the waveform in the waveform editor. The Waveform Editor screen appears, as shown in Figure 2–37.

4. Push the front–panel **QUICK EDIT** button. When you enter into the quick editor, the bottom menu buttons are disabled and the Quick editor side menu is displayed.

Edit a Waveform

You can only edit the waveform within the area between the two vertical cursors. You can move the active cursor (currently-selected vertical cursor) horizontally by turning the general purpose knob or by entering a numeric position with the front–panel keypad.

You select between the active cursors by pushing the **TOGGLE** front-panel button (located near the general purpose knob). The active cursor is represented by a solid vertical line, and the inactive cursor by a vertical dashed line.

The current cursor positions are displayed in the **L** and **R** fields in the upper part of the editor. By default, the left cursor is positioned at the left-most position of the editor screen; the right cursor is positioned and the right-most position of the editor screen.

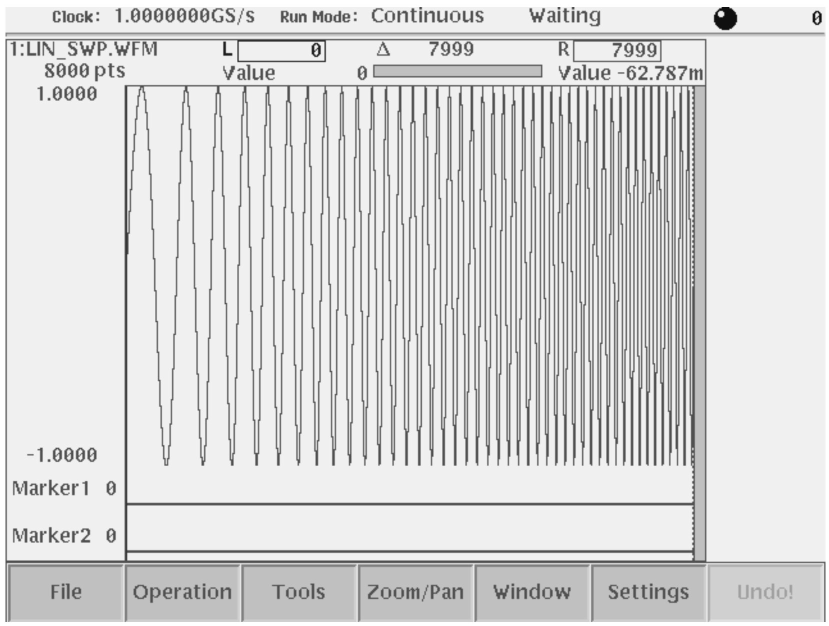


Figure 2–37: Waveform in the waveform editor

Do the following steps to specify the edit region (area between the cursors) using the cursors:

5. Confirm that the left cursor is active: the **L** field is highlighted, the left cursor is a solid line, and the right cursor is a dashed line. If not, push the **TOGGLE** button on the front–panel to make the left cursor active.
6. Move the left cursor to position 2808 by pushing the **2**, **8**, **0**, **8** , and **ENTER** buttons. If you have an external keyboard connected, just type the numbers and press the Return key.
7. Push the **TOGGLE** button on the front–panel to change the active cursor. Confirm that the **R** field is now highlighted, the left cursor changed to a dashed line, and the right cursor changed to a solid line.
8. Move the right cursor to position 5461 by pushing the **5**, **4**, **6**, **1**, and **ENTER** buttons. If you have an external keyboard connected, just type the numbers and press the Return key.
9. Change the amplitude within the region specified by the area cursor as following steps:

10. Turn the **LEVEL/SCALE** knob clockwise to change the waveform amplitude to 0.5 V. The waveform should look like the one shown in Figure 2–38.

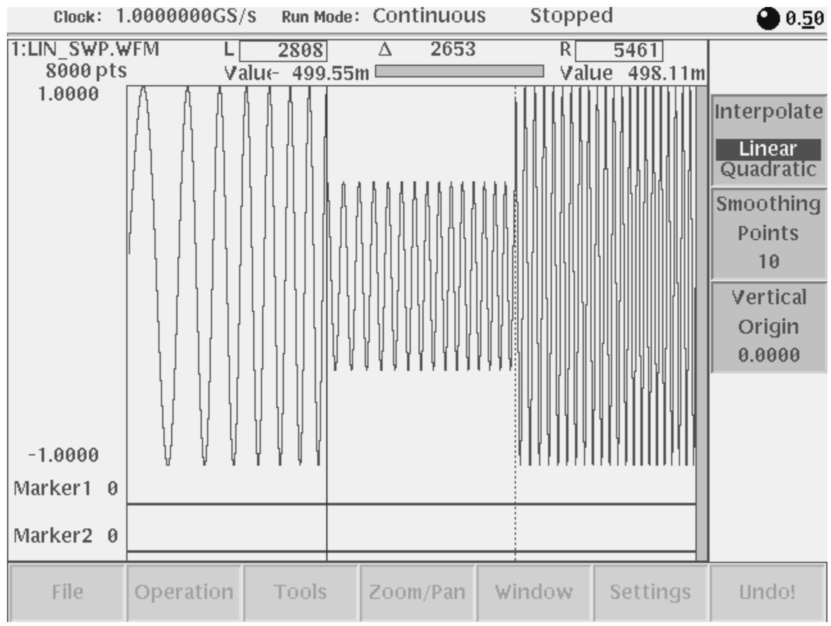


Figure 2–38: Waveform edit in quick editor

If you connected an oscilloscope to the Waveform Generator, observe that the waveform on the oscilloscope changes as soon as you make changes to the Quick Editor window.

Save Changes

The waveform in the edit buffer is copied into the Undo buffer before going into the Quick edit mode. Quick editing is performed on the waveform data in the edit buffer. When you quit the quick editor, you can select two options; save the changes or cancel the changes. When you select save changes, the instrument does not take any action, as the waveform data is already current. When you select cancel, the instrument copies the contents of the Undo buffer back to the edit buffer.

Save the Quick Edit mode changes you just made by doing the following steps:

11. Push the **QUICK EDIT** button on the from panel to quit the quick editor. A message box appears at the center of the screen and the side menu displays **Cancel**, **No**, and **Yes** menu items.

12. Push the **Yes** side button to save the changes. If you have connected an oscilloscope to the Waveform Generator, the waveform being displayed on the oscilloscope screen shows the new waveform.

Remember that the waveform in the Quick Editor does not affect the waveform in the waveform memory unless you save it to the file.

You have completed the Editing a Waveform Using Quick Editor tutorial.

Tutorial 5: Using the Equation Editor

You can create a waveform by creating, compiling, and loading an equation file. An equation file is a text file that you create and edit in the Equation Editor. This tutorial describes how to load, edit, and compile an equation file.

What you will learn in this tutorial	How to load an equation file. How to edit an equation. How to compile an equation file.

Preparation

Do the following step to set the instrument to the factory default settings:

1. Reset the instrument to the factory default settings (refer to page 2–48). The **SETUP** menu screen appears.

***NOTE**. Connect a standard 101- or 106-key PC keyboard to make it easier and faster to create and edit text.*

Load an Equation File

Do the following steps to load a sample equation file from the sample waveform floppy disk:

2. Insert the sample waveform floppy disk into the drive unit.

3. Push the **EDIT** button on the front–panel. The screen listing the files in the default storage media appears. If the screen does not show the file list, push the **EDIT** button again to display the file list.

4. Push the **Drive** bottom button.

5. Push the **Floppy** side button to select the floppy disk drive. The file list for the floppy disk appears.

6. Select the file *log_swp.equ* from the file list using the general purpose knob.

7. Push the **EDIT** bottom button.

8. Push the **EDIT** side button. The equation editor displays the *log_swp.equ* file.

Edit the Equation

Do the following steps to replace the sin() equation keyword with the tri() keyword:.

9. Use the ⬇ button to move the cursor downward and position it at the line where the sine function is written.
10. Use the ➡ button to move the cursor position to just after the word **sin**.
11. Push the ⬅ button three times to delete the word **sin**.
12. Push the **Math Functions** bottom button to display the Math Functions pop-up menu.
13. Select **tri** from the pop-up menu using the general purpose knob.
14. Push the **OK** side button. Confirm that the word **tri** is inserted at the cursor position.

Save the Edited Equation

At compile time you can not specify a storage drive. The instrument uses the drive specified when you loaded or saved the equation file. To compile the edited equation file to a hard disk file, you must first save the edited equation to the hard disk.

Do the following steps to save the edited equation to a hard disk file:

15. Push the **File** bottom button.
16. Push the **Save As...** side button. The Storage Select dialog box is displayed on the screen.
17. Select **Main** from the dialog box using the general purpose knob.
18. Push the **OK** side button. The Input File Name dialog box appears.
19. Push the **OK** side button. This saves the equation file without changing the file name.

Compile the Equation

Do the following steps to compile the equation file:

20. Push the **Compile** side button. When the compile completes, the waveform is saved into the file *log_swp.wfm*.
21. Push the **View** side button to view the compiled waveform, as shown in Figure 2–39 on page 2–61.
22. Push the **OK** side button to close the viewer screen.
23. Push the **Close** side button twice to exit the equation editor.

You have completed the Using the Equation Editor tutorial.

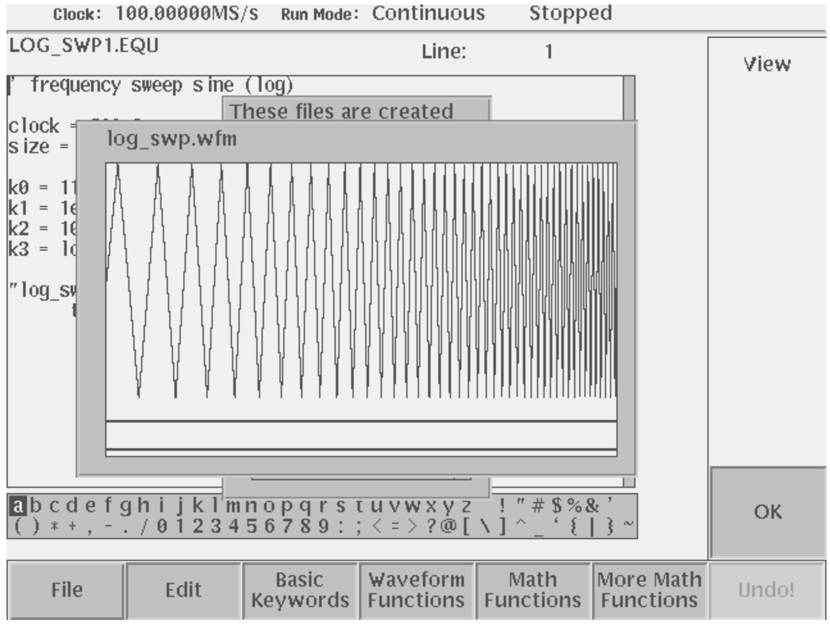


Figure 2–39: Viewer displaying compiled waveform

Tutorial 6: Creating and Running Waveform Sequences

The sequence editor lets you create a sequence file. A sequence file is a list of waveform or pattern files to output along with control statements that define how many times and when the waveform is output This tutorial describes how to create five simple waveforms and two simple sequence files. The first sequence file is a main sequence file. The second sequence file is a subsequence called from the main sequence file.

What you will learn in this tutorial	How to open the Sequence Editor How to edit a sequence table How to create a main sequence and a subsequence How to set run mode How to run the sequence

Preparation

Do the following steps to reset the instrument to the factory default settings.

1. Reset the instrument to the factory default settings (refer to Resetting page 2–48).

2. Push **EDIT** button on the front–panel. The screen lists the files in the current storage media. If the instrument does not display the file list, push the **EDIT** button again to display the screen listing files.

Creating Waveforms

You will create five waveforms using standard functions. Table 2–15 lists the waveforms you will create.

Table 2–15: Waveforms to be used in sample sequences

No.	Waveform file name	Standard waveform pop-up parameters				
		Type	Operation	Cycle	Amplitude	Offset
1	SINE.WFM	Sine	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
2	TRIANGLE.WFM	Triangle	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
3	SQUARE.WFM	Square	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
4	RAMP.WFM	Ramp	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
5	GAUSSN.WFM	Gaussian Noise	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0

Do the following steps to create and save the sequence waveforms:

3. Follow the procedures in *Create the Sine Wave* on page 2–48. In the Standard Function pop-up menu, use the parameters found in Table 2–15 for each waveform.

4. Follow the procedures in *Save the Waveform* on page 2–52. In the Input File Name dialog box, input the waveform file name according to Table 2–15.

Figure 2–40 shows the screen displaying three windows in each of which one waveform is created. You can open and edit up to three waveforms at the same time. You may use this window function in the waveform editor for creating the above waveforms.

To select a window:

- Push the **Window** bottom button.
- Push the **Window 1**, **Window 2** or **Window 3** side button to activate that window.

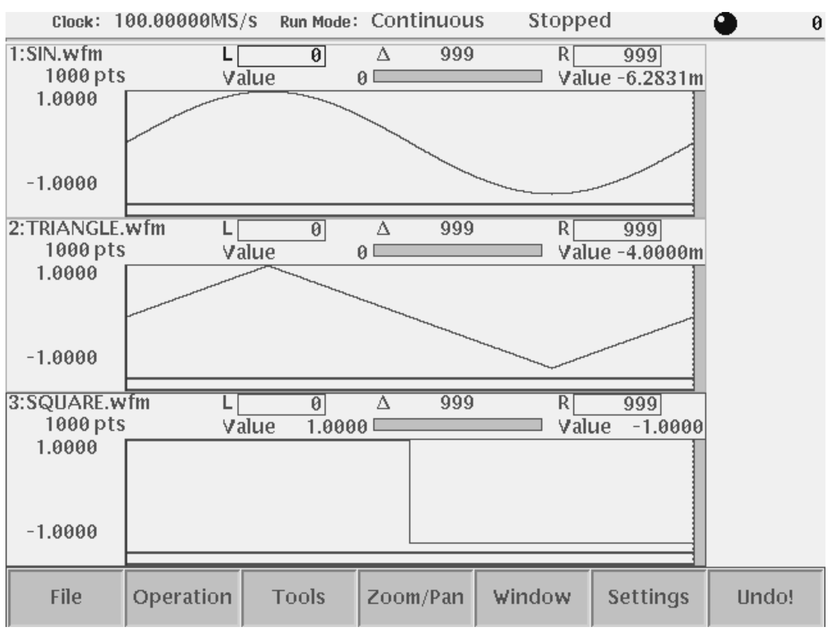


Figure 2–40: Waveforms created at the same time in three windows

Open the Sequence Editor

In this procedure you will open the Sequence Editor

Do the following steps to open the Sequence Editor and create the sequences:

5. Push the **EDIT** button on the front–panel. The screen listing the file in the default stage media appears. If not, push **EDIT** button again to display the screen listing files.

6. Push the **New Sequence** side button. The sequence table to create a new sequence is displayed in the screen. See Figure 2–41.

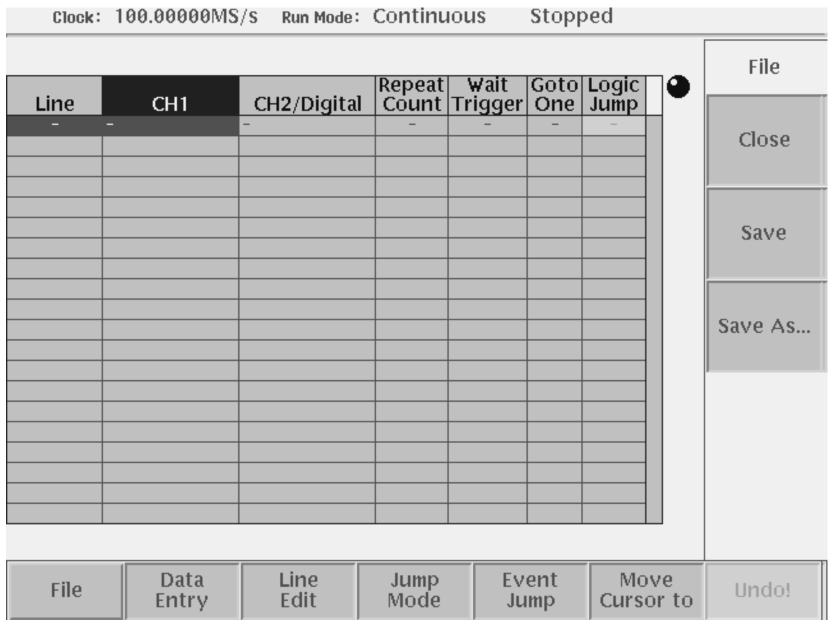


Figure 2–41: Initial sequence table

Create the Subsequence

You will create the sequence list shown in Table 2–16. This sequence is used as a subsequence and is called from the main sequence that you create in *Making the Main Sequence* on page 2–67. This sequence runs as follows:

- **Line 1**: outputs the gaussian noise waveform 40000 times and then goes to line 2.
- **Line 2**: outputs the ramp waveform 60000 times and then goes to the next line (3).
- **Line 3**: outputs the triangle waveform 60000 times and then goes to next line (4).
- **Line 4**: output the sine waveform 30000 times and then quits the subsequence and returns to the main sequence.

Table 2–16: Sequence table contents in SUBSEQ.SEQ

Line	CH1	CH2	Repeat Count	Wait Trigger	Goto One	Logic Jump
1	GAUSSN.WFM		40000			
2	RAMP.WFM		60000			
3	TRIANGLE.WFM		60000			
4	SINE.WFM		30000			

In the sequence file used as subsequence, the Wait Trigger, Goto One and Logic Jump are neglected. They are effective only in the main sequence.

Do the following steps to create the subsequence:

7. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button.
8. Push the **Insert Line** side button. This displays the line number in the **Line** column and allows you to edit the line.
9. Push the **Enter file name** side button. The dialog box listing files appears at the center of the screen.
10. Select *gaussn.wfm* from the dialog box using the general purpose knob.
11. Push the **OK** side button. The waveform file name *gaussn.wfm* appears in the **CH1** column.
12. Push the ⬇ button once to move the highlighted cursor to the next line.
13. Repeat steps 8 through 12 to insert lines 2 through 4 and enter waveform file names listed in Table 2–16 into the **CH1** column.

14. Repeatedly push the ⬆ button to go back to line 1.

15. Push the ➡ button to place the highlighted cursor to the **Repeat Count** column. The side menu automatically changes and the **Repeat Count** side menu item appears. Note that the **Repeat Count** side menu item is selected by default.

16. Push the **4**, **0**, **0**, **0**, **0**, and **ENTER** buttons in this order. The repeat count 40000 is set in the **Repeat Count** column.

17. Push the ⬇ button once to move the highlighted cursor to the next line.

18. Repeat step 16 to enter the repeat count for lines 2 through 4 as specified in Table 2–16.

You have finished editing the sequence table. The table should look like Figure 2–42.

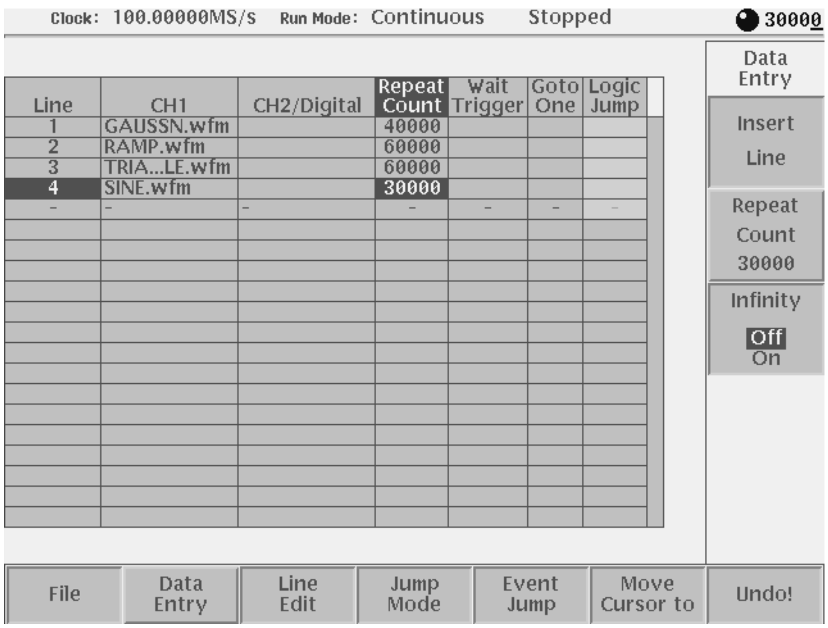


Figure 2–42: Example of sequence (SUBSEQ.SEQ)

Save the Subsequence

Do the following steps to save the subsequence table information to the file *subseq.seq*:

19. Push the **File** bottom button.

20. Push the **Save As...** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears.

21. Enter the file name *subseq.seq* into the file name field and save the file. Refer to *Save the Waveform* on page 2–50 if you need help.

Create the Main Sequence

In this procedure you will create the main sequence list shown in Table 2–17. This sequence runs as follows:

- **Line1**: waits for trigger event. When a trigger event occurs, this line calls subsequence file *subseq.seq* twice, and then goes to line 2.
- **Line 2**: infinitely outputs the ramp waveform until an event occurs. When an event occurs, the sequence jumps to line 3.
- **Line 3**: outputs the triangle waveform 40000 times. When the output completes, the sequence goes back to the line 1. If an event occurs before this line completes execution, the sequence jumps to line 4.
- **Line 4**: outputs the triangle waveform 60000 times and then stops executing.

Table 2–17: Sequence table contents in MAINSEQ.SEQ

Line	CH1	CH2	Repeat Count	Wait Trigger	Goto One	Logic Jump
1	SUBSEQ.SEQ		2	On		
2	RAMP.WFM		Inf.			Next
3	TRIANGLE.wfm		40000		On	4
4	SINE.WFM		60000			

22. Follow the procedures in steps 5 and 6 of this tutorial to open a new sequence table.
23. Fill the CH1 and Repeat Count columns in lines 1 through 4 according to Table 2–17: refer to steps 7 through 18 of this tutorial if you need help. To set *Inf.* in the **Repeat Count** of line 2, push the **Infinity** (**SHIFT** + ←) side button once.
24. Repeatedly push the ▲ button to go back to the line 1.
25. Push the **CLEAR MENU** bottom button. This step must be made to make the ◀ and ▶ buttons available to move the highlighted cursor.
26. Push the ▶ button to move the highlighted cursor to the **Wait Trigger** column.
27. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button.
28. Push the **Wait Trig.** side button to set this field to *On*.
29. Push the **Jump Mode** bottom button, and Push the **Logic** side button to set the jump mode to **Logic Jump**.

30. Push the **Event Jump** sbottom button. The screen as shown in Figure 2–43 appears.

Push the **Event Jump** bottom button, when you set the Timing, the Table Jump Off/On, the Jump to and the Strobe, after setting the jump mode.

31. Push the **Timing** side button to set the timing to **Sync**.

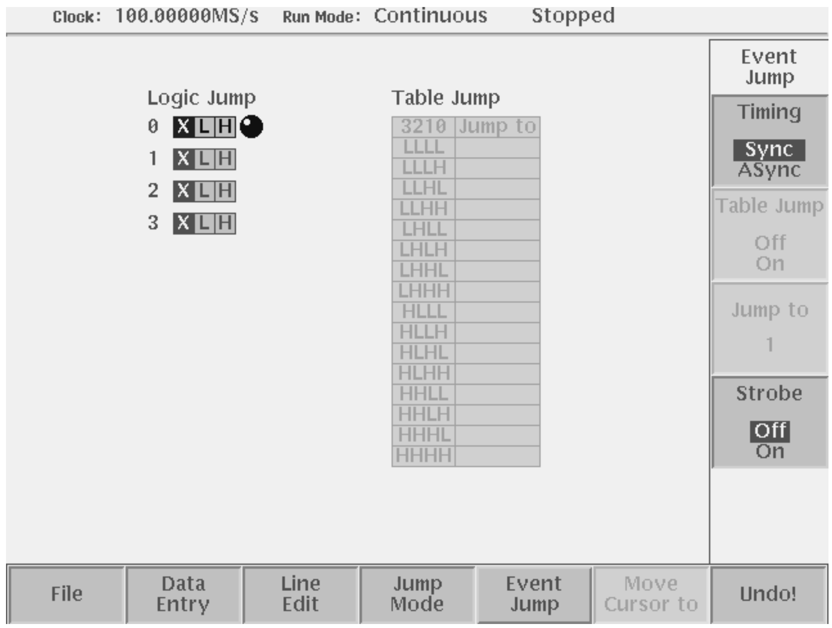


Figure 2–43: Screen for setting event jump

32. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button. This step must be made to go back to the sequence table screen.

33. Push the ↓ button once and then → button twice to move the highlighted cursor to the **Logic Jump** column.

34. Push the **Jump to Next** side button.

35. Push the ↓ button once to go to the next line.

36. Push the **Jump to Specified Line** side button.

37. Push the **Jump to** side button, and set **4** using the general purpose knob.

38. Push the **CLEAR MENU** bottom button. This step must be made to make the ← and → buttons able to move the highlight cursor.

39. Push the ◀ button once to move the highlighted cursor to the **Goto One** column.

40. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button. This step must be made to go back to the sequence table screen.

41. Push the **Goto One** side button to *On*.

You should be able to complete the main sequence table by using steps similar to creating the subsequence table. The finished main sequence table should look like Figure 2–44.

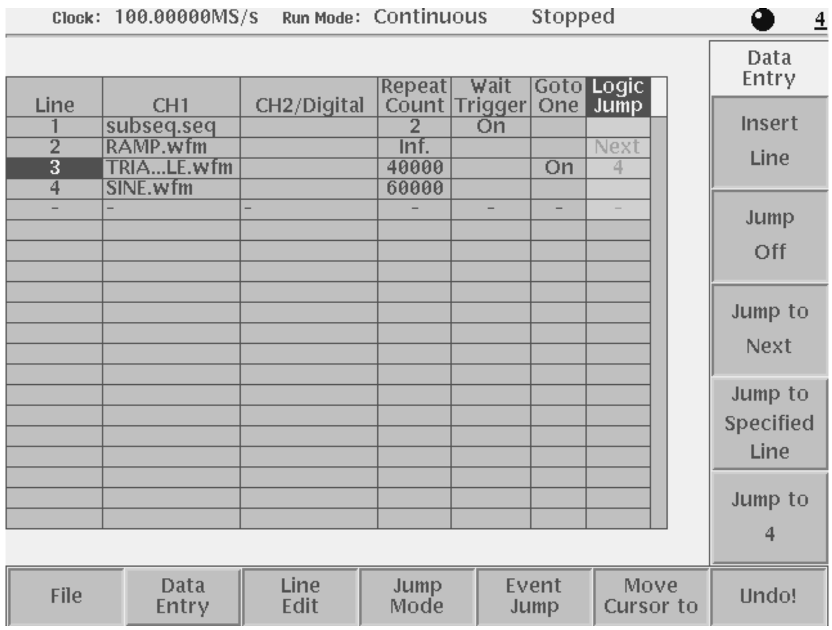


Figure 2–44: Example of sequence (MAINSEQ.SEQ)

42. Save the sequence table in the file *mainseq.seq*; refer to steps from 19 to 21 of this procedure.

Set Run Mode

The event jump functions in the sequence list are only functional when the instrument run mode is set to Enhanced mode. Do the following steps to set the run mode to enhanced:

43. Push the **SETUP** button on the front–panel to display the SETUP screen.

44. Push the **Run Mode** bottom button.

45. Push the **Enhanced** side button.

Load and Run the Sequence Files

Do the following steps to load and run the sequence files:

46. Push the **Waveform/Sequence** bottom button.

47. Push the **Load...** side button.

48. Select *mainseq.seq* from the file list in the dialog box.

49. Push the **OK** side button. The Waveform Generator reads all related sequence files and waveform files at this time. If the instrument cannot read or find a sequence file, it displays an error message. Make sure that you entered the sequence and subsequence file names exactly as they appear in the file lists; remember that file names are case–sensitive.

If there is an error in the sequence descriptions, the instrument displays a message and stops reading the files. Errors may occur when you use infinite repeats in a subsequence.

***NOTE**. The* AWG510/520 Arbitrary Waveform Generator *reads all related sequence files and waveform files at this time. If the instrument cannot read or find a sequence file, it displays an error message. Make sure that you entered the sequence and subsequence file names exactly as they appear in the file lists. Remember that file names are case sensitive.*

Run the Sequence Files

Do the following steps to load and run the sequence files:

50. Push the **RUN** button so that the RUN LED lights.

51. Push the **CH 1 OUT** button near the CH1 connector so that the CH1 LED lights. When the subsequence *subseq.seq* is called, the Waveform Generator waits for a trigger event. The message *Waiting* is displayed in the current run status area when the instrument is waiting for a trigger. The instrument is waiting because line 1 of the main sequence is waiting for a trigger before outputting the waveforms on that line

---

***NOTE**. The instrument has a function that automatically provides trigger signals at user–defined intervals. If the instrument does not wait for you to press the Force Trigger button before executing the sequence table, you will need to disable the automatic trigger signal. Refer to page 3–117 for information on how to disable automatic trigger signals.*

---

52. Push the **FORCE TRIGGER** button on the front–panel to generate a trigger event. Line 1 of *mainseq.seq* calls the subsequence file as soon as it detects a trigger event. The subsequence list outputs the four waveforms and then returns to line 2 of the main sequence.

Line 2 continuously outputs the ramp waveform while waiting for an event signal. You will supply an event signal in the next step.

53. Push the **FORCE EVENT** button on the front–panel. This causes the sequence to jump to line 3. When line 3 completes output of the triangle waveform, it goes back to the line 1 and starts the output process over again. So, the line 1 to 3 loops and the main sequence file does not terminate unless you push the **FORCE EVENT** button.

In Enhanced mode, the entire sequence is repeatedly output. So the message *Waiting* is displayed again and again until you push the **RUN** button to turn off output.

You have completed the Creating and Running Waveform Sequences tutorial.

You have completed all 6 tutorials. Refer to the *Reference* section for detailed information on all instrument functions.

File Transfer Interface Outline

The AWG500-Series Generator have the following interfaces for file transfer :

- GPIB
- Floppy disk (FD)
- Ftp
- NFS

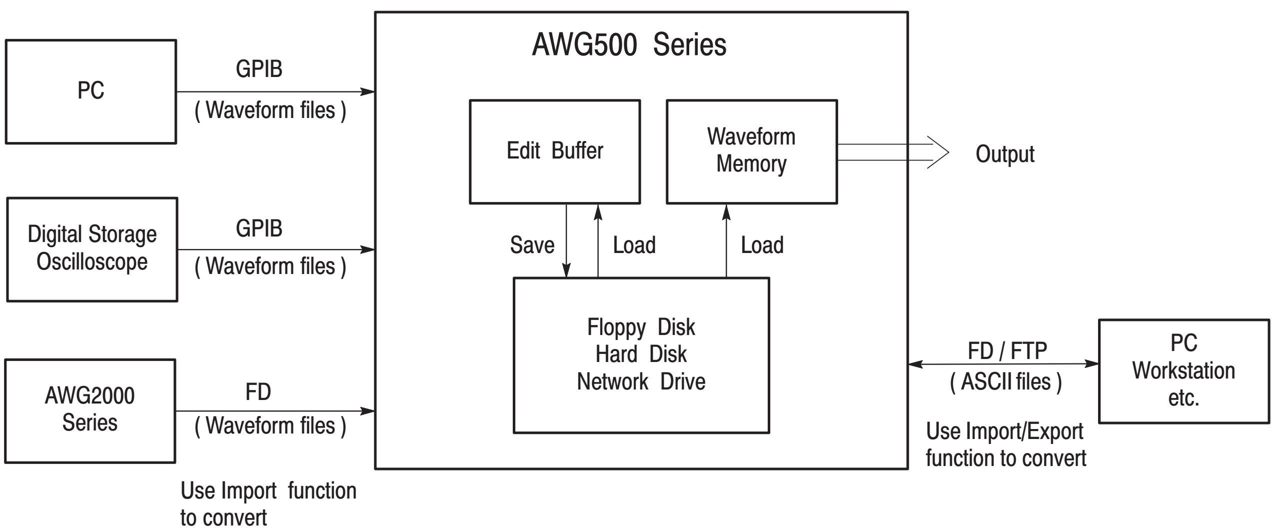


Figure 2–45: File transfer interface outlin

The AWG500-Series Generator import and/or export files from/to external equipments such as PC, DSO, AWG2000 Series, etc. over above interfaces.

Note that those interfaces have file transfer direction. Figure 2–45 shows outline for the interfaces and file transfer directions that are indicated with arrow.

Menu Structures

This section describes the structures for the menu system. You can find bottom, side, popup, screen menu items in each of four main menu structures illustrated. Simple descriptions for each item or group of items are also found.

The dialog boxes and their items, and selection items in the screen menus are omitted in this section. Item labels that follow the ellipsis (...) bring up either a sub side menu or a dialog box. The items that bring up a sub side menu are clearly illustrated, while the items that bring up a dialog box do not have subsidiary structure in this section.

The side menus are illustrated as follows:

- Side menu items that switch between two parameters:

  Format: Item–label {param1 | param2}

  Example: Output {Normal | Direct}

- Side menu items that allow the selection with the general purpose knob:

  Format: Item–label {option1 | option2 | option3 | ...}

  Example: Filter {10 MHz | 20 MHz | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | Through}

- Side menu items that allow numeric values to be set using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob:

  Format: Item–label (minimum to maximum)

  Example: Level (–5.0 to 5.0 V)

The access lines to the popup or screen menu items are represented with the dashed line and above which the label is placed to indicate Popup or Screen clearly.

SETUP Menu Hierarchy

Main ***Bottom*** ***Side*** ***Subside*** ***Popup/Screen*** ***Descriptions***

SETUP

- Waveform/Sequence — *; Loads into the waveform memory*
  - Load...
  - View
  - Edit...
  - Ez FG... To FG mode, see page 2–76
- Vertical — *; Adjusts vertical axis parameters*
  - <<*When CH1 or CH2 is selected with the front–panel button*>>
  - Filter {Through | 10 MHz | 20 MHz | 50 MHz | 100 MHz}
  - Amplitude (0.02 to 2.0 V)
  - Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V)
  - Marker...
    - Marker 1 High Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Marker 1 Low Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Marker 2 High Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Marker 2 Low Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Previous Menu
  - Add/Direct Out...
    - <<*When CH1 is selected*>>
    - None
    - Noise
    - External
    - Output {Normal | Direct}
    - Previous Menu
    - <<*When CH2 is selected*>>
    - Output {Normal | Direct}
    - Previous Menu
  - <<*When DIGITAL is selected with the front–panel button*>>
  - High Level
  - Low Level
  - Output {Hi Z | On}
  - Marker...
    - <<*Marker1 and Marker2 can not be effective in the AWG510 and AWG510 Option03* >>
    - Marker 1 High Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Marker 1 Low Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Marker 2 High Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Marker 2 Low Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)
    - Previous Menu
- Horizontal — *; Adjusts horizontal parameters*
  - Clock (50 kS/s to 1 GS/s)
  - Clock Src {Internal | External}
  - Clock Ref {Internal | External}
  - <<*When CH1 or CH2 is selected with the front–panel button*>>
  - Marker 1 Delay (0 to 2.0 ns)
  - Marker 2 Delay (0 to 2.0 ns)

Main	*Bottom*	*Side*	*Subside*	*Popup/Screen*	*Descriptions*
SETUP <cont.>					
	Run Mode				*; Selects run mode*
		Continuous			
		Triggered			
		Gated			
		Enhanced			
	Trigger				*; Sets trigger parameters*
		Source {External | Internal}			
		Slope {Positive | Negative}			
		Level (–5.0 to 5.0 V)			
		Impedance {50ohm | 1kohm}			
		Interval (1.0 μs to 10.0 s)			
	Noise				*; Sets noise output parameters*
		Output {Off | On}			
		Level (–145 to –105 dBm/Hz)			
	Save/Restore				*; Saves/restores current settings*
		Save Setup			
		Restore Setup			

Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description

Ez FG

- Sine
  - Frequency (1.000Hz to 100.0MHz)
  - Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)
  - Offset (–1.0 V to 1.0 V step 1mV)
  - Polarity { Normal | Inverted }
  - Duty/Phase...
    - Phase (–360° to 360°)
    - Previous Menu
- Triangle
  - Frequency (1.000Hz to 100.0MHz)
  - Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)
  - Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)
  - Polarity { Normal | Inverted }
  - Duty/Phase...
    - Phase (–360° to 360°)
    - Previous Menu
- Square
  - Frequency (1.000Hz to 100.0MHz)
  - Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)
  - Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)
  - Polarity { Normal | Inverted }
  - Duty/Phase...
    - Phase (–360° to 360°)
    - Previous Menu
- Ramp
  - Frequency (1.000Hz to 100.0MHz)
  - Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)
  - Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)
  - Polarity { Normal | Inverted }
  - Duty/Phase...
    - Phase (–360° to 360°)
    - Previous Menu
- Pulse
  - Frequency (1.000Hz to 100.0MHz)
  - Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)
  - Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)
  - Polarity { Normal | Inverted }
  - Duty/Phase...
    - Duty (0.1% to 99.9%)
    - Phase (–360° to 360°)
    - Previous Menu
- DC
  - Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)
- AWG...
  - To AWG Mode

EDIT Menu Hierarchy

Main	*Bottom*	*Side*	*Subside*	*Popup/Screen*	*Descriptions*
EDIT					
	EDIT (Waveform/Pattern)				*; Waveform/pattern editor*
	EDIT (Sequence)				*; Sequence editor*
	EDIT (Text/Equation)				*; Text/equation editor*
EDIT (Top Level)					
			Screen	File List	
	Drive				*; Selects storage drive*
		Main			
		Floppy			
		NET1			
		NET2			
		NET3			
	Directory				*; Directory operations*
		Up Level			
		Down Level			
		Make Directory			
	File				*; File operations*
	<<When Single is selected in Window (bottom) → Window (side) >>				
		Copy			
		Rename			
		Delete			
		Delete All			
		Attribute {Read/Write | Read Only}			
	<<When Double is selected in Window (bottom) → Window (side) >>				
		Copy			
		Copy All			
		Move			
		Move All			
	Edit				; Goes to editor
		Edit			
		New Waveform			
		New Pattern			
		New Sequence			
		New Text/Equation			
	Tools				*; Converts into waveform files*
		Compile Equation			
		Convert File Format...			
		Compile AWG20xx Equation			
		Capture Waveform			*; Imports wave from equipments*

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions
EDIT (Top Level) <Cont>					
	Update!				*; Writes into the waveform memory*
	Window				*; Double Windows operations*
		Window { Single | Double }			
		Select { Upper | Lower }			

To return to the EDIT (Top Level) menu, press EDIT button on the front-panel or select Close from the File popup menu.

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions
EDIT (Waveform/Pattern)			Screen	Waveform/Pattern Editor	
				L or U	*; Left or upper cursor*
				R or Down	*; Right or down cursor*
	File				*; Open/close*
			Popup	New Waveform New Pattern Open... Save Save As Insert from File... Close Close All	
		OK			
	Operation				*; Edit commands*
			Popup	Standard Waveform... Select Lines Cut Copy Paste (Insert) Paste (Replace) Multiple Paste... Set Data High/Low... Counter... Horizontal Shift... Horizontal Rotate... Vertical Shift... Expand... Vertical Scale... Horizontal Invert... Vertical Invert... Clip... Shift Register Generator... Set Pattern... Numeric Input...	
		OK			

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions

EDIT (Waveform/Pattern) <Cont.>

- Tools — *; Edit commands*
  - Popup: Absolute, Square, Cube, Square Root, Normalize, Differential, Integral, Add, Sub, Mul, Compare..., Convolution..., Correlation..., Digital Filter..., Re-Sampling..., Code Convert..., XY View...
  - OK
- Zoom/Pan — ; Editor display zoom/pan operations
  - Zoom In
  - Zoom Out
  - Zoom Fit
  - Pan
  - Direction {Horizontal | Vertical}
- Window — *; Selects active window*
  - Window1
  - Window2
  - Window3
- Settings — *; Sets up editor*
- Undo! — *; Undo operation*

QUICK EDIT

- Interpolate {Liniear | Quadratic}
- Smoothing Points (0 to 1000)
- Vertical Origin (–1.0000 to 1.0000)

<<No bottom button available>>

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions
EDIT (Sequence)					
			Screen	Sequence Table {Line} {CH1 | CH2 | Repeat Count | Wait Trigger | Goto One | Logic Jump}	
	File				*; Open/close*
		Close			
		Save			
		Save As...			
	Data Entry				*; Entries data for each column*
	<<*When CH1 or CH2 column is selected in the sequence table*>>				
		Insert Line			
		Enter Filename...			
		Clear Filename...			
	<<*When Repeat Count column is selected in the sequence table*>>				
		Insert Line			
		Repeat Count (1 to 65536)			
		Infinity {Off | On}			
	<<*When Wait Trig column is selected in the sequence table*>>				
		Insert Line			
		Wait Trig {Off | On}			
	<<*When Goto One column is selected in the sequence table*>>				
		Insert Line			
		Goto One {Off | On}			
	<<*When Logic Jump column is selected in the sequence table*>>				
		Insert Line			
		Jump Off			
		Jump to Next			
		Jump to Specified Line			
		Jump to {x}			
	Line Edit				*; Sequence line edit commands*
		Cut Line			
		Copy Line			
		Paste Line			
	Jump Mode				
			Screen	{Logic Jump {0 | 1 | 2 | 3} | Table Jump {16 Entries}}	
		Logic			
		Table			
		Software			
	Event Jump				*; Sets event functions*
			Screen	{Logic Jump {0 | 1 | 2 | 3} | Table Jump {16 Entries}}	
		Timing {Sync | ASync}			
		Table Jump {Off | On}			
		Jump to {x}			
		Strobe {Off | On}			
	Move Cursor to				*; Jumps to destination sequence line*
	Undo!				*; Undo operation*

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions
EDIT (Text/Equation)					
			Screen	Text/Equation Editor Character Pallet	
	File				; Open/close
		Close			
		Save			
		Save As...			
		Compile			
	Edit				*; Edit commands*
		Cut			
		Copy			
		Paste			
		Selection {Off | On}			
		Insert ↓			
	Basic Keywords				*; Basic control/setup keywords*

			Popup	clock
				size
				time
				point
				scale
				pi
				if
				then
				else
				endif
				for
				to
				step
				next	

		OK			
	Waveform Functions				*; Waveform operation keywords*
			Popup	conv corr diff integ norm join extract lpf hpf bpf brf pn code expand data delete copy rename write	
		OK			

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions

EDIT (Text/Equation) <Cont.>

- Math Functions ; *Mathematical operation keywords*
  - Popup: exp, log, log10, sqrt, sin, cos, tan, abs, sign, max, min, pow, rnd, srnd, sinc, tri, saw, sqr, noise
  - OK
- More Math Functions ; *Mathematical operation keywords*
  - Popup: and, or, floor, ceil, int, round, asin, acos, atan, sinh, cosh, tanh
  - OK
- Undo!

APPL Menu Hierarchy

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions
APPL (Disk)					
			Screen	Samples/Cell Cell Period TAA+ TAA– PW50+ PW50– NLTS (1st adjacent) NLTS+ (2nd adjacent) NLTS– (2nd adjacent) Asymmetry Lorentz/Gaussian	
	Application				*; Selects application*
		Disk			*; No operation*
		Network			*; Goes to APPL (Network)*
		Jitter Composer			*; Goes to APPL (Jitter* Composer)
	Write Data				
		Read from FIle...			
		Pre–defined Pattern...			
		Code {NRZ | NRZI}			
	Isolated Pulse				*; Selects isolated pulse type*
		Lorentz/Gaussian			
		PR4			
		EPR4			
		E2PR4			
		User Defined...			
	Superpose				*; Executes superpose*
		Execute			
		Save...			

Main	*Bottom*	*Side*	*Subside*	*Popup/Screen*	*Descriptions*
APPL (Network)					
	Application				*; Select application*
		Disk			*; Goes to APPL (Disk)*
		Network			*; No operation*
		Jitter Composer			*; Goes to APPL (Jitter Composer)*
	ITU–T				*; Selects ITU–T network standard*
			Popup	STM1E E4 E3 E2 E1	
		OK			
	T1.102				*; Selects T1.102 network standard*
			Popup	STS–3 STS–1 DS4NA DS3 DS2 DS1C DS1A DS1	
		OK			
	Fiber Channel				*; Selects Fiber Channel network standard*
			Popup	FC531E FC266E FC133E	
		OK			
	SDH/Sonet				*; Selects SDH/Sonet network standard*
			Popup	OC12/STM4 OC3/STM1 OC1/STM0	
		OK			
	Misc				*; Selects other network standard*
			Popup	D2 D1 100Base–TX	
		OK			
	<<If a network standard is selected>>				*; Creates test signal*
		Read Ptn from File...			
		Pre–defined Pattern...			
		Execute			
		Save...			
		Isolated Pulse...			
			Read from File...		
			Samples/Bit		
			Previous Menu		

Main	Bottom	Side	Subside	Popup/Screen	Descriptions
APPL (Jitter Composer)					
			Screen	Repeat Count Samples/Bit Data Rate Clock Rise Time Fall Time Jitter Profile Jitter Deviation Jitter Frequency	
	Application				*; Selects application*
		Disk			*; Goes to APPL (Disk)*
		Network			*; Goes to APPL (Network)*
		Jitter Composer			*; No operation*
	Input Data				*; Selects input data*
		Read from FIle...			
		Pre–defined Pattern...			
	Profile				*; Selects jitterprofile*
		Sine			
		Triangle			
	Compose				*; Executes jitter composer*
		Execute			
		Save...			

UTILITY Menu Hierarchy

Main	*Bottom*	*Side*	*Subside*	*Popup/Screen*	*Descriptions*
UTILITY					
	System				
			Screen	Brightness Level Hardcopy Format Hardcopy Drive Keyboard Type Knob Direction Date Time	
		Factory Reset			*; Resets to factory defaults*
		Secure			; Destroys all settings and files
		Update System Software...			; *Update Software*
			Update Program...		
			Update OS...		
			Previous Menu		
	Disk				
		Main			*; Displays hard disk free space*
		Floppy			*; Displays floppy disk free space*
		Format Floppy			*; Performs floppy disk format*
	Comm				*; Sets up network and GPIB parameters*
			Screen	Remote Control: GPIB: Configuration Address Network: IP Address Subnet Mask MAC Address Gateway 1 Gateway 2 Gateway 3 FTP Server	
		Execute Ping...			
		Edit...			
	Network				*; Sets up remote file systems*
			Screen	Drive Name IP Address Access Remote Directory	
		Drive1			
		Drive2			
		Drive3			
		Execute Ping			
		Edit...			

Main	***Bottom***	***Side***	***Subside***	***Popup/Screen***	***Descriptions***

UTILITY <Cont.>

- Status
  - Screen
    - Program Version:
    - Program Build:
    - OS Version:
    - OS Build:
    - Up Time:
  - System *; Displays firmware version*
  - SCPI Registers *; Displays GPIB status registers*
- Diag *; Handles diagnostic and calibration*
  - Diagnostic {All | System | Run Mode | Clock | Seq Mem | CH1 Mem | CH2 Mem}
  - Cycles {1 | 3 | 10 | 100 | Infinite}
  - Execute Diagnostic
  - Abort Diagnostic
  - Execute Calibration
- Service — Tweak AWG1 — OK
  - NFS Time out (25～300)
  - FTP Version(Stabdared|Obsolete)

Reference

This section provides the following information:

- Editor operations overview.
- Functions and procedures for using the waveform, pattern, sequence, and equation/text editors.
- Functions and procedures for instrument setup, including horizontal and vertical axis parameters, run mode, trigger setup, markers, and file handling.
- Functions and procedures for using applications and utilities.

Overview

Process Flow

Figure 3–1 shows a typical process flow from creating and editing waveform, pattern, or sequence data to outputting it.

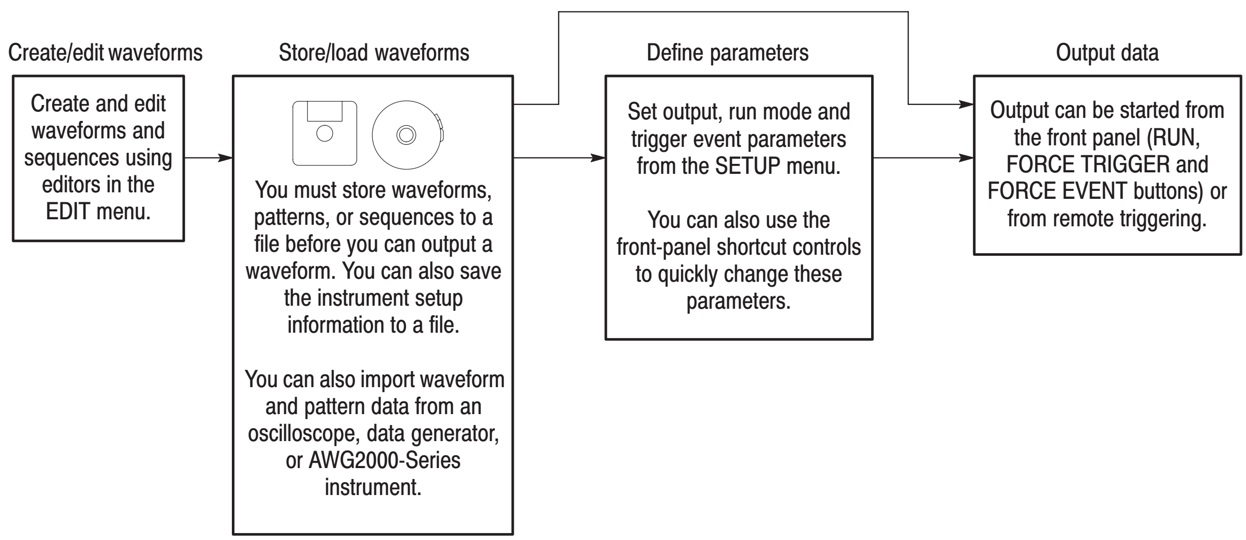


Figure 3–1: Overview of AWG500-Series Waveform Generator process flow

Channel Selection

The AWG510 Waveform Generator is the single channel model with only CH1 and CH1 output. The AWG520 Waveform Generator is the two-channel model with CH1 and CH2 outputs.

Installing Option 03 enables you to load a 10-bit digital data signal in channel two and output the signal from the rear panel DIGITAL DATA OUT connectors (D0 to D9).

You must select an output channel by pressing the **CH 1**, **CH 2**, or **DIGITAL** button on the front–panel. The channel selection is only effective for the setups in the SETUP menu. Note that throughout this manual the step to select a channel may be implied.

Menus

There are four main menus in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator, as listed in Table 3–1. These menus are described in detail in later sections.

Table 3–1: AWG500-Series Waveform Generator main menus

Menu button	Description
EDIT	Controls access to all functions for creating, editing, converting, importing and exporting waveforms. Quick Editor functions are accessed through the Waveform editor. You can enter into the Quick Editor only from the waveform editor.
SETUP	Controls waveform output settings including trigger source and sample clock rate.
APPL	Creates signals for testing devices such as hard disks and networks.
UTILITY	Controls instrument setup functions that are not directly related to editing or output.

The Graphical Waveform Editor

This section describes the Graphical Waveform editor. The Graphical Waveform editor lets you create and/or edit an analog waveform. You can choose to display the waveform graphically or in table format. Refer to page 3–49 for information on editing waveform data using a table editor.

Editor Screen Elements

To open a new window for graphical waveform editing, push **EDIT**(front)→ **Edit**(bottom)→**New Waveform** (side). Figure 3–2 shows the Waveform Editor screen elements. Table 3–2 describes the editor screen elements. Table 3–3 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–3 describe the menu operations in detail.

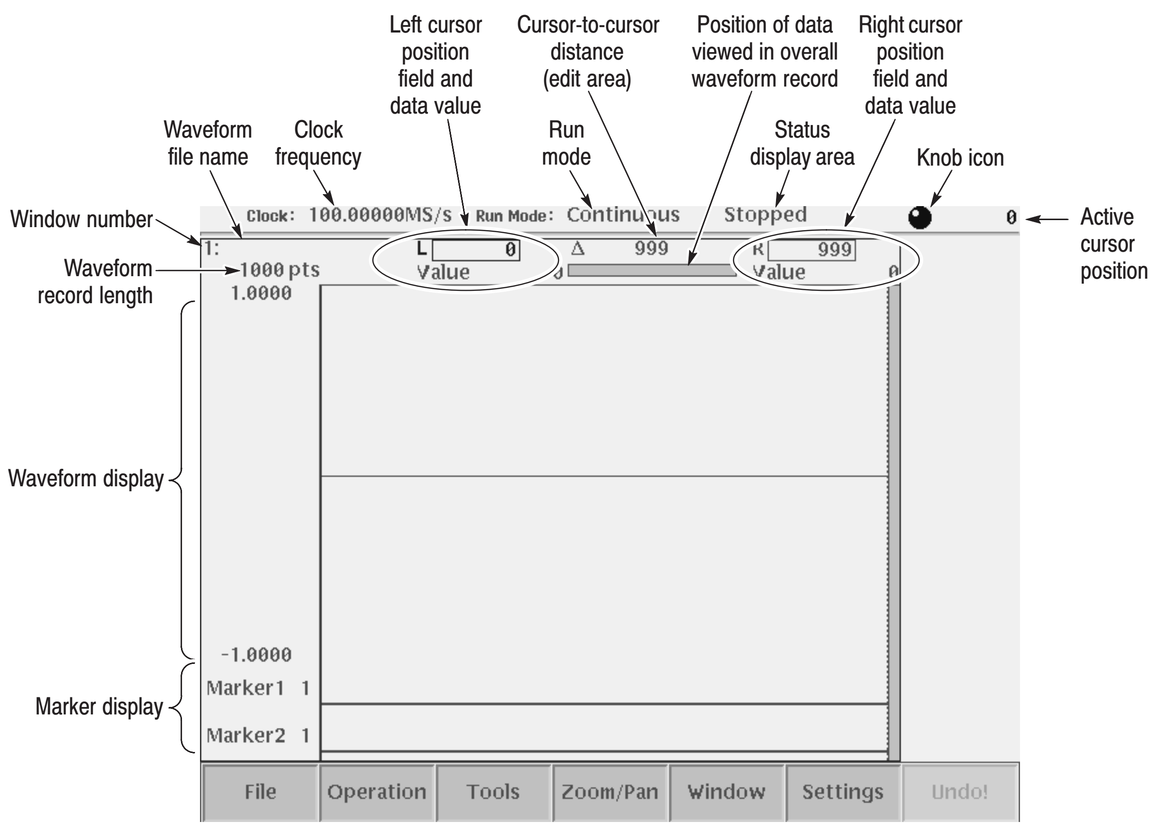


Figure 3–2: Waveform editor initial screen

NOTE. *Although you can edit markers, marker output cannot be made from the digital channel in the AWG510 Option03.*

Table 3–2: Waveform Editor screen elements

Element	Description
Active cursor position	The position of the active cursor in the data record relative to the start of the data record. Position is stated as point location or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu.
Clock frequency	The clock frequency (sample rate) used to calculate the point-to-point time interval between each data point. This value is set in the Settings menu. Note that this value is not the output waveform frequency. Output frequency is calculated as follows: $Freq_{out} = Freq_{clk}$ / points per waveform cycle
Cursor-to-cursor distance	The number of data points or time between the left and right cursors. Distance is stated as points or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu.
Waveform record length	Record length of the entire waveform file, in points. Record length is always shown as points regardless of the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu. The default value is 1000 points.
Edit area position bar	The relative position of the displayed edit area in the entire record length. This helps you determine where you are in a waveform record when you do zoom operations on the display area.
Window number	The edit window number, in the range of one to three. The maximum number of editor windows you can open at one time is three.
Knob icon	The icon displays when you can use the general purpose knob to change a highlighted field.
Left cursor position field and data value	The position of the left cursor and the data value at that position. Cursor position 0 is the start of the data record. Position is stated as point location or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu. You use the TOGGLE front-panel button to select between the left or right cursor. When the left cursor is active, you can use the general purpose knob or the Keypad buttons to change the cursor position.
Marker display	The graphical representation of the marker data values.
Right cursor position field and data value	The position of the right cursor and the data value at that position. Cursor position 0 is the start of the data record. Position is stated as point location or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu. You use the TOGGLE front-panel button to select between the left or right cursor. When the right cursor is active, you can use the general purpose knob or the Keypad buttons to change the cursor position.

Table 3–2: Waveform Editor screen elements (cont.)

Element	Description
Run mode	The current instrument run mode (Continuous, Triggered, Gated, and Enhanced)
Status display area	The instrument status (Stopped, Running or Waiting)
Waveform display	The graphical representation of the waveform data values. Refer to the note on page 2–51 for information on the waveform data range.
Waveform file name	The file name to which the waveform data is written. The Graphical Waveform editor appends the *.wfm* file extension to all waveform files. If this is a new or modified waveform, you are prompted to save the waveform data to a file name before exiting the editor.

Table 3–3: Waveform editor bottom menu

Button	Description
File	Provides commands for opening new waveform or pattern edit windows, inserting data from a file, loading an file, saving edited data to a file, and closing the active editor window. Refer to page 2–16 for information on file management tasks.
Operation	Provides commands for editing and manipulating waveform data, including cutting, copying, pasting, rotating, shifting, creating function generator waveforms, and so on. These commands operate on the data located between the left and right cursors.
Tools	Provides commands to perform mathematical operations on the entire waveform record.
Zoom/Pan	Provides commands to zoom in on, zoom out from, and pan the edit window waveform. You can zoom and pan a waveform horizontally and vertically.
Window	Provides commands to select the active window when more than one edit window is open. Refer to page 2–30 for information on multiple editor windows.
Settings	Displays a dialog box in which to define editor setup parameters including waveform record length, clock frequency, display mode, cursor linking, grid on/off, and so on.
Undo!	Undoes the last edit operation. Undo! is a one-level undo operation; pressing Undo! more than once toggles between the last two operations (the Undo! step itself and the last edit operation).

The File Menu

The File menu controls loading, saving, and insertion of data from system, floppy disk, or network files. The following sections describe the File menu operations

New Waveform, New Pattern

These commands open a new waveform or pattern editor window. If three editor windows are already open, these commands are unavailable.

Open...

This command displays a file name list and side menu that lets you select and load a file.

Save, Save As...

These commands let you save the active editor waveform data to its currently named file or to a new filename. You must save waveform data to a file before you can output the waveform data. To save a waveform to its current file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

If you are saving a waveform for the first time, the instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–14. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a different storage media or directory by pushing the **Drive...** side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

***NOTE**. When you exit an editor without saving edited data, the instrument displays the message* Save the changes you made?. *Push the **Yes** side button to save the waveform data, or **No** to close the editor without saving the waveform data.*

To save waveform data to a new file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save As** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–14. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a storage media or directory by pushing the **Drive...** side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

If you are saving a file with a record length greater than 256 data points and the record is not evenly divisible by four, the instrument needs to adjust the record length to meet internal memory record length requirements. The instrument displays a dialog box asking you to select one of the adjustment methods shown in Table 2–6. You can push the **OK** side button to accept the recommended change, or cancel the save and then edit the file to satisfy the data record length requirements.

Table 3–4: Waveform record length adjustment messages

Message	Descriptions
Leave as it is	The data is saved, as it is, without making changes.
Append 0	Appends zero-level data to the end of the record to meet the waveform data length requirements.
Expand	Interpolates and expands the data to make the record length a multiple of four.
Expand with Clock	Interpolates and expands the data to make the record length a multiple of four. Increases the clock setting proportionately.
Repeat	Increases the data record by repeating the first few waveform data points at the end of the data record.

Insert From File...

You can insert another waveform file into the active editor window. The data is inserted starting at the active cursor position. Inserting waveform data increases the length of the whole waveform.

Do the following steps to insert waveform data from a file:

1. Move the active cursor to where you want to insert the file data.
2. Push **File** (bottom)→**Insert from File...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Select a file from the Select File dialog box.
4. Push the **OK** side button. The data is inserted starting at the active cursor position.

Close

This command closes the active editor window. If you have made edit changes since the last time you saved your waveform data, and you attempt to close the editor window, the instrument displays the message *Save the changes you made?*. Push the **Yes** side button to save the waveform data. If you have not made any edit changes since the last time you saved the file, the instrument closes the editor window and redraws the screen to display the remaining editor windows. If you only have one editor window open and close that window, the instrument returns you to the EDIT main screen.

The Operation Menu

The **Operation** bottom button provides waveform data edit commands. The following sections describe each edit command in detail.

If you select a command with ellipsis (...), the instrument displays either a side menu or dialog box that lets you set additional parameters. Commands that do not have an ellipses are executed immediately.

Standard Waveform

This command creates standard waveforms such as sine and triangle waves in the edit area. The edit area is the area between the cursor positions. Do the following steps to create a standard waveform:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area in which to create the function waveform.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Standard Waveform...** (pop-up). The Set Standard Function dialog box as shown in Figure 3–3 is displayed. Table 3–5 describes the dialog box field functions.
3. Set the required parameters and the push the **OK** side button. The instrument replaces, inserts, adds, or multiplies the edit area with the specified standard waveform data.

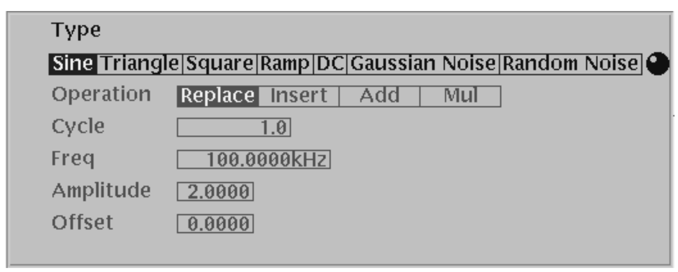


Figure 3–3: Standard Function Waveform dialog box

Table 3–5: Standard Function Waveform dialog box parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	Specifies the type of standard function waveform to create. You can select Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, DC, Gaussian Noise, or Random Noise.
Operation	Selects how the standard function waveform is added to the edit area. Replace replaces the edit area data with the specified standard function waveform. This operation does not change the waveform data record length. Insert inserts the standard function waveform starting at the active cursor position. This operation increases the waveform data record length by the amount of the inserted waveform. Add replaces the edit area data with the sum of the current edit area data and the specified standard function waveform. This operation does not change the waveform data record length. Mul replaces the edit area data with the product of the current edit area data and the standard function waveform. This operation does not change the waveform data record length.
Cycle	Specifies the number of function waveform cycles to insert in the specified cursor area. The range of values is from 0.1 to 100,000 in 0.1 increments. The default value is 1 cycle. If the Operation field is set to **Replace**, **Add**, or **Mul**, the Cycle field value determines the Frequency field value according to the equation Frequency = Cycle x clock frequency / data length.
Frequency	Specifies the frequency of the function waveform to insert in the specified cursor area. The range of values is from 0.1 to 500 MHz, with 9-digit accuracy. If the Operation field is set to **Replace**, **Add**, or **Mul**, the Frequency field determines the Cycle field value according to the equation Cycle = Frequency x data length / clock frequency.
Amplitude, or RMS	Specifies the standard function waveform's DAC range. The range of values is from −1.0 to 1.0 in 0.0001 increments. Specifying a negative value creates a waveform whose first cycle starts with a negative transition (in other words, a 180° phase shift). Refer to the note on page 2–51 for more information on DAC values. If you selected Gaussian Noise, this parameter turns to RMS. You can use Root Mean Square to specify the signal amplitude.
Offset	Specifies the function waveform offset value. The range of values is from −1.0 to 1.0 in 0.0001 increments. The default offset is 0.

Cut

This command deletes the edit area waveform and marker data and places the deleted data in the paste buffer. The waveform data length decreases by the amount of data deleted. If you unintentionally delete data, you can use the Undo! bottom button to undo the cut operation. Note that you must do the Undo! operation before doing any other edit steps, as Undo! can only undo the last edit operation.

Copy

This command copies the waveform and marker data located between the cursors and places the copied data in the paste buffer. The overall waveform data record length does not change.

Paste (Insert)

This command inserts the contents of the paste buffer into the waveform record starting at the active cursor position. The data to the right of the active cursor shifts right by the number of data points inserted. The overall waveform data record length increases by the number of data points inserted. If the paste buffer is empty, this command is ignored.

Paste (Replace)

This command inserts the contents of the paste buffer into the waveform record, starting at the active cursor position. The data to the right of the active cursor is replaced with the number of data points inserted. The overall waveform data record length is unchanged. If the paste buffer is empty, this command is ignored.

Multiple Paste...

This command inserts the contents of the paste buffer a specified number of times into the waveform record, starting at the active cursor position. The data to the right of the active cursor shifts right by the number of data points inserted. The overall waveform data record length increases. If the paste buffer is empty, this command is ignored.

Do the following steps to do a multiple paste operation:

1. Move an active cursor to the location in the waveform record where you want to insert the data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Multiple Paste** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument displays a dialog box in which you can enter the number of times to insert the paste buffer contents.
3. Set the paste count by using numeric buttons or the general purpose.
4. Push the **OK** side button. The contents of the paste buffer are inserted the specified number of times, starting at the location of the active cursor.

Set Data High/Low

This command sets all Marker 1 or 2 values that are between the two cursors to High or Low. Do the following steps to set the marker values:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area that you want to change.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Data High/Low** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Marker 1** or **Marker 2** side button to select the marker.

4. Push the **Set Data** side button to toggle between **High** and **Low** value.

5. Push the **Exec** side button to change the marker specified in Step 3 to the value specified in Step 4 for the entire edit area.

Horizontal Shift...

This command shifts the edit area data to the left or right by the specified value (points or time), within the cursor area. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left. All data that is shifted past the left or right cursor is truncated. The opposite, blanked field is padded with the initial cursor point values. This command can only shift one type of data (waveform, Marker 1 or Marker 2) at a time .

Do the following steps to horizontally shift waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area of data to shift.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Horizontal Shift** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to select the data you want to shift.

4. Push the **Point** (or **Time**) side button. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to specify the amount of shift. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left.

5. Push the **Exec** side button to shift the part specified in step 3 by the amount specified in step 4.

Horizontal Rotate...

This command rotates the edit area data to the left or right by the specified value (points or time), within the cursor area. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left. All data that is shifted past the left or right cursor is rotated to the opposite cursor. This command can only shift one type of data (waveform, Marker 1 or Marker 2) at a time.

Do the following steps to horizontally rotate waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to shift.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Horizontal Rotate** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to select the data you want to shift.

4. Push the **Point** (or **Time**) side button. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to specify the amount of shift. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left.

5. Push the **Exec** side button to shift the part specified in step 3 by the amount specified in step 4.

Vertical Shift...

This command shifts the cursor-to-cursor waveform data up or down the value specified with **Value**. If **Value** is positive, the data shifts up; if **Value** is negative, the data shifts down. The editor retains values that exceed the default ±1 .0 waveform peak-to-peak range. You can use the Zoom or Pan commands to view data that is out of the waveform display range. You can only vertically shift waveform data; you cannot vertically shift marker data.

Do the following steps to vertically shift waveform data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to shift.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Vertical Shift** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Value** side button. Specify the amount of shift using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. A positive value shifts data up, and a negative value shifts data down.
4. Push the **Exec** side button to shift the waveform by the amount you specified in Step 3.

Expand...

This command horizontally expands (scales) the edit area waveform and marker data by a specified amount in the range of 2 to 100. Expansion starts at the left cursor position. All data in the edit area expands as required for the amount of expansion.

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to expand.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Expand...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **By** side button. Specify the amount of expansion by using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. You may specify any integer from 2 to 100.
4. Push the **Exec** side button to expand the edit area data starting at the left cursor position.

Vertical Scale...

This command vertically shrinks or expands the edit area waveform data by a specified factor value, around a specified origin value. The **Factor** value range is –100 to 100 in 0.01 increments. The **Origin** value range is –1 to 1 in 0.0001 increments.

Do the following steps to vertically scale the waveform data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to scale.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Vertical Scale...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **Factor** side button. This is the value by which you want to multiply the edit area waveform data. Specify the scale using the general purpose knob or the numeric buttons. A negative value of –100 to –1.01 inverts and rescales the signal. A value from –1 to –0.01 inverts and reduces signal vertical values.

4. Push the **Origin** side button. Specify the center of scale using the general purpose knob or the numeric buttons.

5. Push the **Exec** side button. The cursor-to-cursor data vertically expands or shrinks with the center at the **Origin** position.

Horizontal Invert...

This command horizontally inverts (flips) the edit area waveform and marker data. You can invert the waveform and marker data separately. This command does not change the waveform data record length.

Do the following steps to horizontally invert the waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to invert.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Horizontal Invert...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to specify which data to invert.

4. Push the **Exec** side button. The data in the edit area inverts (flips) horizontally.

Vertical Invert...

This command vertically inverts (flips) the edit area waveform and marker data. You can invert the waveform and marker data separately. This command does not change the waveform data record length.

Do the following steps to vertically invert the waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to invert.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Vertical Invert...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to specify which data to invert.

4. Push the **Exec** side button to vertically invert the cursor-to-cursor data you have specified in Step 3.

Clip...

This command sets the edit area waveform data maximum upper or lower signal level to a specified value.

Do the following steps to clip the waveform data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to clip.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Clip...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Clip** side button to specify the portion of level to be clipped. Select either the **Upper** or **Lower**. Upper refers to all signal data located above the origin, and lower refers to all signal data located below the origin.
4. Push the **Level** side button and specify the clip level using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.
5. Push the **Exec** side button to clip the waveform data.

Shift Register Generator...

This command specifies a shift register to generate pseudo-random pulses with the value of 1 or 0 that replace the waveform data in the edit area. The pseudo-random shift generator consists of a user-definable register size (1 to 32 bits) and a user-specified number of feedback taps that do an XOR operation between a specified register bit and the register output.

***NOTE**. XOR (exclusive OR) is a boolean logic operation that outputs 1 if two input values are different and outputs 0 otherwise.*

Figure 3–4 shows an example of the pattern generated for a 3-bit register with an initial value of 101 and a single tap on register bit 2. The text that follows the illustration describes step-by-step how the instrument generates the output waveform values.

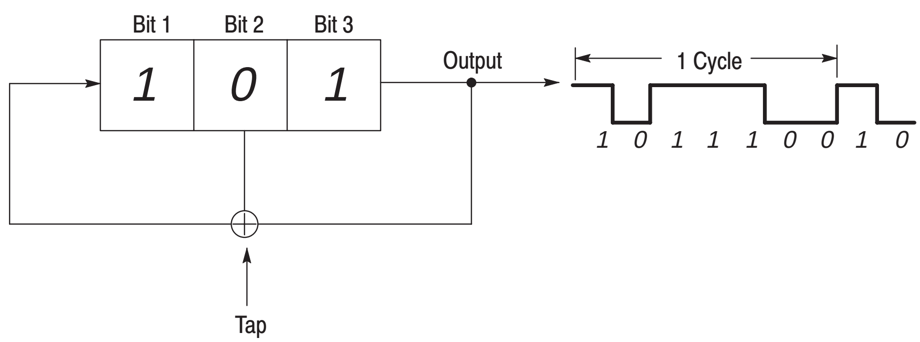


Figure 3–4: Register value and tap setting example

1. Output 1 of the rightmost bit.
2. Take XOR of the output value 1 and the Bit 2 value 0 (result is 1).
3. Shift the bit values one column to the right.
4. Assign the value 1 to Bit 1, which is the XOR value from Step 2. The new array of the register values is 110.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4, with 110 as the register value.
6. Repeating output of the rightmost bit of the register and the subsequent shift of the register value results in the output values as shown in Figure 3–4. In this example, the shift register output pattern starts to repeat after seven cycles.

The data generated by the shift register is called an M Series. If n is defined as the number of shift register bits, then the output pattern from the shift register generator (M Series length) will begin to repeat after $2^n - 1$ cycles.

The Shift Register Generator dialog box lets you define the register length , initial register bit values, and XOR tap bits used to generate pseudo-random pulses. Figure 3–5 shows the dialog box, and Table 3–6 describes the dialog box parameters.

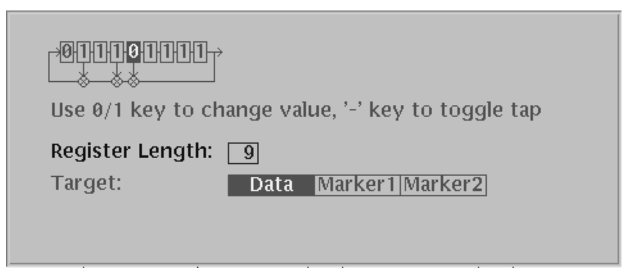


Figure 3–5: Shift Register Generator dialog box

Table 3–6: Shift Register Generator dialog box setting parameters

Parameter	Description
Register Icon	The Register Icon displays the current register length and tap position values at the top left side of the dialog box.
Register Length	Specifies the register length. Set a value from 1 to 32 using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. The graphic register image in the dialog box will change to show the number of registers you enter.
Target	Specifies the location where the generated pseudo-random pulse data is created. Selecting **Data** replaces the waveform data. Selecting **Marker1** or **Marker2** replaces the marker data. If the register data has fewer data points than those in the edit area, the register output repeats until the end of the edit area.

Do the following steps to generate a set of pseudo-random pulses:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to replace with the pseudo-random signal.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Shift Register Generator...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Shift Register Generator dialog box appears.
3. Specify a register length in the **Register Length** field. The graphical register icon at the top of the dialog box redraws to show the number of registers entered in the **Register Length** field. The value can be 0 to 32.
4. Specify the register tap position(s) by selecting the register graphic icon, using the ◀ or ▶ buttons to move the cursor to the desired tap position, and then pushing the **–** button to set the tap at the cursor position. You can also use the **Maximum Length Setting** side button to automatically set the tap positions to maximize the length of the random waveform data sequence.
5. Select **Data, Marker1**, or **Marker2** in the **Target** field to specify the waveform data type to replace with the register output.
6. If desired, enter the initial register bit pattern values in the register graphic icon at the top of the dialog box. Or you can use the **Set All Registers** side menu to set all register bits to one.
7. Push the **OK** side button to generate the cursor-to-cursor pseudo-random pattern in the area specified in **Target**.

Set Pattern...

This command replaces existing edit area waveform data with 0 or 1 data values that you specify. You can also use this command to copy the pattern data from one editor window and replace it in another editor window. If the pattern you enter has fewer data points than those in the edit area, the pattern repeats until the end of the edit area. This command does not change the waveform data record length. Selecting **Set Pattern** opens the Set Pattern dialog box, shown in Figure 3–6.

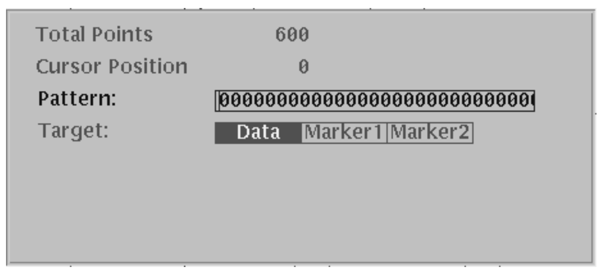


Figure 3–6: Set Pattern dialog box

Table 3–7: Set Pattern dialog box parameters

Parameter	Description
Total Points	Displays the number of data points entered in the Pattern field. The instrument updates this value as you change the pattern data in the Pattern field.
Cursor Position	Displays the cursor position in the Pattern field. The instrument updates this value as you change the cursor position in the Pattern field.
Pattern	Specifies the pattern field value. Enter the pattern data by using the 0 or 1 numeric buttons on the front-panel or from an attached keyboard. Push the **Clear Pattern** side button to clear the pattern data field. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to insert the edit area pattern data from the active window target data type into the pattern field. You can then write the pattern data to a target waveform type in the active window or another window.
Target	Specifies the location where the generated data is created or the source for imported pattern data. If you specify **Data**, the pattern data replaces edit area waveform data; if **Marker1** or **Marker2** is selected, the pattern data replaces the edit area marker data. To import the pattern from the Target specified here, use the **Import Pattern** side menu.

Do the following steps to specify a pattern:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area in which to replace the waveform data with pattern data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the target data type to replace with the pattern data.
4. Define the pattern using numeric buttons. Alternatively, push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the pattern data.
5. If necessary, you can change the pattern value by moving the cursor with the ◀ or ▶ button and then using numeric keys and the ⬅ key.
6. Push the **OK** side button to replace the waveform or marker data with the specified pattern data.

The Import Pattern function lets you read waveform or pattern data from the specified target data type of the active window and stores it in the pattern buffer. You can then replace waveform or marker data with the pattern data in the current window or another window. If the waveform data is analog, the Set Pattern dialog box converts all waveform data greater than 0.5 volts to a one level; all waveform data less than or equal to 0.5 volts is set to a zero level;

Do the following steps to use the Import Pattern function to convert waveform data into pattern data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area from which to import the waveform pattern data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the data type from which to import the pattern data.
4. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the pattern data. All waveform data above 0.5 becomes a one pattern value, and all waveform data at or below 0.5 becomes a zero pattern value. The pattern data is stored in the pattern buffer.
5. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the data type to replace with the pattern data.
6. Push the **OK** side button to replace the waveform or marker data with the specified pattern data.

If you want to write pattern data between different editor windows, do the following steps:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area from which to import the waveform pattern data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the data type from which to import the pattern data.
4. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the pattern data. All waveform data above 0.5 becomes a one pattern value, and all waveform data at or below 0.5 becomes a zero pattern value. The pattern data is stored in the pattern buffer.
5. Push the **Cancel** side button. This cancels the Set Pattern dialog box but retains the pattern data in the pattern buffer.
6. Open or make active the other editor window.
7. Move the cursors to specify the edit area in which to replace the existing data with the pattern data.
8. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...**. The Set Pattern dialog box appears, with the pattern field displaying the pattern data from the other editor window.
9. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the target data type to replace with the pattern data.
10. Push the **OK** side button to replace the waveform or marker data with the specified pattern data.

Numeric Input...

This command lets you change the waveform or marker data value at the active cursor location. You can use the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob to change the waveform data value.

Do the following steps to change the numeric value of the data at the active cursor position:

1. Move a cursor to the data point that you want to change.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Numeric Input...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **Data** side button and use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to set the waveform data value.

4. Push the **Marker1** or **Marker2** button to toggle between the marker values.

***NOTE**. The values modified through the side menu are immediately reflected in the data. After the value has been modified using the general purpose knob, pushing Undo! causes the value to return to the one that was immediately before you modified it using the knob.*

The Tools Menu

The Tools menu performs mathematical operations on the entire waveform data record you are currently editing. There are two mathematical operations: **Single Waveform Math**, which performs the specified mathematical operation on the currently edited waveform, and **Dual Waveform Math**, which performs a specified mathematical operation between the currently edited waveform and a different waveform. The math operations do not change the marker data.

The math waveform operations apply to the whole waveform rather than merely the edit area. The waveform math commands open a new window that contains the waveform data that is the result of the math operation. The operation uses the values of the points on the waveform or waveforms for input, and performs the operation, point by point, to generate the results.

***NOTE**. If you perform a math operation that needs to create a new window, and there are three windows already open, the math command displays an error message.*

If a math operation creates a waveform with values greater than ± 1.0, you can use the **Zoom/Pan** (bottom) commands to view the part of waveform that lies outside the window. The instrument retains the calculated values even if they exceed the current editor settings. Use the **Normalize** command to scale the signal values to a ± 1.0 DAC range.

For **Dual Waveform Math**, there may be a mismatch between the data lengths of the two input waveforms. The output waveform’s data length will equal the shorter of the two compared waveforms.

Table 3–8 lists the waveform math commands along with the equation used to calculate the new waveform data. The detailed explanations for the more complicated commands follow the table.

Table 3-8: Mathematical function commands

Command	Equation [1]	Description
Absolute	$G(x) = \lvert F1(x) \rvert$	Creates a new waveform that is the absolute value of the points in the source waveform.
Square	$G(x) = (F1(x))^2 : X \geqq 0$ $G(x) = -(F1(x))^2 : X < 0$	Creates a new waveform that is the squared value of the points in the source waveform.
Cube	$G(x) = (F(x))^3$	Creates a new waveform that is the cubed value of the points in the source waveform.
Square Root	$G(x) = \sqrt{\lvert F1(x) \rvert} : X \geqq 0$ $G(x) = -\sqrt{\lvert F1(x) \rvert} : X < 0$	Creates a new waveform that is the square root value of the points in the source waveform.
Normalize		Scales the active editor window signal values to a ±1.0 range, centered on 0. This command makes changes to the active editor window data values.
Differential	$G(x) = d/dx\ F1(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the differentiation of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page H-1 for the differentiation algorithm.
Integral	$G(x) = \int F1(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the integral value of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page H-3 for the integration algorithm.
Add	$G(x) = F1(x) + F2(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the sum of the active window and a non-active window data points. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The resultant waveform's data length is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms.
Sub	$G(x) = F1(x) - F2(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the subtraction of the active window and a non-active window data points, starting a data position 0. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The resultant waveform's data length is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms.
Mul	$G(x) = F1(x) \times F2(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the multiplication of the active window and a non-active window data points. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The resultant waveform's data length is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms.

Table 3–8: Mathematical function commands (cont.)

Command	Equation [1]	Description
Compare...		Creates a new waveform that is the comparison of the active window and a specified window data points. Refer to page 3–23 for information on the Compare dialog box. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The resultant waveform's data length is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms. You can also set comparison hysteresis levels. **Standard Compare.** The new waveform consists of logical zero and 1 values. If the source level exceeds the reference signal level, the comparison result is a one. If the source level is less than the reference signal level, the comparison result is a zero. See Figure 3–7. **Hysteresis Compare.** The new waveform consists of logical zero and 1 values. If the source level exceeds the reference signal level by the specified hysteresis amount, the comparison result is a one. If the source level is less than the reference signal level by the specified hysteresis amount, the comparison result is a zero. See Figure 3–7.
Convolution...		Creates a new waveform that is the convolution value of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page 3–24 for information on the Convolution dialog box. Refer to page H–4 for the convolution algorithm.
Correlation...		Creates a new waveform that is the correlation value of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page 3–25 for information on the Correlation dialog box. Refer to page H–5 for the correlation algorithm.
Digital Filter...		Creates a new waveform by applying a user-defined digital filter to the source waveform data values. Refer to page 3–26 for information on the Digital Filter dialog box.

Table 3–8: Mathematical function commands (cont.)

Command	Equation [1]	Description
Re-Sampling...		Changes the active editor window clock frequency or data record length (number of points). This command changes the data values of the entire waveform record in the active editor window. Refer to page 3–28 for information on the Resample dialog box.
XY View...		Displays the XY view of two waveforms. The XY view dialog box is an information display and does not alter the waveform data. Waveform XY view. Refer to page 3–28 for information on the XY View dialog box.

1 **F1, F2: Source waveforms**
G: Waveform resulting from operation
(x): Waveform data point value

Compare...

Figure 3–7 shows an example of the output of standard and hysteresis comparison operations. The rectangular wave is the reference waveform and the triangular wave is the source waveform.

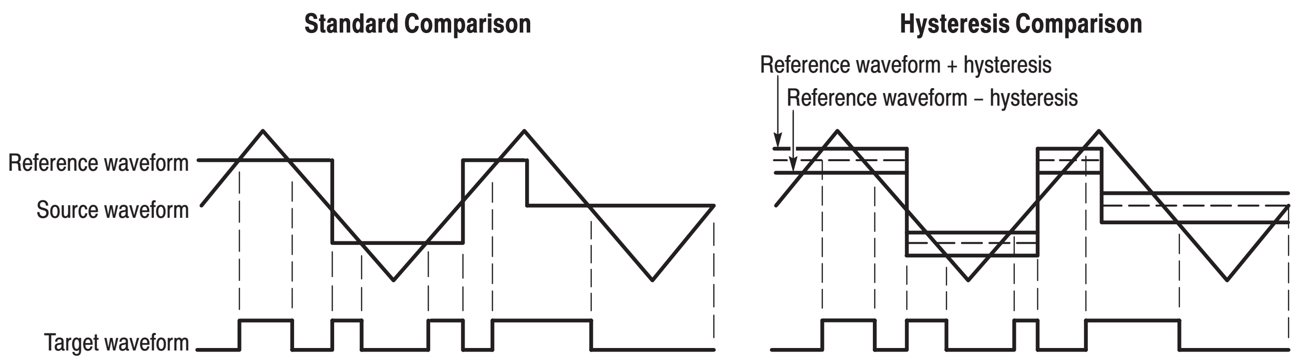


Figure 3–7: Waveform compare operation example

Compare Dialog Box. The Compare dialog box lets you set the target and source waveform and hysteresis values. Table 3–9 describes the Compare dialog box parameters.

Table 3–9: Compare dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Target	Specifies the location where you want to display the result of operation. Options are Data, marker 1 and Marker 2.
With	Specifies the reference waveform.
Hysteresis	Specifies the amount of hysteresis. The value may be –1 to 1 in 0.0001 increments.

Do the following steps to do a comparison math operation between two waveforms:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Compare...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Compare dialog box appears..
3. Push either **Data**, **Marker1** or **Marker2** in the **Target** to specify the location where you want to create the data.
4. Select the reference waveform in the **With** field.
5. Specify the amount of hysteresis in the **Hysteresis** field.
6. Push the **OK** side button to generate a pattern in the target edit area. This pattern shows the result of the compare process.

Convolution...

This command performs convolution for the active window's and a non-active window's waveforms and displays the result in the third window. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two-waveforms. For markers, the value of the first point is 1, and those of all the others are 0. If one or three windows are open, the operation will not work.

Refer to *Convolution* on page H–4 for more information about convolution and examples.

Convolution Dialog Box. The Convolution dialog box lets you set the second waveform for the operation and the **Periodic** On/Off toggle. Table 3–10 describes the Convolution dialog box parameters.

Table 3–10: Convolution dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
With	Specifies the second waveform for the operation.
Treat waveform periodic	Specifies whether the waveform must be regarded as periodic during calculation.

Do the following steps to perform a convolution math operation between two waveforms:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Convolution...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). Th**e** Convolution dialog box appears.
3. Select the second waveform in the **With** field.
4. Select either **Off** or **On** in the **Treat waveform as periodic** field.
5. Push the **OK** side button to generate the result of convolution of the two waveforms.

Correlation...

This command performs correlation between the data points in the active window and the data points in a non-active window, starting at data point 0. The results are displayed in a third window. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two waveforms. For markers, the value of the first point is 1, and those of all the others are 0. If one or three windows are open, the operation will not work.

Refer to *Correlation* on page H–5 for more information on correlation.

Correlation Dialog Box. The Correlation dialog box lets you set the second waveform for the operation and the **Periodic** On/Off switch. Table 3–11 describes the Correlation dialog box parameters.

Table 3–11: Correlation dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
With	Specifies the second waveform for the operation.
Treat waveform periodic	Specifies whether the waveform must be regarded as periodic during calculation.

Do the following steps to perform a correlation math operation between two waveforms:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Correlation...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The **Correlation** dialog box appears.
3. Select the second waveform in the **With** field.
4. Select either **Off** or **On** in the **Treat waveform as periodic** field.
5. Push the **OK** side button to generate the result of correlation of the two waveforms.

Digital Filter...

This command applies a digital filter to the whole of the active window's waveform and displays the result in another window. If three windows are open, the operation will not work.

The digital filter implemented in this instrument is composed of *n* FIR filter and Kaizer window functions, where *n* represents the number of delay elements that composes the filter. You can specify the *n* as a tap that varies from 3 to 101. The larger the value of *n* (number of taps), the greater the filtering capability. However, filtering will take a longer time to perform as the value of *n* increases.

Digital Filter Dialog Box. Figure 3–8 shows the Digital Filter dialog box. Table 3–12 describes the digital filter parameters.

Applying the digital filter results in delay by (number of taps – 1)/2. The original data is regarded as an iterative waveform during calculation. As a result of the delay due to the filter, the portion around the start of the output waveform is influenced by the end of the input waveform.

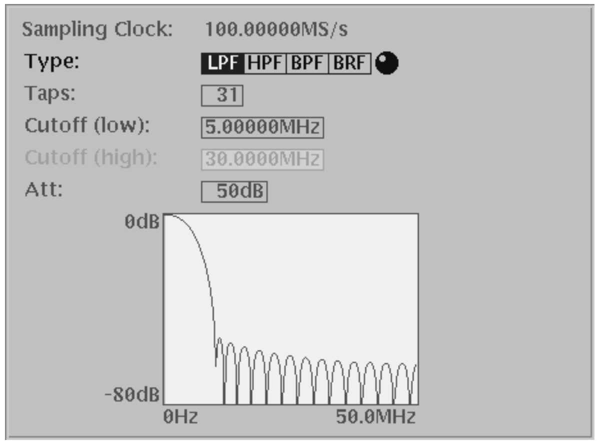


Figure 3–8: Digital Filter dialog box

Table 3–12: Digital filter dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Type	Selects the filter type. You can select LPF (low pass filter), HPF (high pass filter), BPF (band pass filter), or BRF (band rejection filter).
Taps	Specifies the number of taps (odd number, 3 to 101).
Cutoff	Specifies the cutoff frequency. If you selected BPF or BRF, you must specify the upper and lower bandpass limits.
Att	Specifies the attenuation of the inhibited bands (21 to 100, in dB increments).

Do the following steps to digitally filter a waveform:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Digital Filter...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Digital Filter dialog box appears.
3. Select the second waveform in the **Type** field.
4. Specify the number of taps in the **Taps** field.
5. Specify the cutoff frequency in the **Cutoff** field.
6. Specify the attenuation of the inhibited band in the **Att** field.
7. Push the **OK** side button to generate a waveform by applying the active waveform to the digital filter.

Re-sampling...

This command enables you to specify a new clock frequency or a new number of points. It resamples and updates the whole waveform data record in the active window.

Resampling Dialog Box. The current number of points and the current sample clock frequency are in the top display. You should set the new number of points or sample clock frequency at the bottom. The number of points and the sample clock frequency are dependent on each other.

Table 3–13: Resampling dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
New Points	Specifies the new number of sample points.
New Clock	Specifies the new sample clock frequency.

Do the following steps to resample a waveform:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Re-Sampling...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Resampling dialog box appears.
3. Set a value in either the **New Points** or the **New Clock**.
4. Push the **OK** side button to update the current window with the waveform that resulted from resampling with the above specified sample clock frequency.

Code Convert...

This command can be applied to the waveform data, marker data. The code convert function inputs 01 pattern. When you select waveform data as the input source, the input data is considered to be 1 when the point values are equal to or larger than 0.5, and 0 when the point values are less than 0.5.

For the details on the code conversion, refer to *The Tool Menu* on page 3–37 and to *Code Conversion* on page H–7.

XY View...

This command displays the XY view of two waveforms. The XY view dialog box is an information display and does not alter the waveform data.

The XY View dialog box, shown in Figure 3–9, lets you specify the waveforms you want to display in the XY view. Table 3–14 describes the dialog box fields.

XY View Dialog Box.

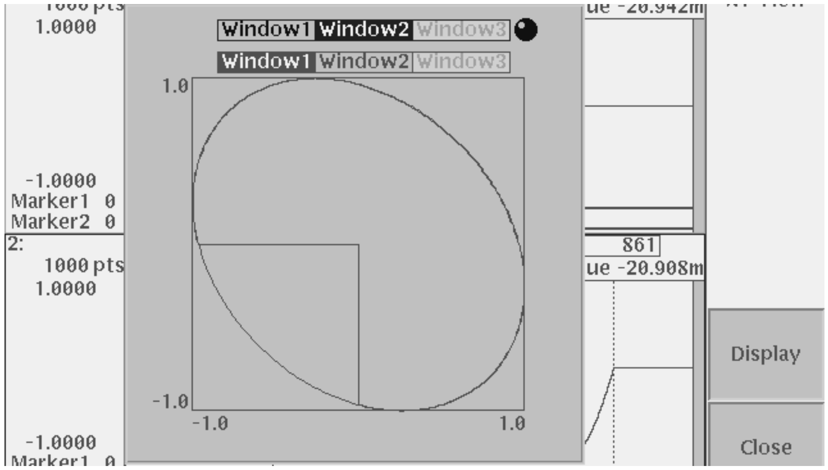


Figure 3-9: XY View dialog box

Table 3-14: XY View dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
X Axis	Specifies the waveform you want to assign to the X axis.
Y Axis	Specifies the waveform you want to assign to the Y axis.

Do the following steps to view two waveforms in an XY display:

1. Make sure that two or more windows are currently open.
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**XY View...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The XY View dialog box appears.
3. Select the window waveform to use for the x axis.
4. Select the window waveform to use for the y axis.
5. Push the **Display** side button to display the two specified waveforms in the XY view.
6. Push the **Close** side button to close the dialog box.

The Zoom/Pan Menu

You can use the Zoom function to expand or shrink the waveform display in an editor window. The Pan function shows a segment of waveform that lies outside the window due to the expansion.

When you push the **Zoom/Pan** bottom button, the side menu displays the operation menu. The displayed waveform can either expand or shrink, with the waveform data unchanged. If two or more waveforms are on display, this command zooms in on only the current window's waveform.

Table 3–15: Zoom/Pan side menu buttons

Side buttons	Descriptions	
Direction	Specifies the direction of zoom or pan. The direction you specify here will apply to both zoom and pan operation.	
Zoom In	Expands the waveform with the center defined as follows:	
	Horizontal zoom	The active cursor is the center.
	Vertical zoom	The window center is the center.
Zoom Out	Shrinks the waveform with the center defined as follows:	
	Horizontal zoom	The active cursor is the center. (Left end, if the size has become smaller than the window width)
	Vertical zoom	The window center is the center.
Zoom Fit	For horizontal	Horizontal fit takes place so that the whole waveform is contained in the window, and
	For vertical	Vertical fit takes place so that the segment from –1.0 to 1.0 is contained in the window.
Pan	Assigns the general purpose knob to the waveform view movement.	

To do the Zoom/Pan, do the following steps:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push the **Zoom/Pan** bottom button to display the side menu.
3. Use the **Direction** side button to set the direction of zoom/pan.
4. To perform horizontal zoom, move the cursor to the center of zoom. When the **Pan** button is held down, the general purpose knob is already assigned to the pan function. To move the cursor using the general purpose knob, push the **TOGGLE** button to assign the cursor movement to the knob.
5. Push the **Zoom In** or **Zoom Out** side button to cause the waveform to expand or shrink.

6. If the desired portion of the waveform went outside the window as a result of zoom, move the waveform by using the **Direction** side button and the general purpose knob. For waveforms with extremely large amplitude or a large offset value, use the **Pan** function to bring it in the window.

7. Push the **Zoom Fit** side button to reset the expansion/shrinkage that is in the direction specified with **Direction**.

8. To terminate zoom/pan, push the **CLEAR MENU** or any other bottom button.

The Window Menu

The Window menu displays a side menu that lets you select which edit window is active. Simply push the side button of the window you want to make active.

***NOTE**. Push **File** (bottom)→**Open** (pop-up) to load a file into a second or third edit window.*

The Settings Menu

There are a number of waveform parameters, including number of data points in the waveform (data record length), the clock frequency, display mode, and horizontal units, that you can define. Although the instrument had default values for these parameters, you should set these to your own waveform requirements. These settings are done in the Settings dialog box. To display the Settings dialog box, push the **Settings** bottom button. Figure 3–10 shows the Settings dialog box.

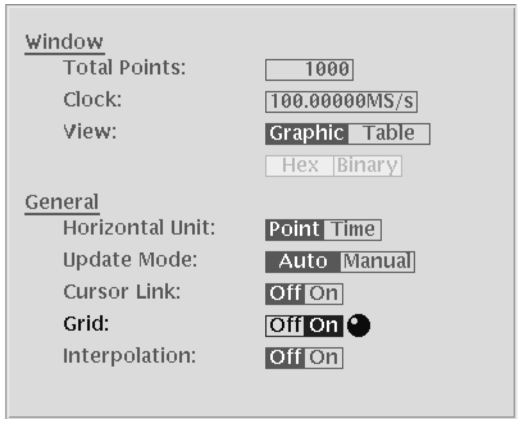


Figure 3–10: Settings dialog box

There are two type of editor setup parameters, Window and General. Window parameters only affect the active edit window. General parameters influence all windows currently opened and that will be opened, whether they are active or not. Table 3–16 describes the Window setup parameters, and Table 3–17 describes the General setup parameters.

Table 3–16: Setup window parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Total Points	Specifies the data length of the waveform in the current window. The default is 1000 points. The range of data points is from 256 to 4194304 and must be a multiple of 4. If you specify a value larger than the current data length, one or more zeros (0's) are added at the end of the data. If you specify a value less than the current length, all data after the end data point is deleted. The displayed value reflects data point changes resulting from any edit operations (such as cut or paste) that increase or decrease the number of data points in the record.
Clock	Specifies the clock frequency used to calculate the point-to-point time interval between each data point. The default setting is 100 MS/s. Note that this clock does not define the waveform output frequency.
View	Selects either Graphic or Table waveform data display mode. The default setting is Graphic.
Table Type	Specifies to display tabular waveform data in binary or hexadecimal format. This selection is available only when the View parameter is set to Table. The Editor displays all data values in real numbers.

Table 3–17: Setup general parameters

Parameter	Description
Horizontal Unit	Specifies the horizontal axis data point unit (points or time) used to represent the position along the horizontal axis. The default setting is points.
Update Mode	Specifies when output memory is updated. Selecting Auto causes the instrument to update the output waveform memory after any change to the edit buffer contents. Auto update means that the output signal will reflect any changes to the edited waveform as the edits are made. You cannot edit the waveform while it is being saved, however, so that the more you edit, the more times you may have to wait to return to edit mode while the instrument updates the waveform. Selecting Manual causes the instrument to only save edit buffer when the Save command is executed. If you have extensive editing to do, this mode allows for faster editing.
Cursor Link	Specifies whether to link cursor movement when two or three edit windows are open. Selecting ON causes the cursors in the inactive windows to be linked to their respective cursor in the active window. The default value is Off. If a linked cursor reaches either end of its data record before the active window cursor, the linked cursor remains at the data record end. This can result in changes to the relative cursor positions and edit areas between the editor windows.
Grid	Specifies whether to display a grid. Selecting On displays a grid in all open Graphical Waveform Editor windows. Selecting Off disables grid display. The default value is Off. The grid is not displayed in the Tabular Waveform Editor window or the Pattern Editor window. The instrument automatically sets the grid interval.
Interpolation	Specifies whether to enable waveform display interpolation when the density of points decreases due to zooming. Selecting On specifies that the instrument use the algorithm $aX^2 + bX + c$ to interpolate the waveform level between data points. Selecting Off displays the data point values as they are. The default value is Off. This function is provided to display a smooth waveform from data that contains relatively few data points in a cycle (such as in a disk test waveform). Note that this function may cause reduce the linearity of some types of waveforms, such as a ramp waveform.

The Pattern Editor

The Pattern Editor lets you create and edit data to output through the 10-channel Data Generator output (option 03). There are two display modes: graphic and tabular. The graphic mode displays the waveform graphically, while the tabular mode displays it numerically in tabular form.

Although pattern output is meant for the 10-channel Data Generator output (option 03), the instrument will also interpret the data bit values as best as possible and send the resulting signal to the CH 1 or CH2 output.

About Waveform and Pattern Files

You can load both the waveform (.wfm) and pattern (.pat) files to output a waveform to CH1 and CH2. When you load a waveform file, the instrument converts the file to an 10-bit digital pattern and stores the pattern into the waveform memory. At the same time, the instrument stores the data in the pattern file into the waveform memory without any conversion.

The waveform file format is composed of 4-bytes for each data point and 1-byte for markers. The pattern file format is composed of 2-bytes including data and markers.

When you transfer the data, select pattern file to shorten the transfer time if you are not going to perform other operations on the data. The number of bytes in the pattern file is always less than that of the waveform file even though they are the same data length.

However, when you use waveform data to generate another waveform by mathematical operations, such as multiplying, dividing, or adding, you must keep the waveform data as a waveform file. The waveform file format exists for keeping the data precision in mathematical operations.

For more details about file format, refer to the *Data Transfer* section in the *AWG500/600 Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator Programmer Manual*.

Starting the Pattern Editor

To start the Pattern Editor , push **EDIT** (front)→ **Edit** (bottom)→**New Pattern** (side). Figure 3–11 shows the Pattern Editor screen elements. All Pattern editor screen elements are the same as for the Waveform Editor (page 3–4) except for those listed in Table 3–18. All Pattern Editor bottom menu items are the same as for the Waveform editor (page 3–5) except for those listed in Table 3–19.

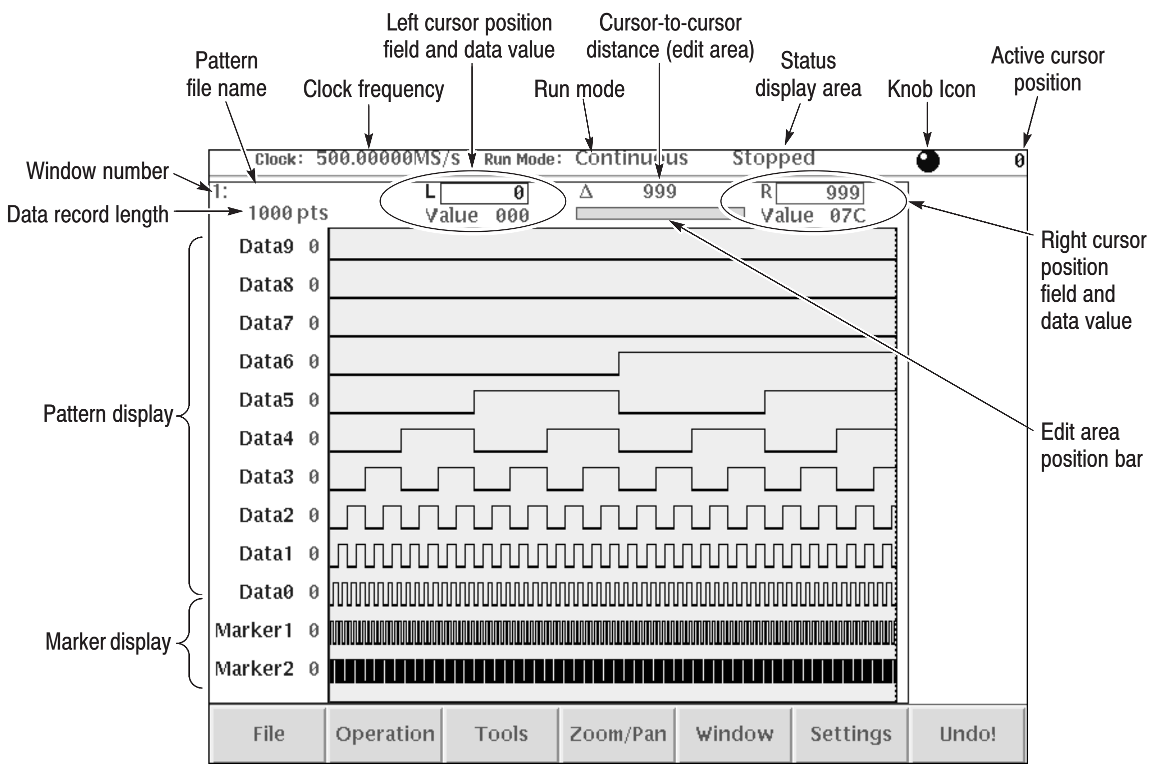


Figure 3–11: Pattern editor initial screen

***NOTE**. Although you can edit markers, marker output cannot be made from the digital channel in the AWG510 Option03.*

Table 3–18: Pattern Editor screen elements

Element	Description
Pattern display	The graphical representation of the pattern data values. There are a total of 10 data bits (Data0 through Data9) and two marker signals. Data values are 1 or 0.
Pattern file name	The file name to which the waveform data is written. The instrument appends the .PAT file extension to all pattern files. If this is a new pattern, you are prompted to enter a file name before exiting the editor.

Table 3–19: Pattern Editor bottom menu

Button	Description
Tools	Provides a command to convert pattern waveform data. This is the only Tools command available while in the Pattern Editor.

The File Menu

The File menu command descriptions are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor. Refer to *The File Menu* on page 3–6 for a description of the File menu commands.

The Operation Menu

The Operation menu command descriptions are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor except for **Standard Waveform...**, **Vertical Shift...**, **Vertical Scale...**, and **Clip...**, which are not available in the Pattern Editor. Refer to *The Operation Menu* section on page 3–8 for a description of the Operation menu commands.

The Tools Menu

The only Tools command available in the Pattern Editor is the **Code Convert...** command. This command creates a new pattern by using a user-specified table to convert the pattern of the specified line. The instrument opens a new window to display the results of the conversion.

Code Conversion Process

The outline for the code conversion procedures is:

- As the source data, use the data bits you specified with **Target**.
- Define the code conversion rules in a code conversion table.
- A new code conversion table must be created by the user by using the Edit... side menu command. Alternatively, an existing conversion table must be used with the commands in Open... side menu.
- Any new code conversion table created can be saved.
- When you push the **OK** side button, the pattern of code-converted source data is created in a separate window.

To open the code conversion table:

1. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Code Convert...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
2. In the Code Convert dialog box, use the general purpose or the ◀ or ▶ button to specify the data scope to convert.

The side menu has commands related to code conversion tables.

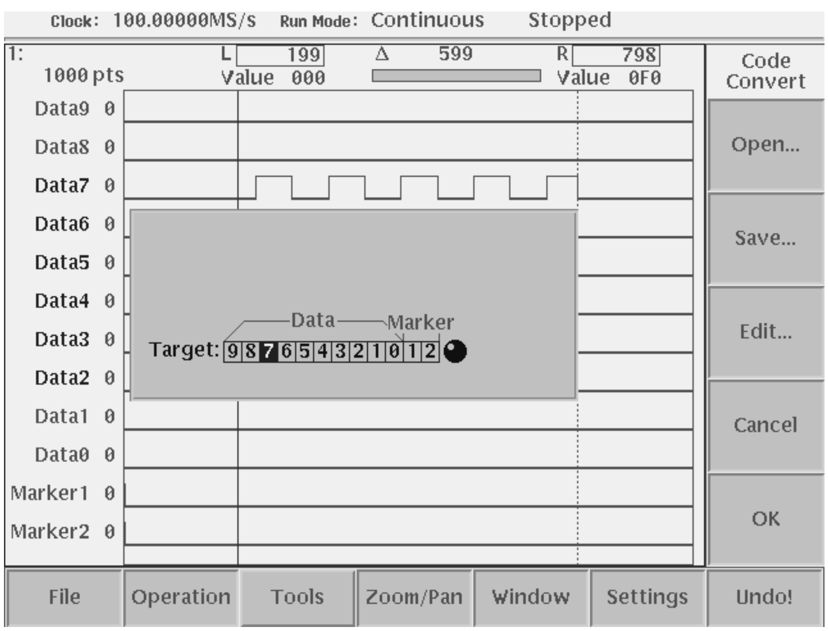


Figure 3–12: Code Convert dialog box and side menu

Table 3–20: Code conversion commands

Commands	Description
Open...	Reads an existing code conversion table.
Save...	Saves a code conversion table that was newly created or edited. It is saved in an ASCII file the cells of which are separated by commas.
Edit...	Newly creates or edits a code conversion table.

Code Conversion Table

When you push the **Edit...** side button, the code conversion table appears as shown in Figure 3–13. Each code conversion table defines the template pattern that is used for pattern matching with the source code. Use the **Edit...** side button to create a new code conversion table. Alternatively, use the **Open...** side button to read an existing one for use.

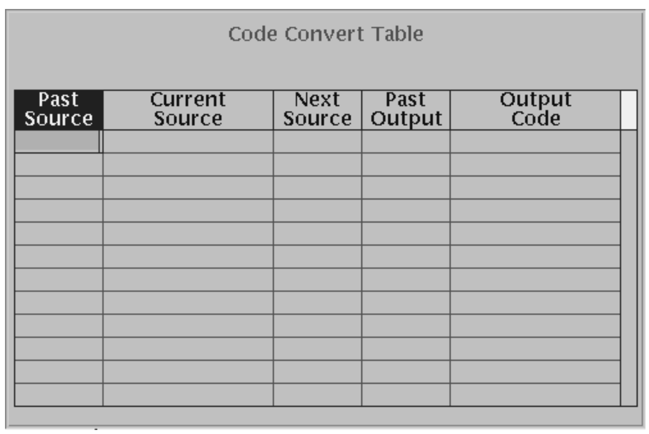


Figure 3–13: Code conversion table

Table 3–21: Code conversion parameters

Parameters	Description
Past Source	Corresponds to the previous source data, which is to the left of the current noticed point. You can view up to eight points of past data.
Current Source	Shows the source data you are currently looking up. You may specify up to 16 points, starting in the noticed point.
Next Source	Specifies the source pattern that is further to the right of the portion read with Current Source. You can look up to eight points of data.

Table 3-21: Code conversion parameters (cont.)

Parameters	Description
Past Output	The portion in which you view the output data that was output first. You can view up to eight points of the conversion result of the past output.
Output Code	Writes the resulting data of conversion that is output when all the above four conditions are satisfied. You may specify 16 points of data. If all conditions from Past Source to Past Output are satisfied in the conditions portion, Output Code will be output. Past Source, Current Source, Next Source, and Past Output are defined as conditions segments, and Output Code as the output segment.

Operations in the dialog box can be made as follows:

- A pattern must have been defined in at least one cell within a line conditions segment on one line.
- The number of points in a cell may be optional unless it exceeds the maximum number of points. Any blank cell is ignored during pattern matching.
- Each cell must be a pattern of 0's, 1's, and/or don't care (minus) signs.
- The maximum definable number of lines is 1024 lines.

Code Conversion Mechanism

- Initial state: The left end of source data is defined as the noticed point. **Past Source** and **Output Code** data are regarded as all 0 data.
- The left and right patterns to the noticed point are compared with the individual lines of the conditions segment in the conversion table from the top to the bottom in order to find identical lines. If such lines are found, the **Output Code** data defined in the line is added to the output data.
- The noticed point shifts to the right. The amount of shift corresponds to the size of the **Current Source** data that was found to identical in the source data. The new noticed point is defined there.
- The above compare process for the individual lines is repeated for the new noticed point.
- If no identical line is found during the compare process, this will cause an error.

Refer to *Code Conversion* in *Appendix H* for code conversion examples

Executing Conversion

After returning to the Code Convert Conversion Table:

1. If you save the code conversion table created above, push the **Save...** side button and name the file.
2. Push **OK** side button. Code conversion is executed with the specified pattern as the source code. The result of code conversion is displayed in a new window.

The Zoom/Pan Menu

You can use the Zoom function to expand or shrink the waveform display in an editor window. The Pan function lets you scroll the pattern image to show waveform data that lies outside the edit display.

The Zoom/Pan menu commands are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor except that you cannot select vertical zoom/pan operations. You can only zoom or pan horizontally in the Pattern Editor. Refer to *The Zoom/Pan Menu* section on page 3–30 for a description of the vertical Zoom and Pan menu commands.

The Window Menu

The Window menu displays a side menu that lets you select which edit window is active. Simply push the side button of the window you want to make active.

The Settings Menu

The Settings menu commands define editor setup parameters including waveform record length, clock frequency, display mode, cursor linking, grid on/off, and so on. The Settings menu commands are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor except for Grid and Interpolation. You can set grid and/or interpolation. However, the pattern editor does not use these parameters. These parameters are used only for the waveform editor when you are editing two or more windows. Refer to *The Settings Menu* section on page 3–31 for a description of the Settings menu commands.

The Undo! Command

The **Undo!** command undoes the last edit operation. This is only a one-level undo function. To undo the last edit operation, push **Undo!**.

Selecting Data Bits to Edit

Like the waveform editor, the pattern editor executes Operation menu commands on the data between the two cursors. Because there are 10 data bit signals, you must also select which data bit or bits to edit. Selected bits (data and marker) are indicated by highlighting the data bit and/or marker names at the left of the pattern display area. The selected bits are referred to as the edit scope. For example, Figure 3–14 shows the edit scope (selected data bits) as Data7 through Data2. Note that you can only select contiguous sets of data bits.

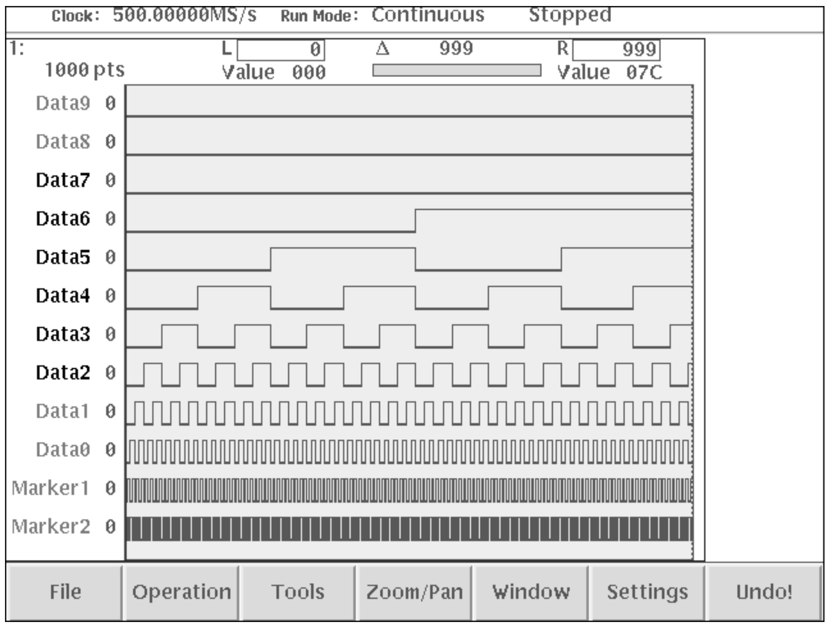


Figure 3–14: Operating data bits (scope)

To specify the edit scope, do the following steps:

1. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Select Lines** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The side menu items **From** and **To** appear.
2. Push the **From** side button and specify the start bit of the scope using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. The option may be Data0 to Data9, Marker1, and Marker2.
3. Push the **To** side button and specify the end bit of the scope using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. The option may be Data0 to Data9, Marker1, and Marker2.

You can easily copy data from one bit to another. The following example copies Data7 data, consisting of 1000 points, to Data0.

1. Place the left cursor at data point 0, and the right cursor at data point 999. Make the left cursor active with the **TOGGLE** button.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Select Lines** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. Push the **From** side button to set to Data7.

4. Push the **To** side button to set to Data7.

5. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Copy** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

6. Specify the edit scope position as Data0 using the ↑ or ↓ button. (Data0 is highlighted.)

7. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Paste** (**Replace**) (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

Defining Edit Area

Figure 3–15 shows an example of the waveform pattern created in the area defined by area cursor. All edit operations act on either the area between the cursors or the area to the right of the active cursor. When you edit a pattern, you must first specify the area or the position to be edited .

The area to edit is specified as the area between the left and right vertical cursors. You can select the active cursor by pushing the **TOGGLE** button, and move a cursor by using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

- Push the **TOGGLE** button on the front panel to switch the active cursor between the left and right cursor. You cannot activate both the left and right cursors at the same time. The activated cursor is represented with the real vertical line and the non-active cursor with the dashed vertical line.
- Move the active cursor to the position where you want to place.

Depending on the type of operation, only the active cursor position may be important. In this case, you must activate either the left or right cursor and move to the position to perform the action.

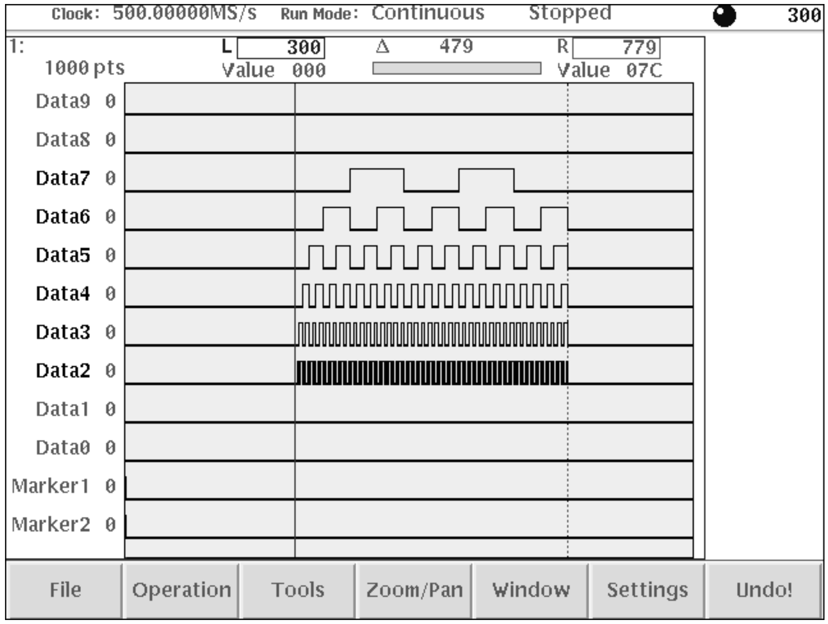


Figure 3–15: Area cursors

Creating a Pattern

The **New Pattern** command opens a pattern edit window with the following default values:

Data length:	1000 points
Bit value level:	0
Clock frequency:	100 MS/s
Edit scope: . . .	Data9 through Data0

The pattern editor does not change the data length when executing **Cut** operations. To create 1000-point or shorter data, change the data length in the **Total Points** item of the Setting menu.

For creating pattern, you can use the following methods alone or in combination:

- Selecting from standard patterns.
- Importing from external file.
- Newly creating and/or editing pattern.
- Generating random pattern.

Creating Standard Patterns

Figure 3–16 shows the Standard Pattern dialog box which lets you specify the type of pattern and the range (scope) of data bits to which to apply the pattern. The instrument lets you create one of four standard counter patterns as listed in Table 3–22, and inserts the pattern in the edit area between the cursors.

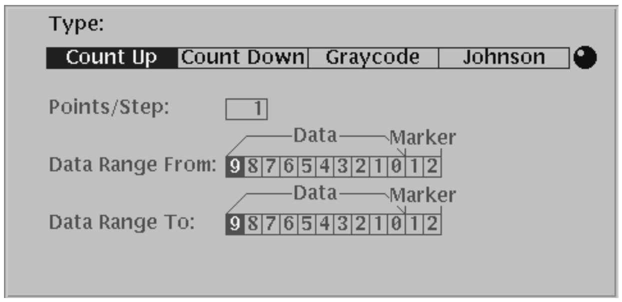


Figure 3–16: Counter dialog box

Table 3–22: Type to be selected in Counter dialog box

Standard patterns	Descriptions
Count Up	Creates a binary incrementing counter pattern.
Count Down	Creates a binary decrementing counter pattern.
Graycode	Creates a gray code counter pattern.
Johnson	Creates a Johnson counter pattern.

Do the following steps to create a counter pattern:

1. Specify the scope and area in which you want to create the pattern.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Counter...** (pop-up). The Counter dialog box as shown in Figure 3–16 is displayed.
3. Select a type (standard pattern) from the dialog box.
4. Specify the number of points in **Points/Step** by which you want to represent one step of the standard pattern. You may specify a value from 1 to 100 by using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons.

5. Specify bit width in the **Data Range From** and **Data Range To**. These two parameters specify the counter bit width and the position in the data. The markers are also available.

6. Push the **OK** side button.

Importing Data From Files

You can import pattern data from a file on the floppy drive, hard disk, or the network, to any location in the current pattern edit window. The data is inserted starting at the active cursor position. Importing data results in an increase in the record length (number of points) of the pattern.

Do the following steps to import pattern data from a file:

1. Move the cursor to the position to which you want to move the data.
2. Push **File** (bottom)→**Insert from File...** (pop-up)→ **ENTER** (front).
3. Select the file from the Select File dialog box.
4. Push the **OK** side button.

Set Pattern...

This command generates a binary pattern (0 and 1 values) for the cursor-to-cursor waveform data or markers. You have two options of generating this pattern: you can enter the new data using the numeric buttons or keyboard, or you can import the pattern from the current edit area between the cursors. For the target of operation, you can specify the data or markers with **Target** which is displayed in the dialog box independently of the scope.

Set Pattern dialog box. Figure 3–17 shows the Set Pattern dialog box that lets you set a pattern.

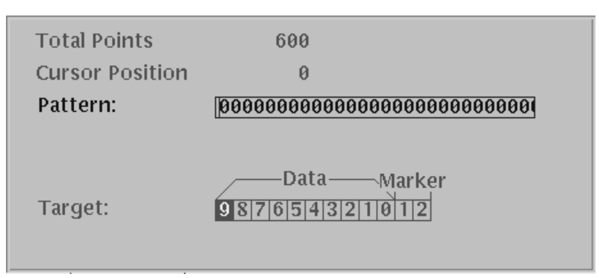


Figure 3–17: Set Pattern dialog box

Table 3–23: Set Pattern dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Total Points	Specifies that the number of points of a pattern defined in the [Pattern] field. This value cannot be modified using numeric buttons.
Cursor Position	Specifies that the cursor position in the [Pattern] field is displayed. This value cannot be modified using numeric buttons.
Use Code Table	Specifies whether to use the code translation table.
Pattern	Specifies the pattern field value. Enter the value using the '0' or '1' numeric button. Push the Import Pattern side button to set the cursor-to-cursor data corresponding to the section specified in Target.
Target	Specifies the location in which the generated data is created. If you specify Data, the '01' pattern will be generated in the pattern section. The pattern imported with the Import Pattern side menu is from the Target specified in this field.

Operations in the dialog box are as follows:

- Use the ▲ or ▼ button to move the selection to move up or down.
- Use the general purpose knob or the ◀ or ▶ button to move the selection cursor left or right.
- The pattern between the cursor lines you specified in Target is imported by pushing the **Import Pattern** side button.
- Pushing the **Clear Pattern** side button causes the pattern field value to be cleared to null.
- Pushing OK side button causes the pattern in the **Pattern** to be generated between the **Target** cursors. If this pattern is shorter than the cursor-to-cursor interval, repeat it until it is filled. If the pattern is longer than the interval, use part of the pattern to fill this interval.

To set a pattern, do the following steps:

1. Move the cursors to specify the area in which you want to generate a pattern.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Specify the location where the pattern is created. You can do this from **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** in the **Target**.
4. Define the pattern using numeric buttons. Alternatively, push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the cursor-to-cursor data.

5. If necessary, you can change the pattern value by moving the cursor with the ◀ or ▶ button and then using numeric keys and the ← key.

6. Push the **OK** side button to generate the **Pattern** field pattern between the cursors in the area specified in **Target**. A pattern is generated in the cursor-to-cursor area you specified in **Target**.

Numeric Input...

This command enables you to set the pattern data located in the current active cursor position by using numeric buttons. The marker values can also be set.

1. Move the cursor to the point for which you want to set a value.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Numeric Input...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

3. The current values are displayed in the Data, Marker1, and Marker2 side menus. In this condition, you can change the position setting by moving the cursor.

4. Push the **Data** side button, then set the pattern data value using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

5. Push the the **Marker1** or **Marker2** to toggle between the marker values.

***NOTE**. The value modified through the side menu are immediately reflected in the data. After the value has been modified using the general purpose knob, pushing Undo causes the value to return to the one that was immediately before you modified it using the knob.*

The Table Editor

Editing in graphic display lets you see the shape of the waveform you are editing. However, changing data values in the graphical edit mode is a difficult task. The Table Editor lets you quickly enter or edit data values by using a table display format.

Opening the Table Editor

By default, the Waveform and Pattern editors open in the graphic display mode. To switch to the Table Editor, do the following steps (this procedure assumes you have already opened a waveform or pattern file):

1. Push the **Setting** bottom button to display the Setting dialog box.
2. Select **Table** in the **View** field.
3. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument opens the Table Editor, as shown in Figure 3–18.

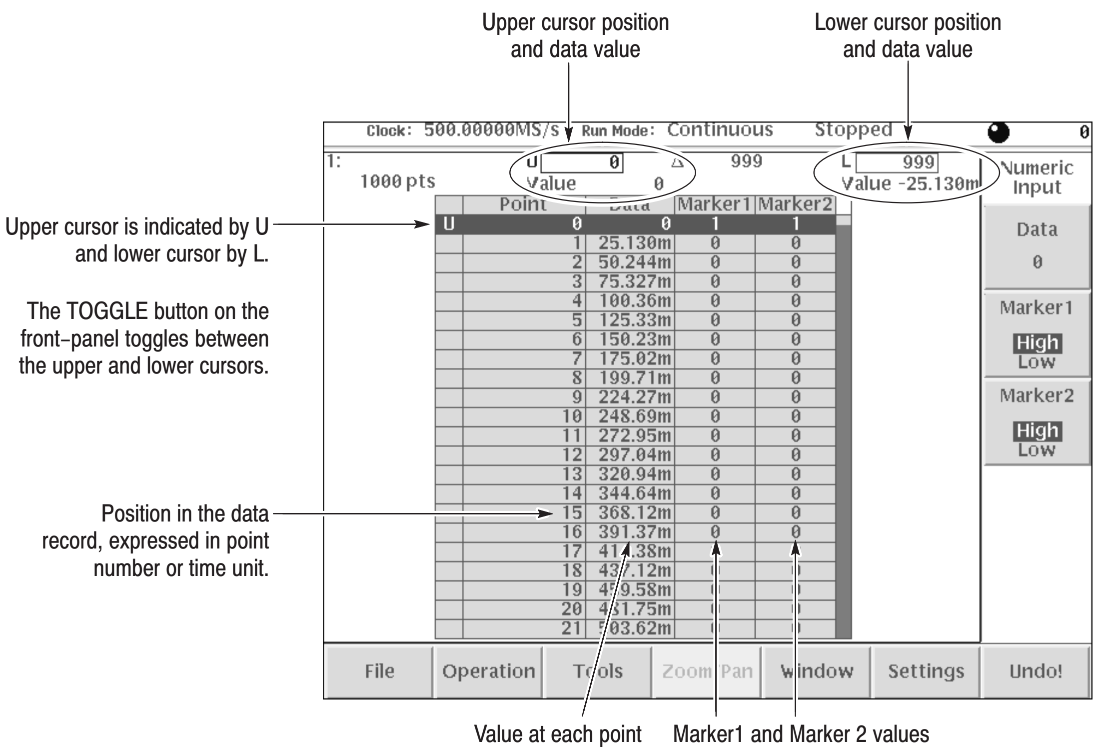


Figure 3–18: Table Editor window

To return back to graphic display mode, follow the procedure above and select **Graphic** , instead of **Table**, in step 2.

Editing Table Data

The **Numeric Input...** command in the Operation bottom menu lets you edit waveform and marker data in the Table Editor. Do the following steps to edit waveform or marker data in the table:

1. Use the general purpose knob or cursor fields to move the active cursor to the data point that you want to edit. The active data point is the highlighted row in the table.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Numeric Input...** (pop-up).
3. To edit waveform data, push the **Data** side button and change or enter the data value using the general purpose knob, keyboard, or keypad buttons.
4. To edit the marker data, push the **Marker 1** or **Marker 2** side button to toggle between **High** and **Low**.

The data in table display mode is the same data that is displayed in the graphic editors. You can use all applicable bottom menu commands, except for the Zoom/Pan commands, to manipulate data in the Table Editor mode.

***NOTE**. Remember that you need to define the edit area (data points located between the cursors) before executing the Operation commands.*

To look at the waveform area outside the current display area, scroll the display using the general purpose knob or the ⏶ and ⏷ buttons. If the data to view is more than 50 data points away from the current cursor location, it is faster to use the numeric keypad to enter the new cursor value in the Cursor Position field.

Pushing the **TOGGLE** front–panel button switches the table contents to show the data values at the other cursor. When toggling between the cursors, the Table Editor displays the Upper cursor at the top of the table and the Lower cursor at the bottom of the table.

The Equation Editor

The Equation editor is an ASCII text editor that includes menus and commands for writing waveform equation files using the Waveform Programming Language (WPL). You can use WPL to generate a waveform from a mathematical function, perform calculations between two or more waveform files, and use loop and conditional branch commands to define waveform values.

The WPL duplicates almost all of the AWG500-Series Waveform and Pattern editor functions. However, you cannot perform sequential data processing on a point-by-point basis. Instead, the Equation editor has functions for performing calculations between two or more waveform files that affect all the points in a waveform.

By default, all Equation editor files are saved to a specified filename and have the extension *.txt*. However, in this manual all equation file names use the extension *.equ* to differentiate them from non-equation-content text files. To output an equation waveform you must compile the equation file into a waveform file.

NOTE. *It is highly recommended that you install a PC-style keyboard if you intend to use the Equation editor. It is much easier to enter and edit text from a keyboard then to use the front–panel controls to edit a file.*

In this manual, all equation file names use the extension .equ *to differentiate them from non-equation-content text files.*

You can use the Equation editor to create and load text-only files, such as readme or other text files. However, the focus of this section is to describe how to use the Equation editor to create waveform equations.

Starting the Equation Editor

To start the Equation editor, push **EDIT** (front)→**Edit** (bottom)→**New Equation** (side). You can also automatically start the Equation editor by loading an equation file from the EDIT menu file list. Figure 3–19 shows the Equation editor screen. Table 3–24 describes the editor screen elements that are specific to the Equation editor. Table 3–25 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–25 describe the menu operations in detail.

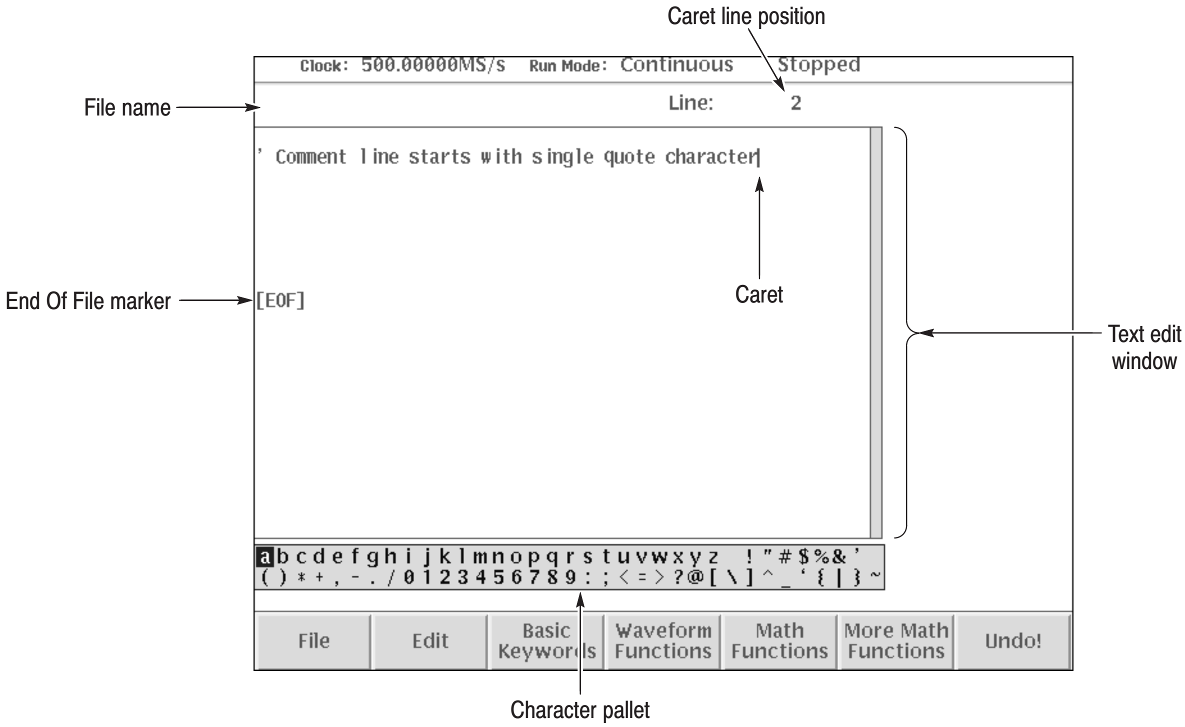


Figure 3–19: Equation editor window

Table 3–24: Equation editor screen elements

Element	Description
File name	The file name to which the equation or text is written, or the name of the file being edited. The instrument appends the default *.txt* file extension to all Equation editor files. If this is a new file, you are prompted to enter a file name before exiting the editor. It is suggested that you use the *.equ* file extension to identify equation files.
Caret line position	The line number in the file where the caret is located. The file starts at line 1.
End Of File marker	Indicates the end of the file. All equations or text must be entered before this marker.
Character pallet	Used with the general purpose control knob to enter alphanumeric characters into the edit window. To enter a character at the caret position, highlight a character and push the ENTER button.

Table 3–24: Equation editor screen elements (cont.)

Element	Description
Text edit window	Area where you enter text and/or equation information. The maximum length of a line is 256 characters, including spaces. You can concatenate lines by entering a colon character (:) at the end of a line. THe maximum number of characters you can concatenate is 5000.
Caret	A vertical bar that indicates the position in the file where edit operations take place. Use the front-panel or keyboard arrow keys to move the caret.

Table 3–25: Equation editor bottom menu

Button	Description
File	Provides side-menu commands for closing the editor, saving text to the current file or a new file, and compiling an equation file into a waveform file. Refer to page 2–16 for information on relevant file management tasks.
Edit	Provides side-menu commands for text edit functions to cut, copy, paste, select, and insert text.
Basic Keywords	Provides a pop-up menu of WPL basic keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
Waveform Functions	Provides pop-up menu of WPL waveform operation keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
Math Functions	Provides pop-up menu of WPL math operation keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
More Math Functions	Provides pop-up menu of more WPL math operation keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
Undo!	Undoes a character or string cut or paste operation. This is a one-level undo function.

Using the Equation Editor

The text display area and character palette are on the display. In the caret position in the text display area, input characters that are in the character palette or strings (such as keywords) that are displayed using bottom buttons. Use the general purpose knob and the ◀ , ▶, ▼, and ▲ buttons.

Front-Panel Edit Controls

Table 3–26 describes the front-panel buttons, keys and knob to use for entering and editing text.

NOTE. *It is highly recommended that you install a standard PC-style keyboard if you intend to use the Equation editor. It is much easier to enter and edit text from a keyboard then to use the instrument front–panel controls.*

Table 3–26: front–panel Equation editor controls

Control	Description
◀ and ▶ button	Moves the caret horizontally in the edit area. Hold down an arrow key to continue moving the caret in the specified direction.
▲ and ▼ button	Moves the caret vertically in the edit area. Hold down an arrow key to continue moving the caret in the specified direction.
General purpose knob	Selects a character in the Character Palette.
ENTER button	Inserts the highlighted character in the Character Palette at the caret location.
← Key	Deletes the character that is to the left of the caret in the edit area.
SHIFT Button	Toggles between the uppercase and lowercase character modes in the Character Palette.
↵ Key	Inserts a line feed character at the caret position and moves all following text down a line.

To insert a character, use the general purpose knob to select the character from the character palette and then press the **ENTER** key. The character is inserted at the current caret position. Use the arrow keys to move the caret in the edit area.

Selecting Text

You must select text before doing copy or cut operations. Do the following steps to select text:

1. Move the caret to the start of your text to select.
2. Push **Edit** (bottom)→**Selection** (side) menu.
3. Push the ◀ or ▶ buttons to select text. See Figure 3–20. The text highlights to indicate it is selected. You can now cut or copy the selected text to the paste buffer.

NOTE. *You can also use the TOGGLE button to toggle text selection mode on and off.*

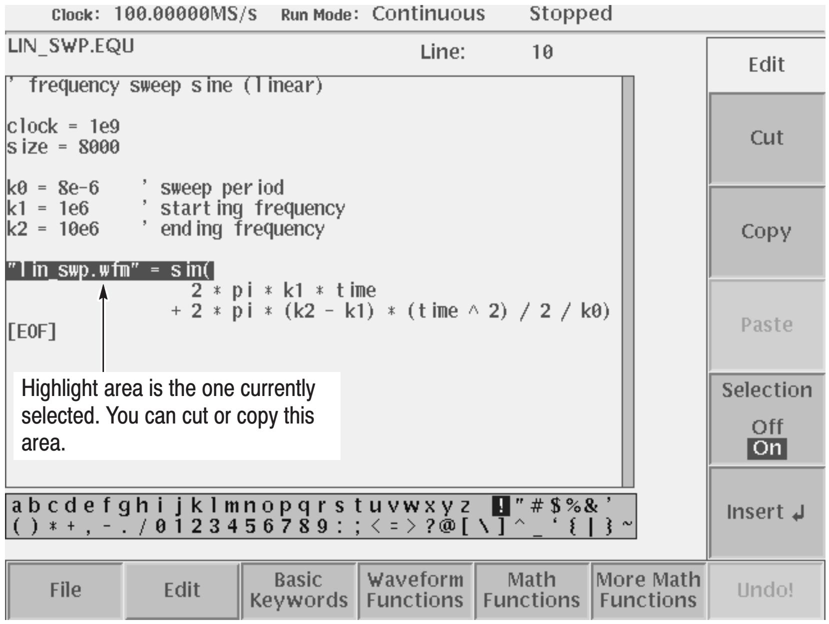


Figure 3–20: Text selection (example)

Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Text

The Paste command inserts the paste buffer text starting at the caret position. You must have copied or cut text prior to using the Paste command.

Do the following steps to cut or copy text from the edit area:

1. Select the text to cut or copy (refer to *Selecting Text* above).
2. Push the **Cut** side button to delete the selected text from the edit area and place it in the paste buffer from the selection range.
3. Push the **Copy** side button to copy the selected text from the edit area and place it in the paste buffer. The text is unselected after completing the copy operation.

Do the following steps to paste text into the edit area:

1. Move the caret to where you want to insert the paste buffer text.
2. Push the **Paste** side button. The string in the paste buffer is inserted at the caret position.

Using an External Keyboard

You can connect a 101 or 106 key keyboard to the rear panel. You can use the keyboard to enter the same characters shown in the Character Pallet. Use the Shift key to enter uppercase characters. Table 3–27 describes the editor operations available from the keyboard.

Table 3–27: Control keys from external keyboard

Keyboard key	Description
Character and numeric keys	Characters found in the character palette can be input form the corresponding keys on the keyboard
Arrow keys	Moves the caret horizontally or vertically
Back Space	Deletes the character that is to the left of the caret
Delete	Deletes the character that is to the right of the caret.
Return	Inserts an End Of Line character at the caret position
Ctrl-C	Copies selected text to the paste buffer
Ctrl-X	Cuts selected text to the paste buffer
Ctrl-V	Pastes the contents of the paste buffer at the caret location
Ctrl-Z	Undoes the last character, cut, or paste operation
Ctrl-S	Toggles the selection on and off.

Entering Keywords and Functions

The Equation editor has built-in keywords and functions to make creating equations an easier task. These commands insert correctly-formatted keywords or functions into the text file at the current caret position. Inserted keywords are treated as ordinary text if you need to edit them. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section starting on page 3–59.

Do the following steps to insert a keyword or function:

1. Move the caret to the position you want insert the keyword or function.
2. Push the **Basic Keywords**, **Waveform Functions**, **Math Functions**, or **More Math Functions** bottom button. A pop-up menu appears.
3. Select the keyword to insert from the pop-up menu.
4. Press the **OK** side button. The keyword is inserted at the caret position.

Compiling Equations

The instrument cannot directly output an equation waveform. You must compile the equation into a standard waveform (*.wfm*) file. You then load and output this waveform file the same as any other waveform file. You can compile an equation file from either the Equation editor or the main EDIT menu.

After you initiates the compile command, the syntax checker runs. If a syntax error is found, the error line number is displayed.

Compiling from the Equation Editor

Do the following steps to compile an equation from the Equation editor:

1. Push **File** (bottom)→**Compile** (side). The instrument checks the equations for syntax errors. If the equation file contains syntax errors, the instrument displays the line number it thinks contains the syntax error. Push the **OK** side button to return to the editor and correct the equation(s).

   If the equations contain no syntax errors, the instrument compiles the equations and saves them to a *.wfm* file. The instrument then displays the names of the new waveform file. By default, the instrument uses the equation file name with a *.wfm* suffix.

2. Select the compiled waveform in the list and push the **View** side button. The instrument displays the waveform in the waveform view window.

3. Push the **Close** side button to return to the editor screen.

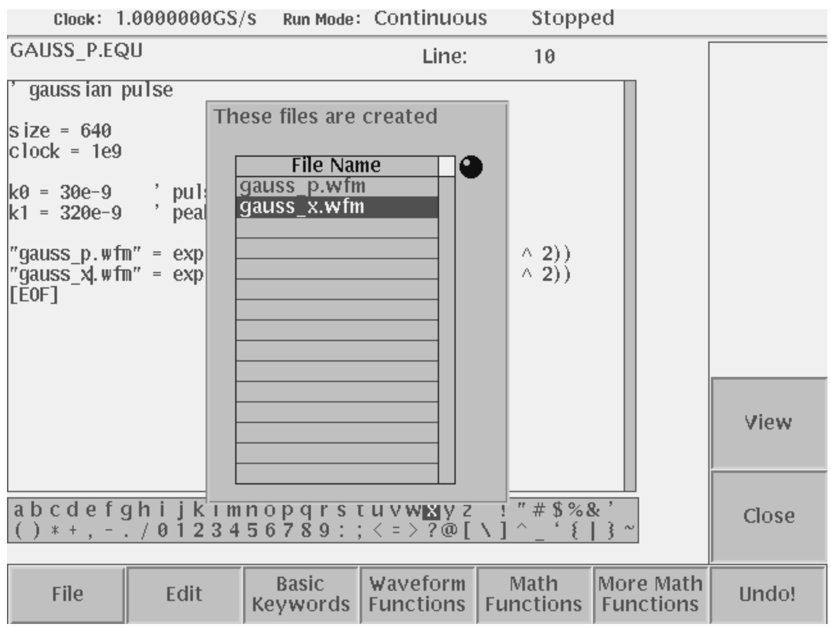


Figure 3–21: File list listing two waveforms created

Compiling from the EDIT Menu

Do the following steps to compile an equation from the main EDIT screen:

1. Push the **EDIT** button once or twice to display the EDIT file listing screen.

2. Select an equation file from the file list.

3. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Compile Equation** (side). The instrument checks the equations for syntax errors. If the equation file contains syntax errors, the instrument displays the line number it thinks contains the syntax error. Push the **OK** side button to clear the error message. You must then open the equation file in the Equation editor to fix the error.

   If the equations contain no syntax errors, the instrument compiles the equations and saves them to a *.wfm* file. By default, the instrument uses the current equation file name with a *.wfm* suffix.

4. Select the compiled waveform in the list and push the **Edit** side button. The instrument displays the waveform in the Waveform editor window.

Waveform Programming Language

This section describes the Waveform Programming Language (WPL) syntax, rules, and command descriptions. There are also a number of programming examples at the end of this section.

Command Syntax

This manual uses Backus-Naur Form (BNF) notation, shown in Table 3–28, to describe commands.

Table 3–28: BNF symbols and meanings

Symbol	Meaning
< >	Defined element
[ ]	Optional; can be omitted
. . .	Previous element(s) may be repeated

General Syntax Rules

The following are the general syntax rules for writing an equation file:

- All spaces, line feeds, and tab codes are ignored unless in a string.
- The concept of a line does not exist.
- All data from a single quote (’) to the end of a line is regarded as a comment.
- Alphabetical characters are case-insensitive unless in a string.
- The concept of cursor does not exist. You always work with the whole waveform.
- File attribute functions are unavailable in a waveform expression.
- The maximum length of a string is 256 characters, including spaces. Even if two or more strings are linked by colons (:) in a string expression, the whole length of the linked strings must not exceed 256 characters. If it is exceeded, an error will occur.
- The total length of strings in the whole equation program can be up to 1,000. (The “length” mentioned here is the sum of the number of characters of the string(s) plus a character used as the internal terminal code.

User-Defined Variables

All user-defined variable names must satisfy the following requirements:

- The first character must be an alphabetical character.
- The rest of the name must consist of an alphabetical character(s), digit(s), and/or an underscore(s) (_).
- The maximum number of characters 16. All characters in excess of 16 are ignored. Variables the name of which is identical in the first 16 characters will be regarded as identical.
- Alphabetical characters are case-insensitive. For example, FooBar and foobar are handled as the same variable name.
- You can use user-defined variables in the program without first declaring them.
- User-defined variables are 64-bit floating-point decimal numbers.
- A maximum of 100 variables may be included in a program; this includes the reserved variables, such as clock.
- There are no string variables; all variables require a numeric value.
- Initial variable values are undefined.

The following are unavailable for user-defined variables.

- Reserved word variable names
- Constant names
- Function names
- Keywords (for example, if and marker1)

Waveform Files

Some commands accept a waveform file name enclosed in double quotes. For example: ”sinewave.wfm”. Observe the following rules when using waveform expressions in equations:

- A quoted string can include any character defined in the 7-bit ASCII character set.
- A numeric value can be embedded in a string in the following format:

  “AA”:i:”.WFM”

  If the value of i is 10 in this expression, the string “AA10.WFM” will result. (Before conversion into the string, the value is rounded to the nearest integer.)
- One waveform expression can include a maximum of 10 input files. If the same file name appears more than once in a single waveform expression, that file is considered as one file. An exception to this is that “A.WFM” and “A.WFM”.marker1 are two different files.
- Signal names, as well as variables, are permitted in a waveform expression. Waveform expressions enable you to specify calculation between waveforms in a similar manner as ordinary expressions. For example, if you code the following:

  “A.WFM” = sin(2*pi*scale) + “B.WFM”

  A.WFM is produced as the sum of the sinewave equation and B.WFM waveforms.

Waveform Expression

The output name, placed to the left of an ‘=’, and the name used in the expression to the right of an ‘=’ are a <signal-name>. The marker data may be specified as follows in addition to the name of an ordinary waveform file:

“A.WFM”.marker2 = “A.WFM” > “B.WFM” > “B.WFM”

In this example, 1 is set if the A.WFM value as the A.WFM marker 2 value is larger than the B.WFM value; 0 is set otherwise. (This is the same as for the editor’s Compare function.) The A.WFM analog data is unchanged.

“B.WFM”.marker1 = “A.WFM”.marker1 + “A.WFM”.marker2

In this example, B.WFM’s marker1 is set if either marker 1 or 2 of A.WFM is 1.

In a waveform expression, the data length of the file created and the clock information are determined as follows.

If <output-signal-name> is a marker:

If the output file does not already exist, an error will occur. Attributes such as the data length (i.e., output file size) and clock information are unchanged. The analog data section does not change. Neither the size nor close variable value is used. If the waveform expression includes a <signal-name>, a file shorter than the output file would cause an error. If the input file is longer in this case, the data around the tail will not be used.

If <output-signal-name> is analog data:

A new file is always re-created without using the output file, if any. Actually, since the same file name may be specified for the input, the new file is tentatively created under another file name; it is then renamed.

All output file marker values will be 0. The output file data length and clock information will be as below.

If the waveform expression includes one or more <signal-name>s:

The output waveform length will equal that of the shortest waveforms included in the <waveform-expression>. The clock information will match the one appearing first (i.e., the one coded at the leftmost) out of those used in the waveform expression.

If the waveform expression includes no <signal-name>:

The output waveform length depends on the size variable value. The clock value depends on the clock variable value.

Command Descriptions

The WPL commands are listed in alphabetical order. Mathematical functions and operators are described under the headings *Math Functions* and *Math Operators*, respectively.

Bpf( )

Creates a new waveform file by passing the specified waveform file through a band-pass filter.

Group Waveform

Syntax

”output_filename” = bpf(”filename1”, cutoff_freq_lo,
cutoff_freq_hi, taps, atten)

Arguments

”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the source file for the band-pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

cutoff_freq_lo is the band-pass filter low-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

cutoff_freq_hi is the band-pass filter high-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

taps is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

atten is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example ”filtered.wfm” = bpf(”sine.wfm”, 3.0e6, 5.0e6, 101, 35)

Brf( )

Creates a new waveform file by passing the specified waveform file through a band-rejection filter.

Group

Waveform

Syntax

”output_filename” = brf(”filename1”, cutoff_freq_lo, cutoff_freq_hi, taps, atten)

Arguments

”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the source file for the band-pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

cutoff_freq_lo is the band-reject filter low-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

cutoff_freq_hi is the band-reject filter high-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

taps is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

atten is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example

”filtered.wfm” = brf(”sine.wfm”, 3.0e6, 5.0e6, 101, 45)

Code( )

This statement executes code conversion.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = code(”filename1”, ”code–conversion–table”)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the code–converted waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the source file for the code conversion operation. The file is 0 1 pattern data. If the file is an analog waveform file, this function reads as 1 if the data value is equal to or larger than 0.5, and 0 if the value is less than 0.5. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”code–conversion–table” is the text file containing a code conversion table in text form. You can use the files that are saved with the Code Conversion Table in the waveform or pattern editor. You can also create those text file each line of which composes of the following five fields delimited by comma (,):

PAST source, Current source, Next source, Past output, Output code

Refer to *The Tool Menu* on page 3–37 for the meaning of each field, and to *Code Conversion Table Text Files* on page H–12. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example ”C1.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”nrz.txt”)

Conv( )

This statement executes convolution between the waveform data of two specified files. All marker values in the output file are set to 0.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = conv(”filename1”, ”filename2”)

Arguments

”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the resultant convolution waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” and ”filename2” are the complete (file name and extension) names of the files on which you are performing the convolution. Both files must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose each file name with double-quotes.

Example

”newsine.wfm” = conv(”sine.wfm”, ”sine2x.wfm”)

Copy( )

Copies the specified file name to a new file name and/or location on the current drive.

Group

Waveform

Syntax

copy(”source_file”, ”target_file”)

Arguments

”source_file” is the complete file name (path, file name and extension) to the file that you want to copy. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”target_file” is the complete file name (path, file name and extension) to the location to which you are copying the source file. The target file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example

copy(”sine.wfm”, ”/test_dir/sine2.wfm”)

Corr( )

This statement executes correlation between the waveform data of two specified files. All marker values in the output file are set to 0. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two waveforms. For markers, the value of the first point is 1, and those of all the others are 0. Refer to *Correlation* on page H–5 for more information on correlation.

Group

Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = corr(”filename1”, ”filename2”)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the resultant correlation waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” and ”filename2” are the complete (file name and extension) names of the files on which you are performing the correlation. Both files must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose each file name with double-quotes.

Example ”corrwave.wfm” = corr(”sine.wfm”, ”sine2x.wfm”)

Data( )

Writes the defined data points to the specified file. The number of <expression>s specified must equal the number of points. All marker values will be 0. At least one <expression> must be included.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = data(data_defn, data_defn, ...)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the expanded waveform and marker data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

data_defn is a value that defines the data point value. The first data point value starts at point 0. You must include at least one data definition expression. Separate each definition with a comma

***NOTE**. This command lets you create a waveform file that does not meet the instrument waveform minimum data requirement (minimum of 256 points, evenly divisible by four). If you create such a file, and open it in a waveform editor and then attempt to save it, the instrument displays a dialog box asking you to correct the problem). If you attempt to load the waveform in the Setup screen, the instrument displays an error message stating that the file does not have enough data points.*

Example ”foo.wfm” = data(1, 0, .2, .4, .5)

Delete( )

Deletes the specified file name from the current drive.

Group Waveform

Syntax delete(”filename”)

Arguments ”filename” is the complete file name (path, file name and extension) to the file that you want to delete. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example delete(”/test_dir/wvfrms/sine2x.wfm”)

Diff( )

Performs a differentiation operation on a specified file. The output file retains all marker values of the input file. Refer to *Differentiation* on page H–1 for information about the differentiation algorithm.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = diff(”filename”)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the resultant waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the file on which you are performing the differentiation operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example ”diffwave.wfm” = diff(”log_swp.wfm”)

Expand( )

Horizontally expands (scales) the waveform and marker data of the specified waveform file and writes it to a new file.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = expand(”filename”, expand_multiplier)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the expanded waveform and marker data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the file on which you are performing the expand operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

expand_multiplier is an integer value specifying how much to expand the waveform data. The value must be greater than one. Values less than or equal to one result in the output waveform being the same as the input waveform.

Example ”longswp.wfm” = expand(”lin_swp.wfm”, 2)

Extract( )

Extracts the specified portion of a waveform file and writes it to a new file. The marker data is also extracted. Specify the start and end points to extract those data. Waveform data starts at point 0.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = extract(”filename”, start_point, end_point)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the extracted waveform and marker data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the source file for the extract operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

start_point is the location of the first data point to extract from the input file. This is an integer value. The starting point value must be less than or equal to the ending point value or an error occurs during compilation.

end_point is the location of the last data point to extract from the input file. This is an integer value. The ending point value must be greater than or equal to the starting point value or an error occurs during compilation.

***NOTE**. This command lets you create a waveform file that does not meet the instrument waveform minimum data requirement (minimum of 256 points, evenly divisible by four). If you create such a file, and open it in a waveform editor and then attempt to save it, the instrument displays a dialog box asking you to correct the problem). If you attempt to load the waveform in the Setup screen, the instrument displays an error message stating that the file does not have enough data points.*

Example ”shortsin.wfm” = extract(”sine.wfm”, 0, 511)

For (Control Statement)

Provides a structure for executing one or more equation expressions a defined number of times.

Group Control

Syntax for <var> = <start> to <end> <expr> next
for <var> = <start> to <end> step <incr> <expr> next

Arguments var is a variable name to contain the for loop count value. A common variable name used for this purpose is i. As long as the value of var is true (between the start and end values, inclusive), the program executes the expression(s) in the for loop. When var is false (var > end for incr > 0, and var < end for incr > 0), program flow jumps to the line immediately following next.

start is a value or expression that defines the starting number (integer or real) of the for statement loop count.

end is a value or expression that defines the end number (integer or real) of the for statement loop count.

incr is an value or expression used with the optional step keyword to define the size of the loop count increment steps. By default the loop counter increments in steps of 1. The incr can be a negative value in which the loop count decriments steps. The increment value is a real or integer number.

NOTE*. Although the start, end, and incr arguments accept real numbers, their values are rounded off to the nearest integer value.*

---

expr is one or more equation expressions that are executed when the for loop condition is true.

Example

```
for i = nsht to (size – nsht –1) step 1
    sp = i – nsht
    ep = i + nsht
    ”TEMP1.WFM” = extract(”NOISE.WFM”, sp, ep)
    ”TEMP2.WFM” = ”TEMP2.WFM” / nump
next
```

Hpf( )

Creates a new file by passing the specified waveform file through a high-pass filter.

Group

Waveform

Syntax

”output_filename” = hpf(”filename1”, cutoff_freq, taps, atten)

Arguments

”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the source file for the high-pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

cutoff_freq is the high-pass filter cutoff frequency. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number. You can also enter the value as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

taps is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

atten is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example ”filtered.wfm” = hpf(”sine.wfm”, 3.25e5, 2, 25)

If (Control Statement)

Provides control statements to execute expressions when a condition resolves to true or false.

Group Control

Syntax
if <condition> then <expr1> endif
if <condition> then <expr1> else <expr2> endif

Arguments condition is a conditional expression that resolves to a logical true or false. True equals any non-zero value; false equals zero. When the condition is true, the expression statement is run.

expr1 is an equation expression you want to execute when condition is true.

expr2 is an equation expression you want to execute when condition is false. This argument is only valid as part of the else statement of an if/then/else/endif control construct.

Example

```
if cc = 1 then
      ”SMOOTH.WFM” = ”TEMP2.WFM”
   else
      ”SMOOTH.WFM” = join(”SMOOTH.WFM”, ”TEMP2.WFM”)
   endif
```

Integ( )

Performs an integration operation on a specified file. The output file retains all marker values of the input file. Refer to *Integral* on page H–3 for information about the integration algorithm.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = integ(”filename”)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the resultant waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename” is the complete name (path, file name and extension) of the source file for the integration operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example ”intwave.wfm” = integ(”sineswp.wfm”)

Join( )

Joins (concatenates) two waveform files (waveform and marker data) into a single file. The clock sample rate in first file sets the clock sample rate for the output file waveform. You can only concatenate waveform (*.wfm*) files.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = join(”filename1”, ”filename2”)

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the concatenated files. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” and ”filename2” are the complete names (path, file name, and extension) of the files you are concatenating. Both files must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose each file name with double-quotes.

Example ”newsine.wfm” = join(”sine.wfm”, sine2.wfm”)

Lpf( )

Creates a new file by passing the specified waveform file through a low pass filter.

Group Waveform

Syntax ”output_filename” = lpf(”filename1”, cutoff_freq, taps, atten)

Arguments

"output_filename" is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

"filename1" is the complete (file name and extension) name of the source file for the low pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

cutoff_freq is the low pass filter cutoff frequency. You can enter the interger value.

taps is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

atten is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the interger value.

Example

"filtered.wfm" = lpf("sine.wfm", 10.454e2, 2, 30)

Math Functions

The following table lists the programming language math functions that you can use as part of a waveform equation expression.

Table 3–29: Programming language math functions

Function	Description
abs(*a*)	Absolute value of *a*.
acos(*a*)	Arc cosine of *a*.
asin(*a*)	Arc sine of *a*.
atan(*a*)	Arc tangent of *a*.
ceil(*a*)	Maximum integer less than or equal to *a*
cos(*a*)	Cosine of *a*.
cosh(*a*)	Hyperbolic cosine of *a*.
exp(*a*)	Exponential function of base of natural logarithm for *a*.
floor(*a*)	Minimum integer greater than or equal to *a*.
int(*a*)	Truncation (Same as floor(*a*) if *a* >= 0; same as ceil(*a*) if *a* < 0)
log(*a*)	Natural logarithm of *a*.
log10(*a*)	Base 10 logarithm of *a*.
max(*a, b*)	Returns larger (maximum) value of *a* and *b*.

Table 3–29: Programming language math functions (cont.)

Function	Description
min(*a, b*)	Returns smaller (minimum) value of *a* and *b*.
noise()	Generates pseudo Gaussian distribution white noise signal with a standard deviation (= RMS) of 1.
pow(*a,b*)	Exponentiation (*b*th power of *a*, or *a*^*b*) A negative value may be specified for *a* only if *b* is an integer. Otherwise, NaN will result. The pow function returns one of the following values: If $b = 0$: Always 1 If $b \neq 0$ and $a = 0$: Always 0 If $b \neq 0$ and $a < 0$ and b is a positive integer: a*b If $b \neq 0$ and $a < 0$ and b is a negative integer: Reciprocal of a*(–b) If $b \neq 0$ and $a < 0$, NaN (Not a Number)
rnd()	Returns a random number in the 0 to 1 range. Generated base seed = (253 * seed + 1)% 16777216, return seed/16777216. Seed is a 32-bit unsigned integer.
round(*a*)	Rounds off the value of *a* to an integer.
saw(*a*)	Saw tooth wave with a cycle of 2π and an amplitude ±1. If a = -2π, 0, 2π, 4π, or 6π, etc., the value is –1. At points immediately before these, the value approaches 1. (This function will not take the value 1.0.)
sign(*a*)	Sign of *a* (1 if a > 0; -1 if a < 0; 0 if a = 0).
sin(*a*)	Sine value of *a*.
sinc(*a*)	Same as sin(*a*)/*a*, except that 1 results if *a*=0.
sinh(*a*)	Hyperbolic sine value of *a*.
sqr(*a*)	Rectangular wave with a cycle of 2π and an amplitude ±1. If k is an even: For $a = k\pi$ to $(k+1)\pi$, sqr returns –1, except +1.0 when *a* equals $(k+1)\pi$. If k is an odd: For $a = k\pi$ to $(k+1)\pi$, sqr returns +1, except –1.0 when $a = (k+1)\pi$.
sqrt(*a*)	Square root value of *a*.
srnd(*seed*)	Sets the random number generator seed value. Seed is 0 to $2^{31}-1$. Default value is 0.
tan(*a*)	Tangent value of *a*.
tanh(*a*)	Hyperbolic tangent value of *a*.
tri(*a*)	Triangular wave with a cycle of 2π and an amplitude ±1. If $a = 0$, the value is 0. If $a = 0.5\pi$, it is 1.0. If $a = \pi$, it is 0.0. If $a = 1.5\pi$, it is –1.

Math Operators

The following table lists the programming language math operators that you can use as part of waveform equation expressions.

Table 3–30: Math operators

Operators	Description
Unary Arithmetic Operations	
–	Inverts the sign.
+	Does nothing.
Binary Operations	
+	Addition
–	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Division
^	Exponentiation
Binary Relational Operations	
=	If both side values are equal, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
<>	If both side values are not equal, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
>	If the left side value is larger than the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
>=	If the left side value is larger than or equal to the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
<	If the left side value is smaller than the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
<=	If the left side value is smaller than or equal to the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
Binary Conditional Operator	
and	
or	

The operator priorities are as follows, starting with higher priority at the top of the list. Operators on the same line have equal priority.

^
– (unary), + (unary)
*, /
=, <>, >, >=, <, <=
and, or

***NOTE**. Exponentiation executes the same calculation as for the pow() function. Zero (0) divided by 0 is 1.*

Norm( )

This statement performs an normalization operation on a specified file waveform data. Normalization scales the waveform values to a ±1.0 range, centered on 0. The output file retains all marker values of the input file.

Group

Waveform

Syntax

”output_filename” = norm(”filename1”)

Arguments

”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the resultant waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”filename1” is the complete (file name and extension) name of the file on which you are performing the normalization operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example

”intwave.wfm” = norm(”sineswp.wfm”)

Pn( )

Creates a pseudo-random waveform using a shift register. You can specify the register size (1 to 32) and XOR feedback tap position. The register’s initial values are set to one. If you omit the tap position specifier, a default maximum data length tap setting is used.

Group

Waveform

Syntax

”output_filename” = pn(reg_size [, tap_position ...])

Arguments

”output_filename” is the complete file name (file name and extension) to contain the pseudo-random waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

reg_size specifies the number of registers in the pseudo-random generator. This is an integer value from 1 to 32.

tap_position specifies the register positions to ’tap’ for XOR feedback to the register input. A tap does an XOR operation on the output signal and the specified register and passes the result to the next-lower tap position or the register input (register 1), whichever it encounters first. Refer to *Shift Register Generator* on page 3–14 for more information.

Example ”random.wfm” = pn(12, 3, 6, 8)

Rename( )

Renames the specified file name to a new file name and/or location on the current drive.

Group Waveform

Syntax rename(”source_file”, ”target_file”)

Arguments ”source_file” is the complete file name (path, file name and extension) to the file that you want to rename. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

”target_file” is the complete file name (path, file name and extension) to the location to which you are renaming the source file. The target file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name with double-quotes.

Example rename(”/test_dir/sine.wfm”, ”/test_dir/old_sine.wfm”)

Variables (pre-defined)

The following table lists pre-defined programming language variables that you can use as part of a waveform equation expression (except where noted).

Table 3–31: Pre-defined variables

Function	Description
clock	Sets the current instrument sample clock rate.
fname.clock	Returns the sample clock rate of the specified file name. You cannot use this variable in a waveform expression.
pi	The Ludolphian number π.
point	Current data point number value, starting at 0. Read only. Only useable within an equation expression.
scale	Returns the current scale value that increase 0 to 1. Read only. Only useable within an equation expression.
size	Sets the current waveform record length.
fname.size	Returns the number of waveform data points of the specified file name. You cannot use this variable in a waveform expression.
time	Current data time value, starting at 0. Read only. Only useable within an equation expression.

Write( )

Writes the specified text to a new file name and/or location on the current drive. If an output file already exists, the source file contents are appended to the end of the existing file.

Group Waveform

Syntax write(”output_filename”, ”text” [,”text” ...])

Arguments ”output_filename” is the complete file name (path, file name and extension) to the file that you want to write. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name in double-quotes.

”text” is the text string enclosed in double-quotes. If you need to use a double–quotation mark as part of the text, precede each double-quote character with a slash character (\). For example:

”This function writes a text to a \”ABC.TXT\” in text form.”

In a similar way, the following codes can be used in text strings:

\n — LF
\r — CR
\t — Tab
\\ — Backslash
\” — Double–quote

Example write(”sine.wfm”, ”This is comment line.”)

Programming Examples

The following eight equation programming examples are described below.

Examples	Key points to be learned
Example 1	Describes how to create waveform file, and how to read and write waveform files.
Example 2	Describes how to use *for* loop and *if* conditional branch statements.
Example 3	Describes how to put comments, and how to create sequence file.
Example 4	Describes how to use marker data and how to use the binary relational operations in the assignment statement.
Example 5	Describes how to use digital filter functions.
Example 6	Describes how to use *data()* and *code()* functions.
Example 7	Describes how to handle specific point data in the waveform file using the *extract()*, *join()* and *integ()* function, and also the *for* and *if* statement..
Example 8	Creates the equation file to generate the four waveforms and two sequence files used in the Sequence editor tutorial in the *Getting Started* section.
Others	Refer to *Sample Waveforms* in Appendix H for more equation examples. Most of the waveforms in the appendix were created by the listed equations.

Example 1

The example below creates three waveform files: *a.wfm*, *b.wfm* and *c.wfm*.

```
size = 2000
”a.wfm” = cos (2 * pi * scale)

size = 1500
”b.wfm” = cos (2 * pi * scale)
”c.wfm” = ”a.wfm” * ”b.wfm”
```

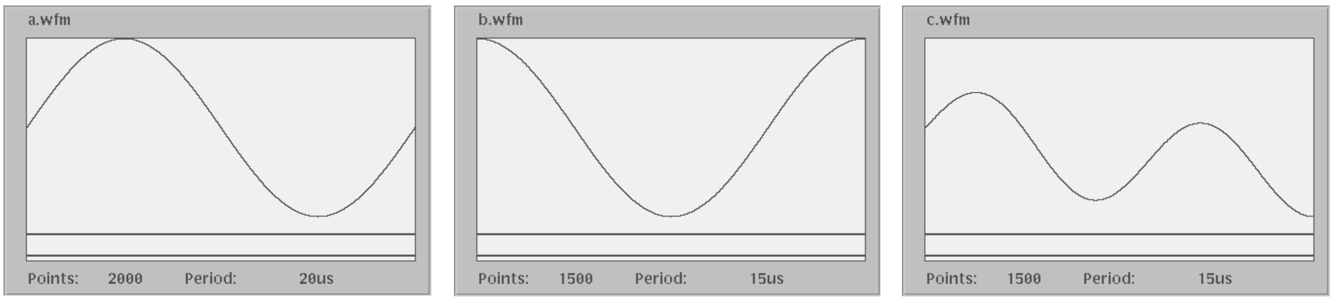
The first and third lines define the waveform record length (in points). You can change the record length any time within an equation; all created files use the last–set size value. When you do not define the waveform record length, the instrument uses the default length of 1000.

The second line generates the waveform *a.wfm* with 2000 data points. The *scale* is the system-used-variable to fit the generated waveform within the ±1.0 vertical scale range, and if you omit this variable, DC waveform with certain level is generated.

The waveform *b.wfm* has the point size of 1500 and is generated by multiplying the *a.wfm* and *b.wfm* waveforms.

When you perform the operation between the waveforms which have the different point size, the lowest point size among them is used. Therefore the c.wfm will have the point size of 1500.

Figure 3–22 shows the waveforms to be generated by the above example.



a.wfm b.wfm c.wfm

Figure 3–22: Waveforms generated from the Example 1 equation

Example 2

Below is an example in which the *for* and *if* statements are used.

```
num = 30

for i = 1 to num
    if i = 1 then
        ”t.wfm”=cos(2*pi*scale)
    else
        ”t.wfm”=”t.wfm”+cos(2*pi*i*scale)
    endif
next

”t.wfm”=”t.wfm”/num
```

Num and *i* are user-defined-valuables. *I* is used aspart of the *for* loop parameter. The statements placed between the *for* and *next* keywords repeats 30 times while the *i* increments by 1 for each loop.

The conditional branch statement must start with the *if* keyword and end with the *endif* keyword. In the above example, if i = 1, the equation creates the waveform *t.wfm.* When $i \neq 1$, the newly created waveform and the one created in the previous loop are added, and the result is stored in the waveform *t.wfm*. The resultant waveform is then normalized.

Figure 3–23 shows the waveform generated by the above example.

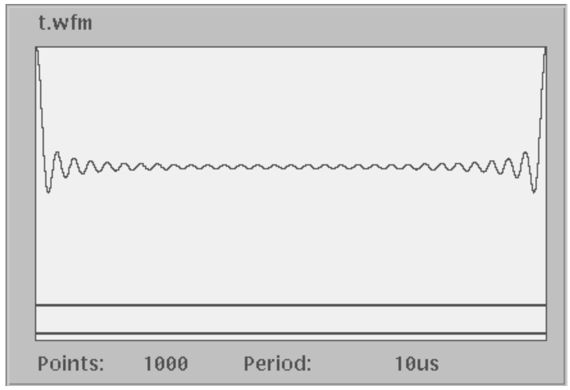


Figure 3–23: Waveform generated by the Example 2 equation

Example 3

The following example creates one sequence file and four waveforms.

```
delete(”test.seq”)

size=500
clock=1e9
num=4

’write sequence file header

write(”test.seq”,”3002\n”)
write(”test.seq”,”LINES ”:num:”\n”)

for i = 1 to num

   ’create a waveform file
   ”test”:i:”.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * i * scale)

   ’add line to sequence file
   rep = num * i
   write(”test.seq”,”\”test”:i:”.wfm\”,\”\”,”:rep:”\n”)
next
```

The first line is the statement for deleting the existed waveform. If that file does not exist, no action is taken.

The *size* and *clock* keywords are the system valuables representing the waveform record length, in points, and the sampling clock frequency. They are set to 500 points and 1.0 GS/s in the above example.

The comment text on line 7 starts with a single quotation (’) character. Comment text is effective until the end of the line containing the single-quote character.

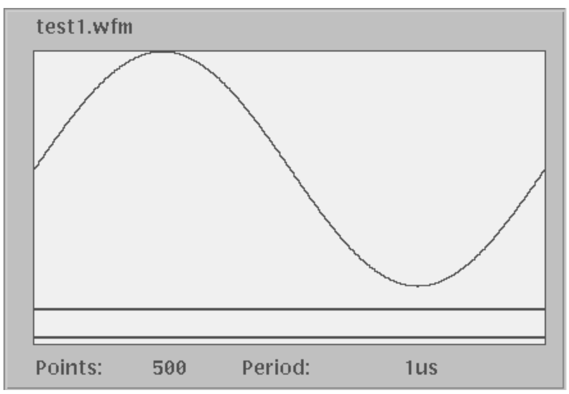
The *write* command writes the specified text to the specified file. If the file being written to exists, the write command appends the specified string to the end of the file. The first argument is the file to which the strings specified as the second argument and after will be written.The string must be parenthesized with double-quotations. If you desire to use a variable as a string, you must place the colon (:) before and after the valuable. For example:

”text”:i:”.wfm”

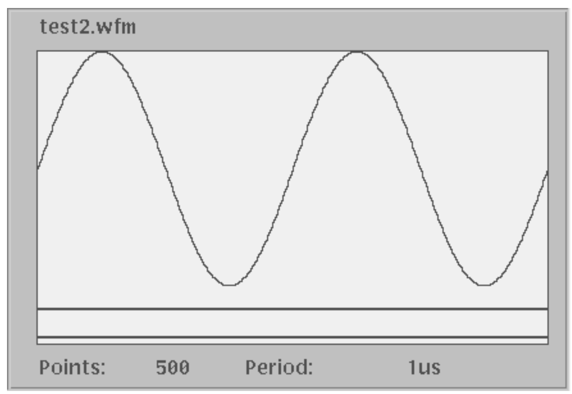
In the above example, if the variable *i* is currently 5, the value of the string will be *text5.wfm*. The slash is used as a escape character, and precede the double-quotation in a string. The ’\n’ inserts an end of line (EOL) character in the file.

The sequence file is a text file which has the number 3002 at the first line of the text and the number of line LINES 4, for example, at the second line.

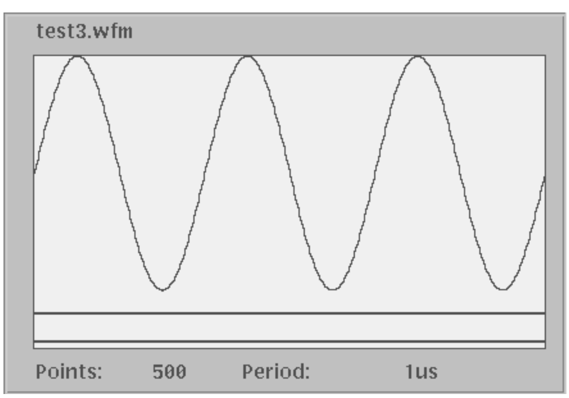
Figure 3–24 shows the four waveforms generated by example 3. Figure 3–25 shows the sequence table created by example 3.



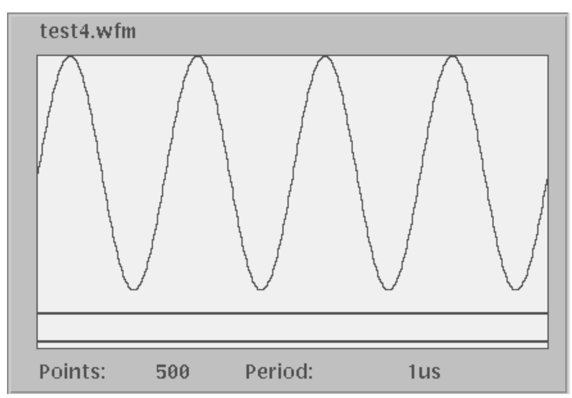
test1.wfm



test2.wfm



test3.wfm



test4.wfm

Figure 3–24: Waveforms generated by the Example 3 equation

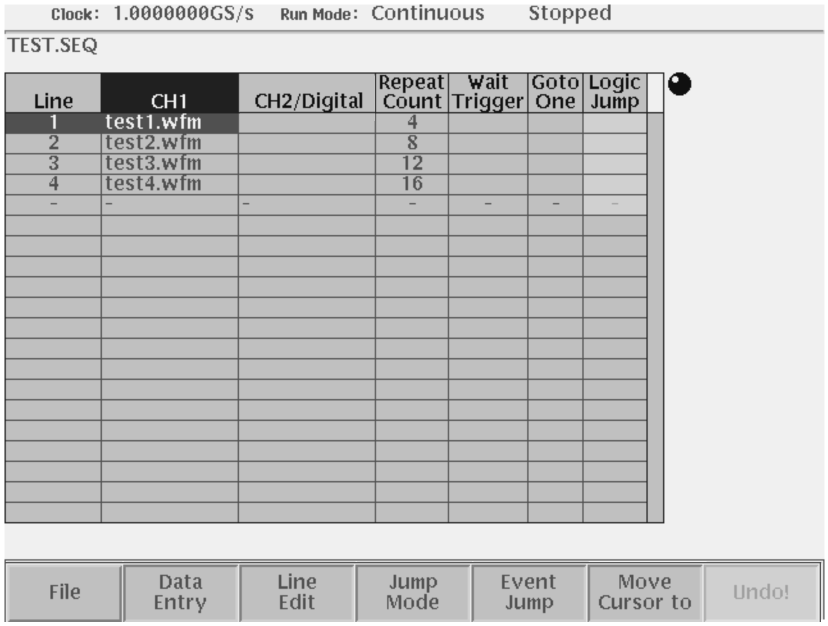


Figure 3–25: Sequence generated by the Example 3 equation

NOTE. *The equation/text editor has the viewer that displays the waveforms after the compile has been performed. However, this viewer cannot display the sequence. Instead, use the sequence editor to confirm the results.*

Example 4

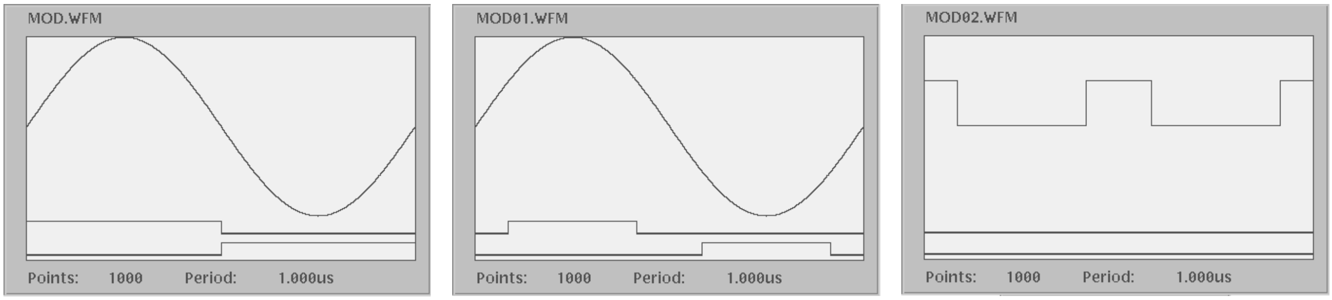
The following example shows how to use boolean relational operations between a waveform and its marker data.

```
delete(”MOD01.WFM”)
delete(”MOD02.WFM”)

”MOD01.WFM” = ”MOD.WFM”

”MOD01.WFM”.marker1 = ”MOD01.WFM” >= 0.5
”MOD01.WFM”.marker2 = ”MOD01.WFM” <= –0.5

”MOD02.WFM” = (”MOD01.WFM”.marker1 = ”MOD01.WFM”.marker2)
/ 2
```

The boolean relational operation results in a 1 value if the condition is true, and 0 if the condition is false. Therefore the MOD01.WFM marker1 signal is 1 if the waveform data is greater than or equal to 0.5, and 0 for all other values. Likewise, the marker2 signal is 1 if the waveform data is less than or equal to –0.5, and 0 for all other values.

The MOD02.WFM signal is 0.5 if the marker1 signal of the MOD01.WFM is equal to the marker2 signal, otherwise the signal value is 0.

The results are shown in Figure 3–26.

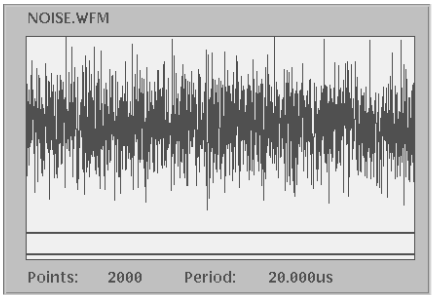


MOD.WFM MOD01.WFM MOD02.WFM

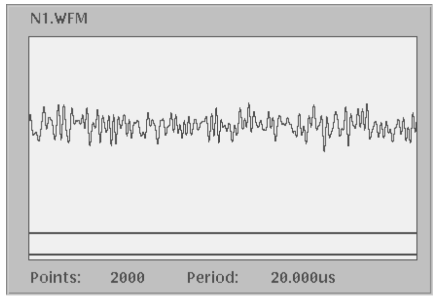
Figure 3–26: Source waveform and those generated by the Example 4

Example 5 The following example shows how to use filter functions. There are four digital filter functions: lpf(), hpf(), bpf() and brf(), which are the same as those provided in the digital filter dialog box of the waveform editor. Refer to *Digital Filter...* on page 3–27 for more information on the filter arguments and the digital filter characteristics.

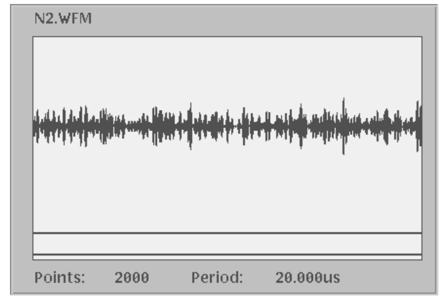
```
size = 2000

hf = 45e6     ’ Cutoff frequency High: 1 Hz to 50 MHz
lf = 5e6      ’ Cutoff frequency Low: 1 Hz to 50 MHz
taps = 97     ’ Taps: 3 to 101
att = 30      ’ Attenuation: 21 dB to 100 dB

”NOISE.WFM” = noise()
”NOISE.WFM” = norm(”NOISE.WFM”)

”N1.WFM” = lpf(”NOISE.WFM”, lf, taps, att)
”N2.WFM” = hpf(”NOISE.WFM”, hf, taps, att)
”N3.WFM” = bpf(”NOISE.WFM”, lf, hf, taps, att)
”N4.WFM” = brf(”NOISE.WFM”, lf, hf, taps, att)
```



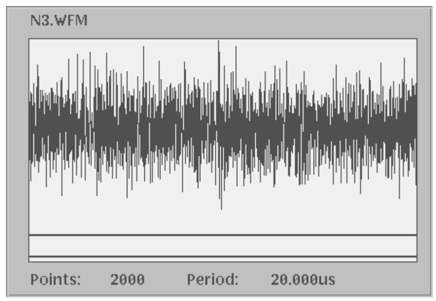
NOISE.WFM



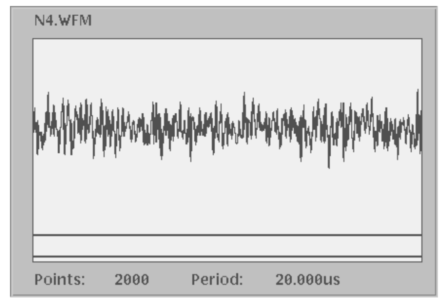
N1.WFM-(after LPF)



N2.WFM-(after HPF)



N3.WFM-(after BPF)



N3.WFM-(after BRF)

Figure 3–27: Noise waveforms after filtered

Example 6

The following example shows a code conversion. In this example, two kinds of data are created with *data()* function. You need to prepare the code conversion tables which can be created with the text editor or Code Convert Table dialog box brought up by pushing **Tools** (bottom)→**Code Convert...** (pop-up)→ **OK** (side)→**Edit...** (side) from the waveform or pattern editor.

”C0.WFM” = data(0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0)

”C1.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”nrz.txt”)
”C2.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”nrzi.txt”)
”C3.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”nrzi–2.txt”)
”C4.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”fm.txt”)
”C5.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”bi–phase.txt”)
”C6.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”rz.txt”)
”C7.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”special.txt”)

”C0.WFM” = data(0,1,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,1,0,
0,0,1,0,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,0,0)
”C8.WFM” = code(”C0.WFM”, ”1–7rill.txt”)

The waveforms generated by above equation file are composed of 0 and 1. It is convenient to use the waveform editor in table mode to look at the results. Refer to *Code Conversion* in *Appendix H* for the input patterns, output patterns and code conversion tables.

Example 7

The following example applies a 7-point smoothing operation to a noise waveform. This equation uses the *extract()*, *integ()* and *join()* functions, and also *for* and *if* control statements. Although you do not have any other method to perform smoothing with the instrument, this is not a preferable way to apply a smoothing operation. Refer to this example for learning how to use these functions and control statements.

You can change the number of smoothing points by changing the value of the variable nump. The greater the value of nump, the faster the instrument can finish the compile. However, this kind of program frequently accesses the hard disk and takes more than 20 minutes to complete.

```
’ Simple smoothing (7 points)

nump = 7
extp = nump – 1
nsht = extp / 2
size = 504

”NOISE.WFM” = noise()
”NOISE.WFM” = norm(”NOISE.WFM”)

cc = 1
for i = nsht to (size – nsht –1) step 1
   sp = i – nsht
   ep = i + nsht
   ”TEMP1.WFM” = extract(”NOISE.WFM”, sp, ep)
   ”TEMP1.WFM” = integ(”TEMP1.WFM”)
   ”TEMP2.WFM” = extract(”TEMP1.WFM”, extp, extp)
   ”TEMP2.WFM” = ”TEMP2.WFM” / nump
   if cc = 1 then
      ”SMOOTH.WFM” = ”TEMP2.WFM”
   else
      ”SMOOTH.WFM” = join(”SMOOTH.WFM”, ”TEMP2.WFM”)
   endif
   cc = cc + 1
next

delete(”TEMP1.WFM”)
delete(”TEMP2.WFM”)
```

The following text describes what happens in this example:

1. The *noise()* function generates a noise waveform into the file NOISE.WFM, in which the waveform data are normalized using the norm() function.
2. The *extract()* function extracts first 7 data and store them into the file TEPM1.WFM.
3. The *integ()* function integrates the 7 data. The data of last point is the amount of 7 point data. This last data is divided by 7 and then concatenated to the file SMOOTH.WFM.
4. The *for* statement shifts the points to be read by one point for each loop and repeats above procedures.

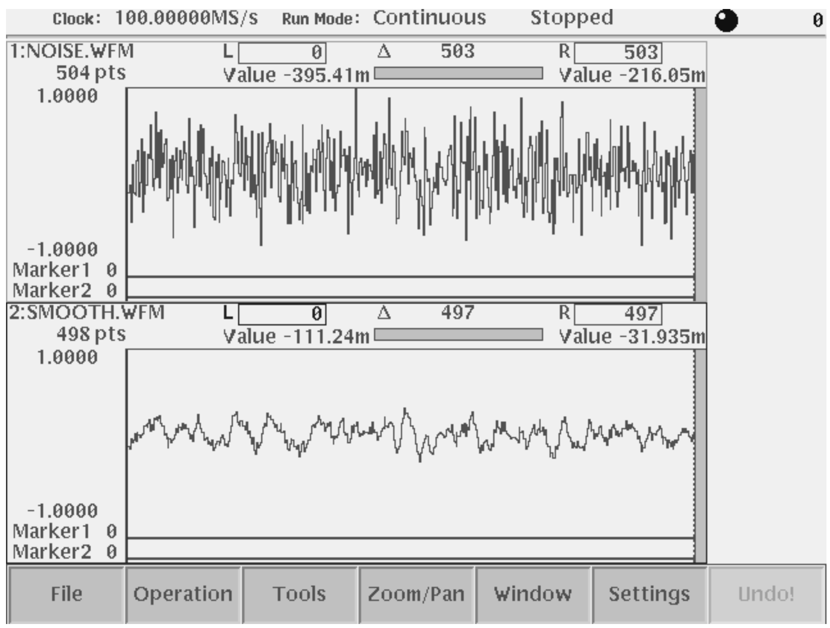


Figure 3–28: Noise waveforms before (upper) and after (lower) 7-point smoothing

Example 8 The following example creates two sequence files and five waveform files. These files are the same as those used in *Tutorial 6*, of the *Operating Basics* section.

```
’ Tutoral 6

delete(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”)
delete(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”)

size = 1000
clock = 1e8
num = 4
```

```
' Sub–sequence
write(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”, ”MAGIC 3002\n”)
write(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”, ”LINES ”:num:”\n”)
write(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”SQUARE.WFM\”,\”\”,40000\n”)
write(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”RAMP.WFM\”,\”\”,60000\n”)
write(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”TRIANGLE.WFM\”,\”\”,60000\n”)
write(”SUBSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”SINE.WFM\”,\”\”,30000\n”)

' Main sequence
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”MAGIC 3002\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”LINES ”:num:”\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”SUBSEQ.SEQ\”,\”\”,2,1,–1\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”RAMP.WFM\”,\”\”,0,0,0,0\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”TRIANGLE.WFM\”,\”\”,40000,0,1,4\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”\”SINE.WFM\”,\”\”,60000,0,0,0\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”TABLE_JUMP
0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”LOGIC_JUMP –1,–1,–1,–1,\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”JUMP_MODE LOGIC\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”JUMP_TIMING ASYNC\n”)
write(”MAINSEQ.SEQ”, ”STROBE 0\n”)

' Standard functions
”GAUSSN.WFM”   = noise()
”SINE.WFM”     = sin(2 * pi * scale)
”RAMP.WFM”     = 2 * scale –1
”TRIANGLE.WFM” = tri(2 * pi * scale)
”SQUARE.WFM”   = sqr(2 * pi * scale)
```

See Figure 2–42 on page 2–66 to see the contents of the *subseq.seq* file, and Figure 2–44 on page 2–69 to see the contents of the *mainseq.seq* file. Figure 3–29 on page 3–90 shows the *gaussn.wfm* and *ramp.wfm* waveforms created in above equation.

Refer to *Appendix H* for an explanation of the sequence file text format.

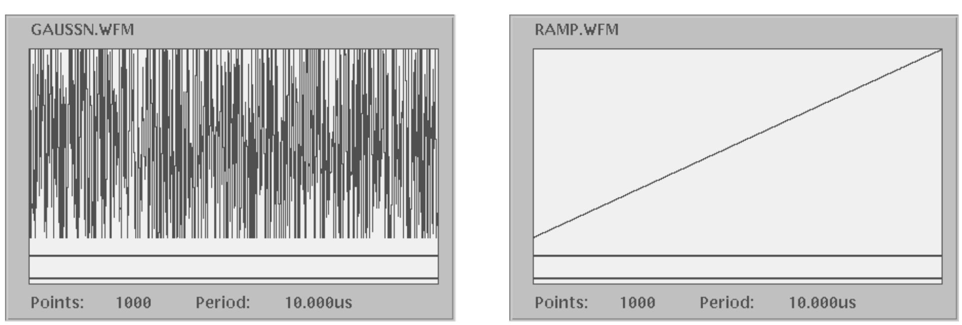


Figure 3–29: Gaussian noise and ramp waveforms

The Sequence Editor

The Sequence editor is used to create a sequence file. A sequence file is simply a list of waveform file names that the instrument will output. Additional parameters like repeat count, event triggering, and conditional jumps allow you to generate very large and complex output waveforms. You can also specify another sequence file as an output file. This section describes the features of the Sequence editor. Tutorial 6 on page 2–62 provides detailed instructions for creating sequence files.

Starting the Sequence Editor

To start the Sequence editor, push **EDIT** (front)→**Edit** (bottom)→**New Sequence** (side). You can also automatically start the Sequence editor by loading a *.seq* file from the EDIT menu file list. Figure 3–30 shows the Sequence editor screen with an example sequence list. Table 3–32 describes each column of the sequence table, with more detailed information and procedures on page 3–95. Table 3–33 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–33 describe the menu operations in detail.

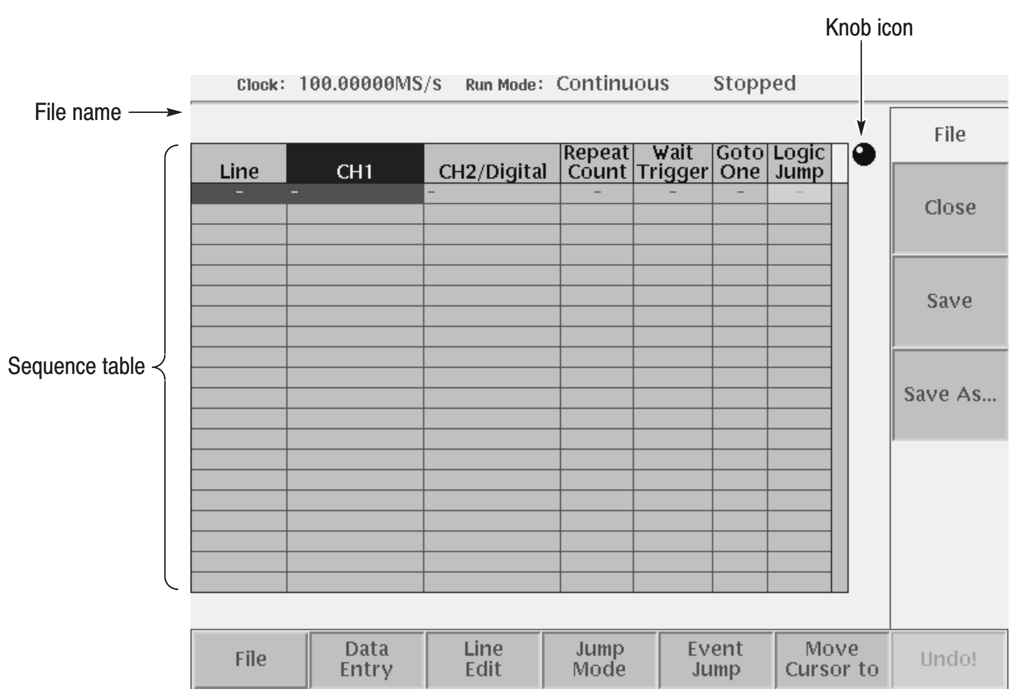


Figure 3–30: Sequence editor initial screen

Table 3–32: Sequence table columns

Column	Description
Sequence file name	Remains blank if you have not saved the sequence once after opening a new file.
Line	Sequence line number. It is assigned automatically here as a result of addition or deletion of a line.
CH1 and CH2/Digital	Specifies the waveform (.WFM or .PAT) or sequence file to output on CH 1 (and CH 2 for AWG 520 or Digital for Option03) for that line of the sequence table. On each sequence line, The data lengths of the waveform files in a sequence table line must be identical. If the waveform file name for a channel is blank the instrument will output DC. A sequence file may be specified for an output file. You can only nest sequence files 1 level. The waveform file name cannot contain a drive or directory name. The sequence file and all waveform files called must be accessible at the same directory level. If the waveform file name fields for both channels are blank on a sequence line, or the instrument cannot locate a specified file, the instrument displays an error message and aborts loading the sequence file. Remember that file names are case sensitive. The data length of each waveform file used for the sequence process must be a multiple of 4 from 256 points to 4M points. For sequence output, the total of data length of the waveforms must not exceed 4M points.
Repeat Count	Specifies the number of repeats. You may specify any integer from 1 to 65536, or select the keyword **Infinity**. The **Infinity** setting is neglected in a nested sequence file (subsequence).
Wait Trigger	Specifies the instrument to wait for a trigger event before outputting the waveform(s) on the specified sequence table line. Valid values are On and Off (blank). Wait Trigger functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Triggered or Enhanced. This setting is neglected in the subsequence.
Goto One	Specifies whether control jumps to the head of the sequence table after outputting. Valid values are On or Off (blank). Wait Trigger functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. This setting is neglected in the subsequence. Note that, for the last line of the sequence table, this setting is always ON independently of setting.
Logic Jump	Specifies the sequence table to jump to a specified line depending on signal values on the EVENT IN connector. You may specify Next (go to the next line) or Off (blank) as well as specify the sequence line number for the destination. Selecting Off means the line currently editing is set as a jump address. For example, when an event occurs during the output of the waveform set in the line 5 with jump off, the waveform in the line 5 is output again from the top. This field remains gray if the Jump Mode side menu of the Event Jump bottom menu is Table. This setting is neglected in the subsequence.

NOTE. *Infinity setting in Repeat Count and all settings in Wait Trigger, Goto One and Logic Jump are neglected in subsequence.*

Table 3–33: Sequence editor bottom menu

Button	Description
File	Provides side-menu commands for closing the editor, saving the sequence table to the current file name, and saving the sequence data to a new file name.
Data Entry	Provides side-menu commands for inserting a new line in the table as well as entering and editing data in the sequence table columns.
Line Edit	Provides side-menu commands to cut, copy, and paste table lines.
Event Jump	Provides side-menu commands and a new screen for entering event jumps into the sequence table.
Move Cursor To	Provides pop-up dialog box to specify table line number to select for editing.

Sequence Table Editing

Sequence table editing is based on selecting a cell in the table and editing or setting parameters in that cell. This section describes the sequence table edit operations.

Cursor Movement

The cursor moves on a cell-by-cell basis. The following text describes how to move the cursor. The instrument highlights the active cell.

- Move the cursor up or down a line by using the general purpose knob or the ⏶ and ⏷ buttons or keyboard keys.
- Move the cursor horizontally along a line by using the ⏴ and ⏵ buttons or keyboard keys.
- You can move it also by entering numeric values. This is convenient, for example, when a long sequence results, because more rapid cursor movement cursor is implemented.

  Push the **Move Cursor** bottom button to display the Move Cursor to dialog box. Input the destination line number in the dialog box and then push the **OK** side button.
- When you set the value in the Repeat Count, the ⏴ and ⏵ buttons are assigned to shift of numeric values. To move the cursor horizontally, push the **TOGGLE** or **CLEAR MENU** on the front–panel. Then, use the ⏴ and ⏵ button to move the cursor.

- The side menu corresponding to the **Data Entry** bottom button varies with the parameter value in the cursor position.

Inserting a Line

When you first open a new sequence table, a table containing 0 line is created. You must insert new lines into the table before you can edit their contents. To insert new lines, use the **Insert Line** command as follows:

1. Move the cursor to the position in which you want to insert a new line. If this is a new table, you are already at the place to insert a new line.
2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Insert Line** (side).

A new line is created immediately above the line of the current cursor position.

If you insert a new line into a table that contains line jump numbers, the instrument automatically updates the table line numbers and the jump line numbers.

NOTE*. The maximum number of lines in a sequence table is 8000.*

Cutting a Line

You can cut a selected line to the paste buffer. Do the following steps to cut a line:

1. Move the cursor to select the line that you want to delete.
2. Push **Line Edit** (bottom)→**Cut Line** (side). The instrument deletes the selected table line. You can use the Paste Line command to insert the cut line into a new position in the table.

NOTE*. After cutting a line from the table, the table automatically updates all current and destination line numbers for jump operations. If you cut a line that was specified as a jump destination, the jump setting is set to Off (no jump). Reinserting the cut line will reestablish the jump connections.*

Copying a Line

You can copy a selected line to the paste buffer. Do the following steps to copy a line:

1. Move the cursor to the line you want to copy.
2. Push **Line Edit** (bottom)→**Copy Line** (side).

Pasting a Line

You can insert the paste buffer contents into the sequence table. Do the following steps to paste a line:

1. Move the cursor to the line you want to insert the paste buffer contents. The paste buffer contents are inserted at the selected table line. The contents of the line at the point of insertion, and all subsequent lines, are shifted down by one line.
2. Push **Line Edit** (bottom)→**Paste Line** (side).

***NOTE**. After pasting a new line in the table, the table automatically updates all current and destination line numbers for jump operations.*

Sequence Table Fields

Line

Indicates the line number of each row of the sequence table. The instrument automatically assigns line numbers as well as updates line numbers after editing the sequence table.

CH 1 and CH 2 / Digital

Specify the names of the waveform files that are output to the CH1 and CH2 / Digital cells. You can mix and match *.WFM* , *.SEQ*, and *.PAT* files on a single sequence line.

***NOTE**. Remember that you can only nest sequence files one level. Also, the sequence table cannot call itself as a subsequence.*

To specify each file name, select it from the displayed file listing. You must not use a drive or directory name. All files of the waveforms used and the sequence file must be under the same directory.

You can also specify a sequence file. The sequence file itself already has the waveform settings for two channels. If you specify it, the same sequence file will thus be used for all channels.

The CH1 and CH2 waveform files in the same line must be identical in number of points. For the CH2 waveform, the field may be null. DC will be output in this case.

Do the following steps to enter a waveform, pattern, or sequence file name:

1. Move the cursor to **CH1** or **CH2 / Digital**.
2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Enter Filename...** (side).

3. The Select File dialog box appears. From the file listing, select the file to output.

4. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument inserts the file name into the sequence table.

To delete a specified waveform file, move the cursor to the desired file. Then push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Clear Filename...** (side).

Repeat Count

Specify the number of repeats used to repetitive output of a waveform on a line. This value may be 1 to 65536. In addition, Infinity may also be specified. When it is specified, control will no longer advance. Thus, it should usually be used together with Logic Jump or Table Jump. Do the following steps to enter a repeat count:

Do the following steps to set the repeat count value:

1. Move the cursor to **Repeat Count** column.

2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Repeat Count...** (side).

3. Specify a repeat count value using the general purpose or numeric keys.

If you specify **Infinity**,

4. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Infinity** (side) to toggle between **On** and **Off**.

Alternatively, push the **SHIFT** on the front–panel and then the **INF** numeric key in step 4 (specifying the repeat count).

***NOTE**. The **Infinity** setting is neglected in the subsequence. The general purpose knob is assigned to shift the numeric values when Repeat Count has been set. Push **TOGGLE** or **CLEAR MENU** on the front panel to exit the setting mode.*

Wait Trigger

The Wait Trigger column lets you set the instrument to wait for a trigger event before outputting a waveform on the specified sequence table line. Either the Internal or External trigger source will be used, depending on which is selected in the SETUP menu. Valid values are On and Off (blank). Wait Trigger functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Triggered or Enhanced. Note that this setting is neglected in the subsequence.

The instrument processes sequence table entries until it encounters a Wait Trigger set to ON. If the instrument Run Mode is set to Triggered or Enhanced, the instrument then stops output until it receives a trigger. When the instrument receives a trigger, it outputs the waveform on the sequence table line that contains the Wait Trigger, then continues to process the sequence table lines.

Do the following steps to set the Wait Trigger value:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Wait Trigger value.
1. Move the cursor to the **Wait Trigger** column.
2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom).
3. Push **Wait Trig.** (side) to toggle between **On** and **Off**. The Off state is a blank in the column.
4. Push the **CLEAR MENU** on the front–panel to exit the setting mode.

Goto One

The Goto One column lets you set an unconditional jump to the first line of the sequence table (go to line 1). Valid values are On and Off (blank). Goto One functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. Note that this parameter is ignored if it is set in a subsequence file.

The instrument processes sequence table entries until it encounters a Goto One. If the instrument Run Mode is set to Enhanced, the instrument jumps to line one of the table, then continues to process the sequence table lines.

NOTE*. By default, the last line of a sequence table always jumps back to line one, unless you have set another jump destination.*

Do the following steps to set the Goto One value:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Goto One value.
2. Move the cursor to the **Goto One** column.
3. Push **Data Entry** (bottom).
4. Push **Goto One** (side) to toggle between **On** and **Off**. The Off state is a blank in the column.
5. Push the **CLEAR MENU** on the front–panel to exit the setting mode.

Logic Jump

The Logic Jump column specifies a conditional jump to a line in the sequence table. Conditional jumps jump to a sequence line depending on the value of the TTL logic signals on the EVENT IN rear panel connector. The instrument uses event signals to trigger line jumps in the sequence table. Logic Jump functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. Note that this setting is neglected in the subsequence.

Figure 3–31 shows the standard 9-pin, D type **EVENT IN** connector that accepts TTL-level signals (0.0 V to 5.0 V (DC + Peak AC)). The external event input connector lines are pulled to a logic high level when nothing is connected to it.

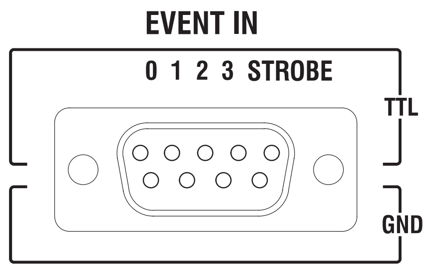


Figure 3–31: EVENT IN connector

You can define two types of conditional jump: a Logic Jump and a Table Jump. You can also specify whether the jump occurs synchronously or asynchronously, and whether to use an external strobe signal to sample the event values. These features are discussed in the following text.

Logic Jump. The Logic Jump lets you specify the signal values on all four EVENT IN lines for a single event that triggers the jump. You can specify high, low, or don’t care values for each line.

Do the following steps to enter a logic jump line number:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Jump Logic value.
2. Move the cursor to Logic Jump column.
3. Push **Jump Mode** (bottom) to select **Logic** (side). The Logic Jump graphic is highlighted.
4. Push the **CLEAR MENU** button on the front–panel to return to the sequence table display.
5. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Jump to Next** (side) to specify a jump to the next line when the event conditions are true.
6. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Jump Off** (side) to clear the Jump Logic table cell. Note that the currently edited line is set as a jump destination in this case.
7. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Jump to Specified Line** (side) and **Jump To** to indicate a jump to a specified line when the event conditions are true. Use the general purpose knob, front-panel keypad, or keyboard numeric keys to enter a line number.
8. Push **Jump Mode** (bottom) to select **Logic** (side).
9. Using the general purpose knob, front-panel arrow keys, or keyboard keys, select the logic level for each of the four EVENT IN lines. X = don’t care, L = low (false) logic level, and H = true (high logic level).

Table Jump. The Table Jump lets you specify a line jump for one or more of the 16 possible logic levels of the EVENT IN lines. Undefined (no line number entered) lines are ignored.

Do the following steps to enter values in the Table Jump table:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Jump Logic value.
2. Move the cursor to Logic Jump column.
3. Push **Jump Mode** (bottom) to select **Table**. The Table Jump graphic is highlighted.
4. Use the front-panel arrow buttons or keyboard arrow keys to select an event logic value line in the table.
5. Push the **Table Jump** side button to **ON** to enable entering a jump line number. To clear a value, push the **Table Jump** side button to **Off**.
6. Push the **Jump To** side button and then use the general purpose knob, front-panel keypad, or keyboard numeric keys to enter a line number.
7. Repeat steps 4 through 6 to enter jump line numbers for other event table values.
8. Push the **CLEAR MENU** button on the front–panel to return to the sequence table display.

Software Jump. The software jump is the function that allows the sequence control to jump to specified line in sequence file. This can be made only from an external conroller. The jump mode and related settings must be made before performing the software jump.

Software jump can be performed only with the command via a GPIB or Ethernet interface. When you specify a line number as an argument in the command line.

To perform software jump, software jump mode must be set in the loaded sequence file, which can be set in the sequence editor by pushing.

Push **Jump Mode**(bottom)→**Software**(side).

For more detail, refer to the description of the AWGControl:EVENt:SOFTware[:IMMediate] in the Programmer Manual.

Timing. The Timing function controls when a jump occurs in the waveform output sequence. Selecting **ASync** causes the instrument to jump to the specified sequence table line as soon as an event goes true.

Selecting **Sync** causes the instrument to jump to the specified sequence table line after completing the output of the current waveform memory. For example, suppose that an event occurs during the second repeat count of a line on which the waveform is defined to be output three times. The jump occurs after completing the second output repetition and before starting the third output repetition.

To set the timing value in the Event Jump screen, push the **Timing** side menu button to toggle between **Sync** and **ASync**.

Strobe. You can set the instrument to enable or disable strobing the EVENT IN signals. Event signals must be input to the **EVENT IN** connector on the rear panel when you run the sequence in Enhanced mode. You can input four event signals and one strobe signal in the connector.

When Strobe is set to Off, the instrument reads the event signals at the timing of every two-internal-clock cycle, and updates the event value if a state transition in the event signals is found.

When Strobe is set to On, the instrument reads the event signals when the strobe signal goes to low state (Enable), and updates the event value if a state transition in the event signals is found.

If you set the strobe signal to low state after the all event signals have finished the state transitions and have been in stable period, the instrument can read the event signal state without error. This results that you can prevent from a incorrect action in the Waveform Generator sequence control. Figure 3–32 illustrates an signal timing example.

To enable or disable Strobe functionality in the Event Jump screen, push the **Strobe** side menu button to toggle between **On** and **Off**. The strobe setting is saved in the sequence file as an attribute, and used when the sequence is executed. You cannot change this setting while a sequence is being performed.

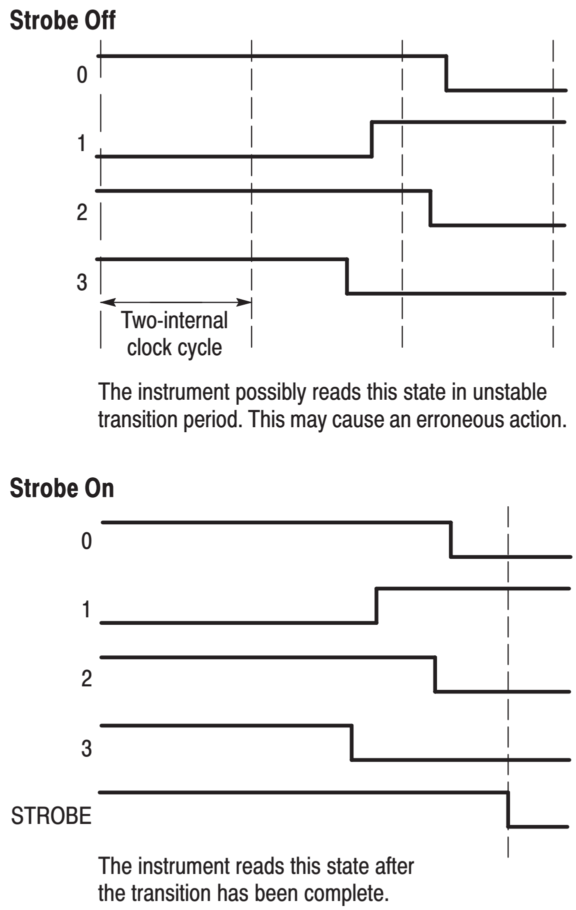


Figure 3-32: Event signal timing and Strobe

Limitations on Using Sequences

The sequence is processed by the instrument hardware. The nested sequence, however, is expanded into the sequence memory by the instrument firmware.

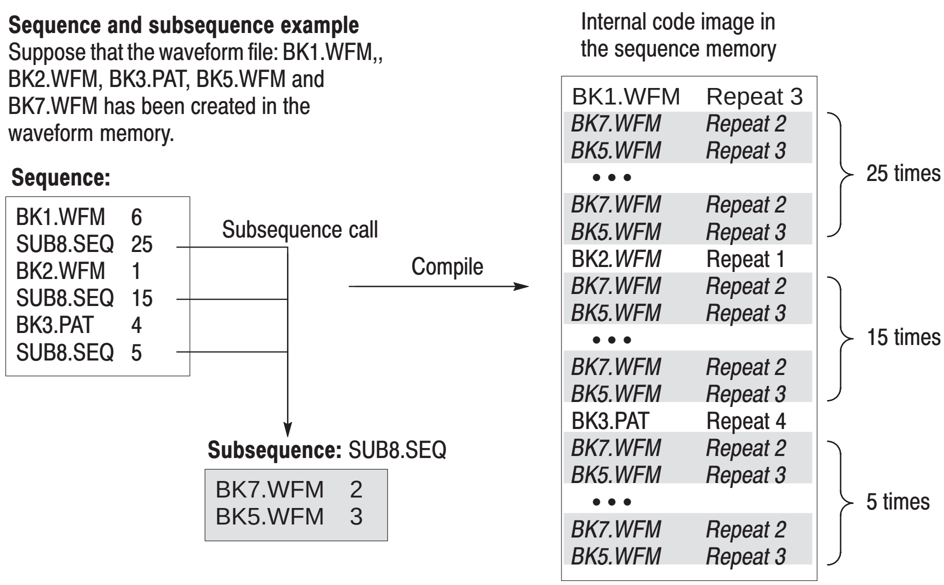
The sequence to be called from a sequence is called Subsequence, and the nested level is limited to 1. Depending on how you configure sequence and/or subsequence, the number of sequence steps expanded in the sequence memory may go over the sequence memory capacity.

The enhanced settings : Infinity, Trigger Wait, Goto One, and Logic Jump are neglected in the subsequence even you set the run mode to Enhanced.

Sequence memory usage. Sequence memory controls the maximum number of subsequence calls and their repeat counts that can be run. When you load a sequence, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator compiles the sequence and subsequence lines into internal codes that are stored in the sequence memory. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator then uses the sequence memory code to output the waveform data. There is one internal code item for each sequence line except for lines that contains a subsequence call.

For subsequence calls without a repeat count, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator compiles a number of internal code items equal to the number of lines in the subsequence.

For subsequence calls with a repeat count, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator compiles a number of internal code items equal to the repeat count for that subsequence call times the number of lines in the subsequence. For example, if a sequence line has a subsequence call with the repeat count of 25 and that subsequence has two lines, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator generates 50 internal code items for that sequence line and stores them in the sequence memory. This occurs for each subsequence call. The figure below illustrates how the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator compiles the sequence and subsequences into the internal codes and stores them in the sequence memory.



Defining subsequence calls with large repeat counts can generate internal code that consumes a large amount of sequence memory. This can result in insufficient memory errors. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator does not check for sequence memory availability errors. If you load a sequence and the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator displays a memory error message, reduce the number of subsequence calls, number of repeat counts and/or number of lines in the subsequences.

The Setup Window

The Setup screen is where you load and set up a waveform for output. This section describes the key elements of the Setup screen, how to load a file, how to set the signal output parameters, and how to enable signal output.

Setup Screen Elements

To open the Setup screen, push the **SETUP** front-panel button. Figure 3–33 shows the Setup screen. Table 3–34 describes the Setup screen elements. Table 3–35 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–35 describe the menu operations in detail, grouped by bottom menu function.

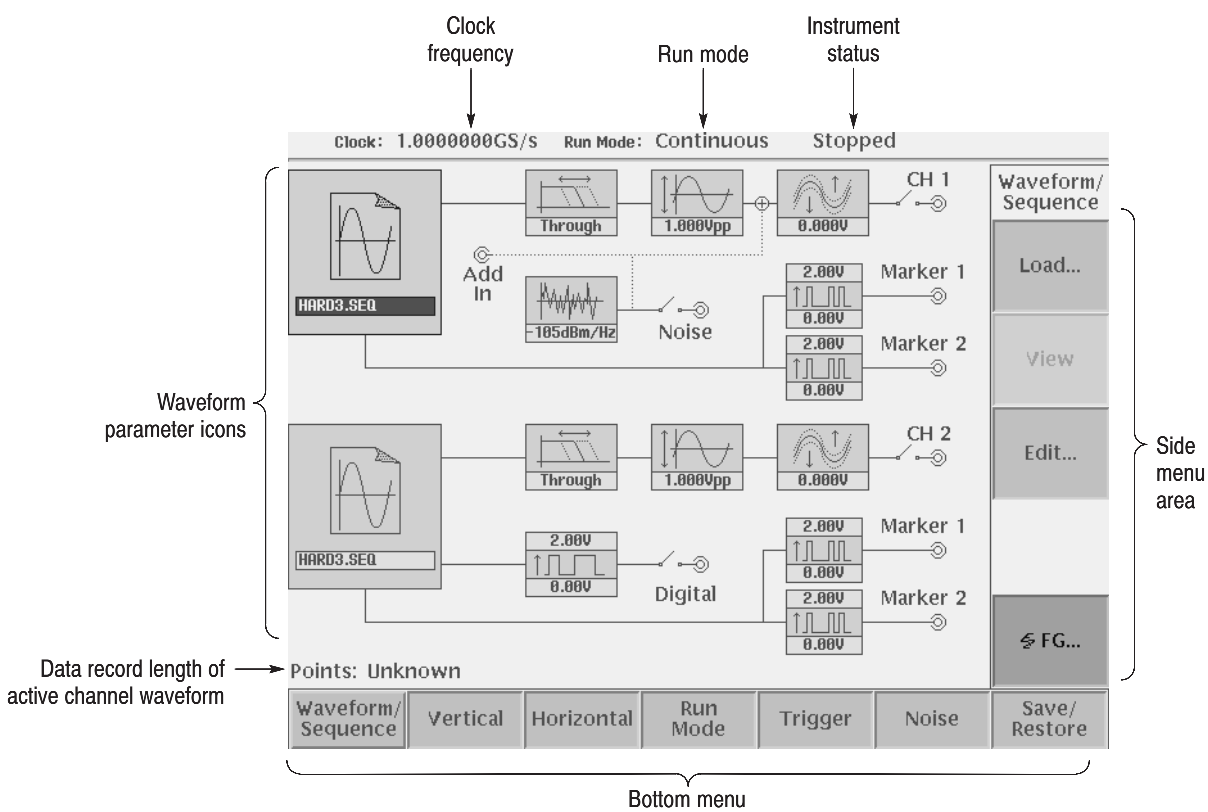


Figure 3–33: Setup main screen

Table 3–34: Waveform parameter icons

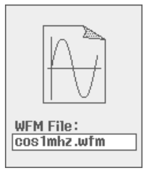
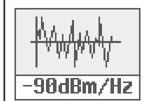
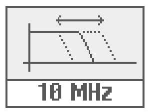
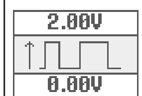
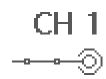
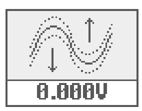
Element	Description	Element	Description
	Loaded Waveform icon. Displays the file name of the waveform, pattern, or sequence file loaded to output. Note: You can push the View side button to view the loaded waveform.		Noise icon. Displays the noise signal level to add to the waveform when enabled.
	Through icon. Displays the bandpass filter setting through which the waveform is passed.		Marker icon. Displays the digital output or marker signal minimum and maximum voltage level settings.
	Peak-to-Peak icon. Displays the peak-to-peak signal amplitude setting.		Indicates that the channel output is enabled or disabled. If the switch is shown open, that channel output is disabled.
	Offset icon. Displays the signal offset setting.		Indicates that the marker output is enabled. Marker outputs are always enabled.
- - - - - - -	Open Path. Indicates that the signal path is not used (is open) between the icons and/or other signal paths.		

Table 3–35: Setup bottom menu buttons

Bottom menu button	Description
Waveform/Sequence	Displays the side menu for loading, viewing, and editing waveform files, and for entering the FG mode main screen.
Vertical	Displays the Vertical side menu for setting waveform peak-to-peak amplitude, offset, bandpass filter, marker, and other output parameters.
Horizontal	Displays the Horizontal side menu for setting the clock source, clock frequency, and marker signal delay parameters.
Run Mode	Displays the Run Mode side menu for setting the instrument run mode. Refer to the *Run Modes* section on page 3–114 for an explanation of the different run modes.
Trigger	Displays the Trigger side menu for setting trigger source, slope, level, external trigger impedance, and interval parameters.

Table 3–35: Setup bottom menu buttons (cont.)

Bottom menu button	Description
Noise	Displays the Noise side menu to set noise dB level and external output parameters.
Save/Restore	Displays the Save/Restore side menu to save and restore setup output parameters.

The Waveform/Sequence Menu

Load...

This button lets you load a waveform (*.wfm*), pattern (*.pat*), or sequence (*.seq*) file to output. Do the following steps to load a file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side). The instrument displays the file select list.
2. Select a waveform file (*.wfm*), pattern file (*.pat*) or sequence (*.seq*) from the file listing in the Select File dialog box appeared on the screen. Then, push the **OK** side button.

Waveform and Pattern File Restrictions. The following list describes some restrictions on loading waveform and pattern files.

- Each of the two output channels can load different waveform and/or pattern files. However, both files must contain the same number of data points in order to be loaded at the same time.
- If you load a file that contains a different number of data points than the currently-loaded file, the instrument loads the new file, clears the currently-loaded file from waveform memory, and displays the message ”Output disabled in some channels.”
- The waveform and pattern files can be loaded from different drives and/or directories.
- If you try to load a file that is larger than the available waveform memory, or that is not a waveform (*.wfm*), sequence (*.seq*) or pattern (*.pat*) format file, the instrument displays the error message *Illegal file format* and clears the waveform memory of both channels. You will then need to load a valid waveform, sequence, or pattern file.

Sequence Files. The following list describes some restrictions on loading sequence files.

- A sequence file contains information that is loaded into the waveform memory of both channel 1 and channel 2. Therefore, you can only load one sequence file into the instrument at a time.
- When sequence file loading fails, the instrument clears loaded output file names and waveform memory on both channels.
- Sequence file loading fails if any one of the following conditions is true:
  - There is a null character (” ”) in the CH1 file name field of the sequence table.
  - The CH 1 and CH 2 waveforms specified on the same line of the sequence table contain different numbers of data points.
  - The instrument cannot locate the waveform, pattern, or subsequence file specified in the sequence table. All waveform, pattern, and subsequence files must be at the same location and the instrument drive and path settings must point to that location.
  - There are too many lines in the sequence table. The maximum number of lines is 8000.
  - More than one nesting level of subsequence files. The maximum nesting level is one.
  - The sequence calls itself.
  - The destination of a line jump specified in the sequence table is greater than the number of lines in the sequence table.

Equation Files. You cannot load an equation file (*.equ*) to output a signal. You must first compile the equation file into a *.wfm* file. Then load the waveform file.

View

This button lets you view a loaded waveform. To view a loaded file, push the **View** side menu button. The instrument opens a window on the screen and displays the loaded waveform. To close the view window, push the **OK** side button.

Edit...

This button opens the appropriate editor for a loaded waveform, pattern, or sequence file. Do the following steps to edit a loaded waveform or sequence file:

1. Push CH 1 or CH 2 to select the channel waveform.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Edit...** (side). The instrument opens the appropriate editor for the loaded waveform.

***NOTE**. The waveform and pattern editors have an output auto-update function that can update the output waveform while you are editing the file. It has two modes: **Auto** and **Manual**. **Auto** updates the waveform memory whenever there are changes to the edit buffer. **Manual** updates waveform memory when you save the file. To set the auto-update mode, push the **Setting** bottom menu button from an editor screen.*

Ez FG...

This button lets you to enter the FG mode for easy generation of a standard functional waveform. Refer to *The FG mode* on page 3–193.

The Vertical Menu

The Vertical menu lets you set waveform (analog, digital, and marker) vertical parameters for all output channels. You can set signal peak-to-peak range, offset voltage, and bandpass filter frequency. The Vertical menu commands are **Filter**, **Amplitude**, **Offset**, **Marker** and **ADD/Direct Out...**. for the CH1 and CH2, and **High Level**, **Low Level**, **Output** and **Marker** for the DIGITAL.

***NOTE**. You can change the analog output amplitude and offset values directly in any screen by using the Vertical **LEVEL/SCALE** and **OFFSET** knobs on the front–panel, respectively.*

*You can display the Setup Vertical menu at any time by pushing the **VERTICAL MENU** front-panel button.*

Filter

This button lets you set the output waveform band limit. You can select **10 MHz**, **20 MHz**, **50 MHz**, **100 MHz**, or **Through** (no limiting).

Do the following steps to set the output waveform band limit:

1. Push the **CH1** or **CH2** button on the front–panel to select the channel you want to set up.

2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Filter** (side). The instrument highlights the Through screen icon.

3. Use the general purpose knob to select **10 MHz**, **20 MHz**, **50 MHz**, **100 MHz**, or **Through**.

Amplitude

This button lets you set the analog waveform signal output voltage range from 2.0 V_{p-p}, in 1 mV increments, terminated into 50 Ω. You can only get the maximum output of 2.0 V_{p-p} if the waveform file is using the full 10-bit DAC range of ±1.000. Refer to the note on page 2–51 for more information on the DAC editor resolution.

To set the marker output levels, refer to the **Marker...** menu description on page 3–108.

Do the following steps to set the waveform output levels:

1. Push the **CH 1** or **CH 2** on the front–panel to select the channel to set up.

2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side). The instrument highlights the Amplitude screen icon.

3. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, keyboard, or **LEVEL/ SCALE** knob to set the output amplitude value. If you use a knob, use the ◀ or ▶ button to select the digit to change.

Offset

This button lets you set the waveform output offset voltage. You may set any value from –1.000 to 1.000 V in 1 mV increments. The VERTICAL:**OFFSET** knob on the front–panel works in every display, except Quick Edit.

Do the following steps to set the waveform offset value:

1. Push the **CH1** or **CH2** button on the front–panel to select the channel you want to set up.

2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Offset** (side). The instrument highlights the Offset screen icon.

3. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, keyboard, or VERTICAL:**OFFSET** knob to change the offset value. If you use the general purpose knob, use the ◀ or ▶ buttons or keys to select the digit to change.

Marker...

This button lets you set the marker 1 and 2 high and low levels. You may set any value from –2.0 to 2.0 V in 50 mV increments. The value of **Low** must always be less than or equal to the value of **High**.

Do the following steps to set the marker signal high and low output levels:

1. Push the **CH1**, **CH2** or **DIGITAL** button on the front–panel to select the channel you want to set up.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Marker...** (side). The instrument highlights the Marker screen icon for the selected channel.
3. Push the side menu button for the marker signal value you want to change.
4. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, or keyboard to change the marker value. If you use the general purpose knob, use the ◀ or ▶ buttons or keys to select the digit to change.

High Level and Low Level

This button lets you set the digital data out high and low levels (Option 03 only). You may set any value from –2.0 to 2.0 V in 50 mV increments. The value of **Low** must always be less than or equal to the value of **High**.

Do the following steps to set the marker signal high and low output levels:

1. Push the **DIGITAL** button on the front–panel to select the channel you want to set up.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**High Level** or **Low Level** (side). The instrument highlights the Digital output screen icon.
3. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, or keyboard to change the value. If you use the general purpose knob, use the ◀ or ▶ buttons or keys to select the digit to change.

Add/Direct Out...

This button displays a side menu that lets you set noise signal sources and specify whether to bypass the waveform amplitude output functions to directly output the instrument DAC signal. The Add/Direct Out menu commands are **None**, **Noise**, **External**, and **Output**.

None. This button disables adding noise signals to the output waveform.

Noise. This button adds a noise signal from the internal noise generator to the output waveform. You can only add a noise signal to the channel 1 waveform.

To add the noise signal, push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add/Direct Out...** (side)→**Noise** (side).

***NOTE**. When the **SETUP** (front)→**Noise** (bottom)→**Output** (side)→**Noise** (side) menu is set to **On**, the **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add/Direct Out...** (side)→**Noise** (side) button is grayed and cannot be selected. To fix this situation, push **SETUP** (front)→**Noise** (bottom)→**Output** (side)→**Noise** (side) to **Off**.*

The maximum input level of the external ADD IN signal is ±1.0 V.

External. This button adds a signal from the back-panel **ADD IN** connector to the output waveform. You can only add an external signal to the channel 1 waveform.

To add an external signal, push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add/Direct Out...** (side)→**External** (side).

***NOTE**. The maximum input level of the external ADD IN signal is ±1.0 V.*

Output. This button connects the instrument analog output directly to the active channel output connector, bypassing signal amplitude, offset, and add noise functions. The maximum peak-to-peak signal range is 0.0 V to –0.5 V if the signal in the editor has a peak-to-peak range or –1.0 to +1.0.

To connect the instrument analog output directly to the channel 1 and channel 2 output connectors, push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add/Direct Out...** (side)→**Output** (side) to select **Direct**.

To connect the instrument analog output back to the signal vertical parameter functions, push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add/Direct Out...** (side)→**Output** (side) to select **Normal**.

Previous Menu. This button returns you to the previous Vertical side menu.

The Horizontal Menu

The Horizontal menu lets you set waveform (analog, digital, and marker) horizontal parameters for all output channels. The horizontal parameters include sample clock source (internal or external), clock frequency, and marker signal delay value. The Horizontal menu commands are **Clock**, **Clock Src**, **Clock Ref**, **Marker 1 Delay**, and **Marker 2 Delay**. Note that marker1 and marker2 delay parameters are not available for the digital output channels of Option 03.

The instrument uses only one clock sample frequency rate for all output signals, regardless of individual waveform settings.

***NOTE**. You can use the **SAMPLE RATE/SCALE** knob to adjust the active channel data clock frequency directly, without having to open the Vertical menu.*

*You can open the Horizontal menu by pushing the **HORIZONTAL MENU** front-panel button. This is the same as pushing **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom).*

*The **HORIZONTAL OFFSET** knob on the front–panel is available only for the Quick Editor. Refer to* HORIZONTAL OFFSET knob *on page 3–173 for the use of this knob.*

Clock

This button lets you set the data sample clock rate used to output a waveform. Sample rates range from 50.000000 kS/s to 1.0000000 GS/s. The sample rate controls the frequency of the output waveform frequency, which is calculated as follows:

$$Fout = \frac{Sample\ Clock\ Freq}{Samples\ per\ Cycle}$$

For example, if the clock rate is 100 MS/s, and one cycle has 1000 data points, then the output frequency is 100 kHz. If you change the clock rate to 550 MS/s, then the output frequency changes to 550 kHz.

Do the following steps to set the instrument sample clock rate:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side).
2. Set the value using the general purpose knob, numeric keys, or **SAMPLE RATE/SCALE** knob. If you use a knob, you can use the ◀ or ▶ button to move the cursor to the numeric character you want to change.

All waveforms are output at one clock rate. The instrument sets the output clock rate to that specified by the most recently-loaded waveform or pattern file. In the case of sequence files, the clock rate defined in the first waveform loaded into the instrument sets the instrument clock rate. Changing the instrument output clock rate from the front-panel controls changes the active waveform output frequency but does not change the clock rate stored with that waveform file.

The instrument also outputs the internal clock signal to the rear panel CLOCK OUT connector. Table 3–36 describes the CLOCK OUT signal timing as it relates to the active Run Mode.

***NOTE**. When you push the **RUN** button, the instrument outputs a pulse signal for a short period of time on the CLOCK OUT connector that is not related to the clock signal. This signal is generated for the instrument internal setup.*

Table 3-36: Clock signal output timing

Run modes	Timing
Continuous	The clock signal is always output when the RUN LED on the front-panel is lit.
Triggered	The clock signal is always output when a waveform is being output. When the instrument waits for a trigger event, no clock output is provided.
Gated	The clock signal is always output when the RUN LED on the front-panel is lit.
Enhanced	The clock signal is always output except the instrument is in the trigger wait state.

Clock Src

This button lets you set the instrument clock source. You can specify the internal clock generator or an external clock signal connected to the rear panel **EXT CLOCK IN** connector. The acceptable external clock signal is 10 MHz to 1GHz, 0.25 V to 1.0 V_{p-p}.

Using an external sample clock can help you synchronize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator with the rest of your test equipment.

Use the following procedure to select the the reference clock source:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock Src** (side).
2. Push the **Clock Src** side button to toggle between **Internal** and **External**.

***NOTE**. When using an external clock as a clock source, and changing an external clock sampling frequency widely, the output signal of the AWG500 Series instrument will be disturbed. Push the **RUN** button twice or more to restart output function.*

If you use the external clock, you can not change the output waveform clock rate with AWG500-Series Waveform Generator Clock menu or SAMPLE RATE/ SCALE knob.

When using an internal clock as a clock source, turn the external clock signal off or disconnect the external clock cable from the EXT CLOCK IN connector.

Clock Ref

This button lets you set the 10MHz reference clock source. You can specify the internal 10MHz clock generator or an external 10 MHz clock signal connected to the rear panel **10 MHz REF IN** connector. The acceptable external clock signal is 10 MHz ± 0.1 MHz, 0.2 V to 3.0 $V_{p\text{-}p}$.

The instrument synchronizes the internal sample clock phase-lock-loop (PLL) generator to the external reference clock. Using an external reference clock can help you synchronize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator with the rest of your test equipment.

Use the following procedure to select the the reference clock source:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock Ref** (side).
2. Push the **Clock Ref** side button to toggle between **Internal** and **External**.

Marker 1/Marker 2 Delay

This button lets you set the delay for the markers that is output through the channel. Select CH 2 to set the digital output marker delay value. You can set any value from 0.0 ns to +2 ns in 20 ps increments.

Do the following steps to set marker signal delay values:

1. Push the **CH 1** or **CH 2** button on the front–panel to select the channel you want to set up.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Marker 1 Delay** or **Marker 2 Delay** (side).
3. Set the value using the general purpose knob or numeric keys. If you use the general purpose knob, you can use the ◀ or ▶ buttons or keys to move to the data you want to modify.

The Run Mode Menu

Push the **SETUP** on the front–panel and the **Run Mode** bottom button to set the waveform output run mode. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator Series instrument operates as below in response to trigger signals and/or event signals. The Run Mode menu commands are **Continuous**, **Triggered**, **Gated**, and **Enhanced**.

To specify a run mode, push **SETUP** (front)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Continuous**, **Triggered**, **Gated**, or **Enhanced** (side). The following text describes the run modes in more detail.

Continuous

This button sets the instrument to continuous output mode. When you push the **RUN** button on the front–panel, the output immediately begins. This occurs regardless of the state of the trigger signal and **FORCE TRIGGER** button on the front–panel. The output starts at the head of the waveform or sequence, and repeats until you push the **RUN** button again. The Status Indicator is displaying **Running** while the waveform is being output, or **Stopped** when the output has been stopped.

Triggered

This button sets the instrument to triggered output mode. When you push the **RUN** button on the front–panel, the instrument waits for a trigger signal from either the rear-panel TRIG IN connector, the automatic trigger generator trigger (set in the Trigger menu) or from the front-panel **FORCE TRIGGER** button. When a trigger occurs, the instrument outputs the waveform and then waits for another trigger.

Gated

This button sets the instrument to gated output mode. When you push the **RUN** button on the front–panel, the instrument enters the state awaiting a trigger (the status is **Waiting**). When the trigger signal goes true or you push the **FORCE TRIGGER** button on the front–panel, the output begins at the start of the waveform or sequence data (the status is **Running**).

While the trigger signal is at the true level or the **FORCE TRIGGER** button remains pushed in, the waveform or sequence data is continuously output. When the trigger signal goes false or you release the **FORCE TRIGGER** button on the front–panel, the output stops and the instrument again enters the state awaiting a trigger.

When the trigger source is **Internal**, the instrument ignores any automatically-generated trigger signals while in Gated mode.

Enhanced

This button sets the instrument to enhanced output mode. While a waveform is being output, the Enhanced mode is operating in the same manner as for the Triggered mode except for sequence table output. For sequence table output, the **Wait Trigger**, **Goto One**, and **Jump** functions specified in the sequence file are enabled.

Pushing the **RUN** button on the front–panel toggles output on and off. The trigger signal is used only to advance a sequence in which Wait Trigger is stopping on an ON line. When you push the **FORCE EVENT** button on the front–panel, the instrument operates in the same way as when the Logic Jump event signal goes true.

If the enhanced function is set in the sequence, the output will be as follows:

- **Wait Trigger**: For an ON line, the instrument awaits the trigger before the waveform is output. The selected trigger source (**External** or **Internal**) is selected.
- **Goto One**: For an ON line, control jumps to the head of the sequence after the waveform is output.
- **Logic Jump**: When the combination of the event signals connected to the **EVENT IN** connector on the rear panel goes true during waveform output of the line, control jumps to the specified destination. The same takes place also when you push the **FORCE EVENT** button on the front–panel.
- **Table Jump**: During waveform output of the line, control jumps to the destination specified in the jump table. This depends on the state of the event signal connected to the **EVENT IN** connector on the rear panel. For **Table Jump**, the **FORCE EVENT** button will not work.
- **Software Jump**. During waveform output of any line, the control jumps to the destination specified by the argument of a remote command. The software jump can be performed only with the following command:

  AWGControl:EVENt:SOFTware[:IMMediate] <line-number>
- If you specify no destination of jump on the last line of the sequence, control returns to the first line after completion of waveform output. (**Goto One** automatically goes on.)

The Trigger Menu

The Trigger menu lets you set instrument external signal trigger parameters. The Trigger menu commands are **Source**, **Slope**, **Level**, **Impedance**, and **Interval**.

Source

This button lets you set the instrument trigger source. You can select either **External** or **Internal**.

To set the trigger signal source, push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→ **Source** (side) to toggle between **External** and **Internal**.

If you select **External**, the instrument uses the signal connected to the rear-panel **TRIG IN** connector. The external trigger signal must meet the following requirements:

Table 3–37: External trigger signal requirements

Requirement	Values
Maximum peak-to-peak signal	±10 V into 1 kΩ impedance ±5 V into 50 Ω impedance
Minimum pulse width	10 ns

If you select **Internal**, the trigger signal generated in the instrument will be used. For the internal trigger, you can set only the trigger interval. In the Gated mode, the internal trigger does not work.

Slope

This button lets you set the external trigger signal slope on which to trigger the instrument. You can specify to trigger on the rising (**Positive**) or falling edge (**Negative**).

To set the trigger slope, push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Slope** (side) to toggle between **Positive** and **Negative**.

***NOTE**. In the **Gated** run mode, triggering occurs for the time period that the external trigger signal level is greater than or equal to the specified trigger level setting.*

Trigger Level

This button lets you set the level at which the TRIG IN external trigger signal triggers the instrument. You can set the trigger level from –5.0 V to +5.0 V.

Do the following steps to set the signal level:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Level** (side).
2. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, or the keyboard to adjust the trigger level value.

Impedance

This button lets you set the impedance value of the TRIG IN back-panel connector. You can set the TRIG IN impedance to either **50 Ω** or **1 kΩ**.

Do the following to set the TRIG IN back-panel connector input impedance:

1. Make sure that the trigger source is set to **External**.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Impedance** (side) to toggle between **50 Ω** and **1 kΩ**.

Interval

The internal trigger source is a pulse generator that automatically triggers the instrument every interval setting. This button lets you set the time interval between trigger pulses. The time interval ranges from 1.0 μs to 10.0 s. The automatic trigger interval starts when RUN is pressed.

Do the following steps to set the trigger interval:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Interval** (side).
2. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, or the keyboard to adjust the trigger interval time.

***NOTE**. The FORCE TRIGGER front-panel button forces a trigger event immediately when pressed. Forcing a trigger does not reset the start of the automatic trigger interval. For example, if the trigger interval is set for four seconds, and you force a trigger at 2.5 seconds after the automatic trigger signal seconds, the next automatic trigger occurs 1.5 seconds after the force trigger.*

*To disable automatic triggering, push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→ **Source** (side) to **External**. You can then use an external trigger signal on the TRIG IN connector or the FORCE TRIGGER front-panel button to trigger the instrument.*

The Noise Menu

This instrument incorporate a Gaussian noise generator with which you can add noise to your output waveform or send to an external device through the **NOISE OUT** back-panel connector. You cannot connect the noise generator output to both the rear panel connector and the output waveform at the same time. The Noise menu commands are **Output** and **Level**.

***NOTE**. Refer to the **Add/Direct Out...** menu on page 3–109 for commands to specify the noise signal source.*

Output

This button enables or disables sending the internal noise generator signal to the NOISE OUT back-panel connector. To connect the noise generator signal to the NOISE OUT connector, push **SETUP** (front)→**Noise** (bottom)→**Output** (side) to select **ON**. To disconnect the noise generator signal to the NOISE OUT connector, push **SETUP** (front)→**Noise** (bottom)→**Output** (side) to select **Off**.

***NOTE**. You cannot add the internal noise generator signal to your waveform when the generator output is connected to the NOISE OUT connector.*

Level

This button lets you set the noise generator signal output level. Do the following steps to set the noise level:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Noise** (bottom)→**Level** (side).
2. Use the general purpose knob, keypad buttons, or keyboard keys to adjust the noise level. You can adjust the noise signal output level from –145 dBm/Hz to –105 dBm/Hz in 1 dBm steps.

The Save/Restore Menu

The Save/Restore menu lets you save and restore instrument output setup information to a file.

Set file includes path information of the waveform file(s) to be set in the Setup Window. When the set file is saved in the same directory as the waveform file(s), only waveform file name(s) are included in the set file. Otherwise, the set file stores the drive and full path information for the waveform file(s).

So you cannot move these files to another directory and/or a drive unless they are not stored in the same directory.

Save Setup

This button lets you save the current instrument settings to a file. The instrument appends the extension *.set* to the file name. Do the following steps to save the instrument output setup parameters to a file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→ **Save Setup** (side). The instrument displays the Select Setup Filename dialog box.
2. Use the general purpose knob or the keyboard to enter a file name.
3. Push the **Drive...** side button if you need to save the setup file to a location other than the current drive.

   The setup file must be saved in the same location where the waveform, pattern and/or sequence files currently loaded in the memory is/are stored.
4. Push the **OK** side button to close the dialog box and save the setup file.

Restore Setup

This button lets you load an instrument setting file to configure the instrument settings. Do the following steps to to restore the instrument output setup parameters from a file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→ **Save Setup** (side). The instrument displays the Select Setup File dialog box.
2. Use the general purpose knob to select the setup file name.
3. Push the **Drive...** side button to load a setup file from a drive other than the current drive.
4. Push the **OK** side button to close the dialog box and load the setup file. The instrument is set to the configuration specified in the setup file.

***NOTE**. If you try to load a non-setup file, you will get an error message.*

Digital Output Level (Option 03 Only)

When you push the front-panel **DIGITAL** button, Channel 2 is set to digital output. You can only output digital waveform data (waveform, pattern, or sequence files) on channel 2. The digital signal output levels can range from –2.0 V to 2.0 V in 50 mV increments. This setting only applies to the 10-channel digital output.

Do the following steps to set the 10-channel digital signal high and low output levels:

1. Push the **DIGITAL** button on the front–panel to enable digital output.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**High Level** or **Low Level** (side).
3. Set the value using the general purpose knob or numeric keys. If you use the knob, you can use the button to move to the data you want to modify.
4. Push the **Marker** side button to open a menu for setting the channel 2 marker signal levels.

You can set other parameters for the digital data output as follows:

1. Push **DIGITAL** button on the front–panel.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side) to load a waveform or sequence file.
3. Push **Vertical** side button to adjust the high and low levels.
4. Set the another parameters in the SETUP menu.
5. Push **Vertical** side button, and then **Output** side button to turn the output **On**. Pushing the **Output** side button toggles **Hi Z** and **On**. This function is the same as the CHx button on the front–panel for the analog data output. Push **Output** side button to again to turn the digital signal output off.

***NOTE**. If there is no waveform loaded into a channel, you cannot turn that channel output on.*

Waveform, Pattern and Sequence Waveform Output

AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveforms can be output by selecting a waveform, pattern, or sequence file on the **SETUP** screen and loading it into the waveform memory.

You may set the run and trigger modes and the output parameters such as the clock frequency, amplitude, offset, etc. Then, push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** and/or **CH2 OUT** buttons on the front–panel to output the waveforms in the waveform memory. A procedure to output the waveform is outlined below:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side). Specify the file you want to output.
2. Push **Run Mode** (bottom)→Set the run mode in the side menu.
3. Push **Trigger** (bottom)→Set the trigger parameter in the side menu.
4. Push **Vertical** (bottom)→Set the vertical axis parameters, such as the amplitude, in the side menu.
5. Push **Horizontal** (bottom)→Set the horizontal axis parameters such as the clock frequency in the side menu.
6. Push the **RUN** and buttons on the front–panel.

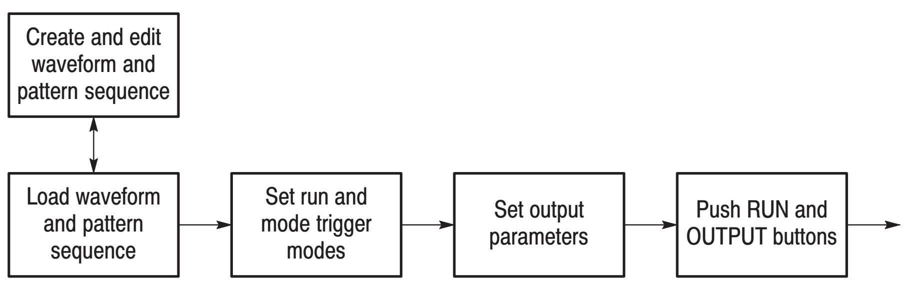


Figure 3–34: Waveform output sequence example

During waveform output, you can make changes to the desired output parameter using the shortcut controls: **VERTICAL LEVEL/SCALE, VERTICAL OFFSET**, **HORIZONTAL SAMPLE RATE/SCALE** knob.

Besides, automatic update of output is available. It immediately reflects changes with the editor in the output when the editor is started during output of loaded waveforms.

Automatic Reloading of Output Files

Once a file has been output and is currently being output, it will be reloaded when one of the following conditions is met:

- The waveform or pattern file is modified with the editor. (**Auto** or **Manual** mode in the **Settings** bottom menu).
- The file is changed with **Copy** or **Rename** by operating the front–panel or GPIB or Ethernet control.
- Changes are made to a sequence file.
- A file is received from GPIB or Ethernet and changes are made to the file.

Auto-reload occurs when changes are made to a file. The file length may change due to **Cut** or **Paste** or because it is subjected to **Copy** as a thoroughly different file. If so, auto-reload will fail and the output file will be named *NULL*.

Waveform Files and Sample Clock Rates

Waveform and pattern files contain the clock attribute values appended. If you specify a waveform or pattern file as the output file, the clock value will be loaded from the file and be set.

If you load files with different clocks sample rates into different channels, the instrument uses the clock rate from the last file you loaded.

If you specify a sequence file for the output file, the clock specified in the first file in the sequence list sets the instrument clock rate.

If you load the file as the output file when the following two conditions are met, the waveform in the edit buffer will be loaded: (1) you have performed a edit session before loading the output file (while the output file name is *NULL*), and (2) in this session, you have made changes to the waveform data and/or clock attributes (regardless of whether the file has already been saved). Regarding the clock attributes, the values specified in the edit will be loaded.

If the auto-update of output with the editor is in the Auto mode, reload takes place each time changes are made to the edit buffer. The clock attributes are not updated at this time.

When the file is loaded first, the clock attributes for the file attribute takes effective. Hereafter, clock changes made with the menu takes higher priority over those that are made with the editor by means of auto-update of output.

Starting and Stopping Output

When you load or create a waveform in the waveform memory, output does not start until you push the **RUN** button on the front–panel. The RUN LED lights and the instrument starts sweeping the waveform data in the waveform memory.

When the Waveform Generator is set to the Trigger mode, the Waveform Generator waits for a trigger event to be generated by pushing the **FORCE TRIGGER** button or by external trigger event signal. Refer to *Run Modes* on page 3–114.

The instrument current run state is displayed in the Status area at the upper part of the screen. The following state message can be displayed:

Table 3–38: Instrument run state and state messages

State messages	Descriptions
Stopped	The output operation is currently stopped.
Waiting	The instrument is waiting for a trigger.
Running	The instrument is outputting waveform(s).

When any waveform data does not exist in all channels (NULL state), the instrument does not perform output even when you push the **RUN** button, and the message Stopped is kept being displayed. While the message Running or Waiting is being displayed, the message will be changed to Stopped if the waveforms in all channels become the NULL state.

The RUN LED lights when the run state is Running or Waiting.

To output waveform from the front–panel output connector, the line circuit from internal generator module to the output connector must be closed.

***NOTE**. When using an external clock as a clock source, and changing an external clock sampling frequency widely, the output signal of the AWG500 Series instrument will be disturbed. Push the **RUN** button twice or more to restart output function.*

Turning Channel Output On and Off

Pushing the **CH 1 OUT** and **CH 2 OUT** buttons connects or disconnects the instrument output to the CH 1 and CH 2 connectors. When you push CHx button (x means 1 or 2), the CHx LED goes on and a waveform is output from the CHx connector if the instrument is in the Running state. When you push the CHx button again, the signal output is disconnected and the waveform output is stopped even the instrument is in the Running state. If there is no waveform loaded into a channel, you cannot turn that channel output on or off.

The CHx LED automatically turns off when the waveform data in that channel becomes invalid (for example, you attempt to load in incorrect file and the instrument deletes the current waveform from memory).

The APPL Window

This subsection describes about three applications in the APPL menu. The Waveform Generator provides following three applications to create specific waveforms:

- Disk application
- Network application
- Jitter composer application

These applications are a kind of editor to generate a waveform for specific purposes.

Disk Application

Using this application, you can easily create test signals for reading or writing data from/to hard disk media.

Signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Convert the input pattern and estimate the positions, where pulse will be generated, and its polarity.
- Superpose an isolated pulse in the position estimated above. At superposing, the pulses are also shifted.

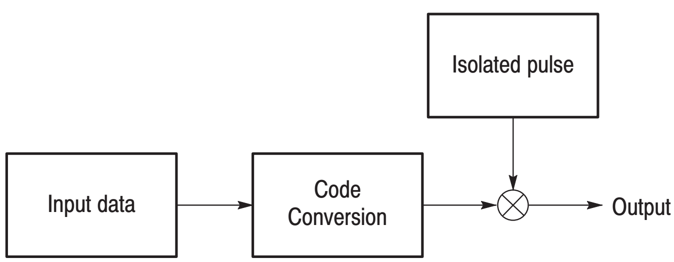


Figure 3–35: Outline flow for producing HDD reading test signal

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front–panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Disk** (side) to display the Disk Application screen. See Figure 3–36.

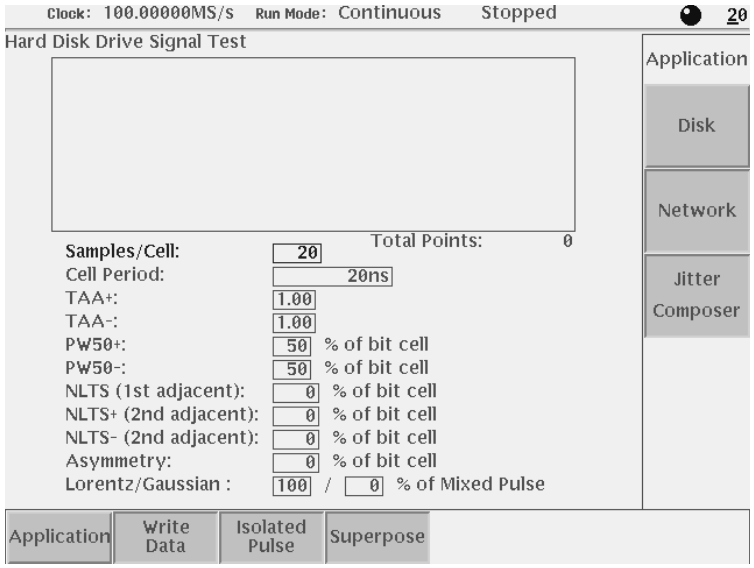


Figure 3–36: Disk application initial screen

2. Select **Write Data** (bottom)→**Read from File...** (side) or →**Pre-defined Pattern** (side) to display the dialog box for input data selection.

3. Select a file or Pre–defined pattern.

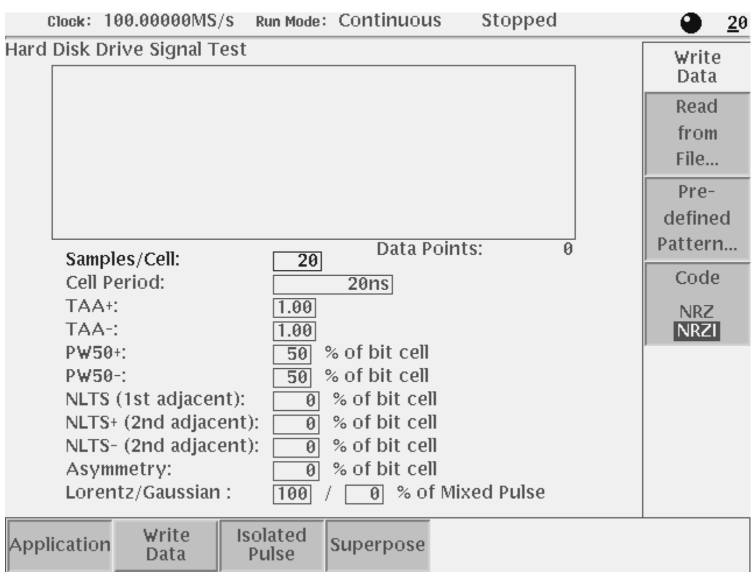


Figure 3–37: Writer Data menu

4. Press **Isolated Pulse** bottom button, and select an isolated pulse from the side menu.

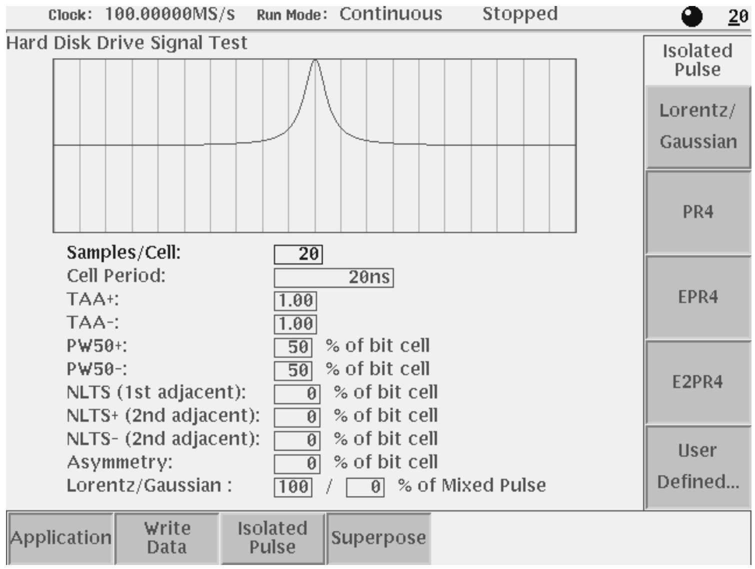


Figure 3–38: Isolated Pulse menu

5. Set the parameters displayed on the menu screen.

6. Select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side) to execute superposing.

   The generated waveform is displayed in the menu screen window.

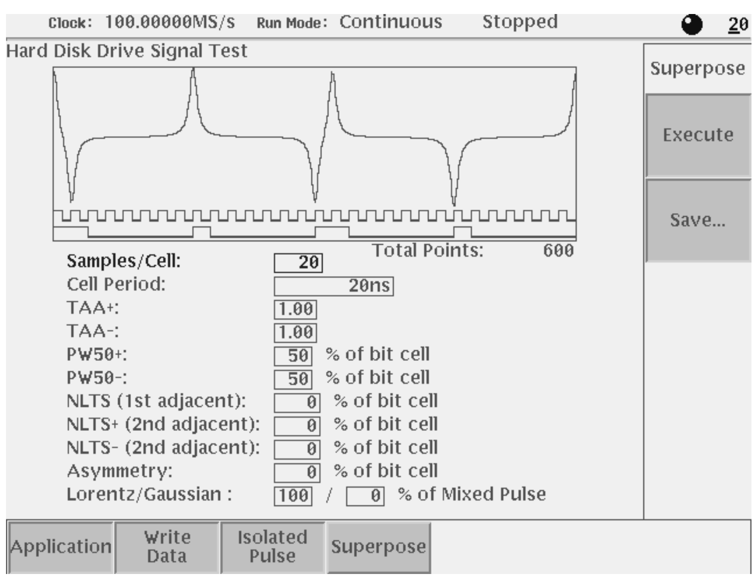


Figure 3–39: Execution of superpose

7. If needed, you can repeat adjusting the superpose parameters in this screen and generate new output waveform.

8. Select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Save...** (side) to save the generated waveform in a file.

Input data

The specified pattern (*.PAT*) or waveform (*.WFM*) file is used as a input data. When a pattern data file is specified for input, the application reads only the MSB bits (DATA9). When a waveform file is specified, this process converts the values equal to or greater than 0.5 to a logic 1, and the values less than 0.5 to a logic 0.

***NOTE**. One restriction is applied to the number of input data points;*
input data points > isolated pulse data points / (Samples/Cell)

The Pre-defined patterns shown in Table 3–39 are incorporated in the application:

Table 3–39: Pre-defined patterns

Pattern items	Descriptions
X^15 + X + 1	15-bit M-series pseudo random pulse.
X^9 + X^5 + 1	9-bit M-series pseudo random pulse.
X^7 + X^3 + 1	7-bit M-series pseudo random pulse.
32'1's	32-bit wide data in which all bits are set to 1
Harmonic Elimination Pattern	The following pattern data. The pattern's 5th harmonic component is set to 0. 11000000100000011000000010000000

Code Conversion

This part inputs the binary bit pattern and converts the transition from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 to a series of positive and negative pulse. Table 3–40 lists the available code conversion types:

Table 3–40: Code Conversion

Code conversion	Descriptions
NRZ	Converts a transition from 0 to 1 to a positive pulse, and from 1 to 0 to a negative pulse. This conversion considers the input data as representing a direction of magnetization.
NRZI	Generates a pulse when the input data is 1. The first pulse is always positive, and after this, the pulse polarity toggles for every input data value of 1. This conversion considers the input data as representing the disk writing data.

Isolated Pulse

Isolated pulse lets you superpose a pulse onto the converted code. You can select from the following 5 pulse types:

- Lorentz/Gaussian pulse

  Isolated pulse is created by the mixture of two types waveforms; Lorentz and Gaussian. You can adjust mixture rate through Lorentz/Gaussian: parameters displayed in the lower part of the screen.
  When you adopt complete Lorentz waveform as an isolated pulse, set the parameter to [100] / [0]%. When you adopt Gaussian waveform as an isolated pulse, set the parameter to [0] / [100]%.

  Mixed waveform is acquired by adding two formulas which have same PW50 and normalizing the calculated value. Each formula is set to L(x) and G(x), and the mixture rate is set to a and b respectively.

  Isolated pulse: Normalize (a*L(x) + b*G(x))
  (a + b = 1.0)

- PR4 pulse
- EPR4 pulse
- E2PR4 pulse
- User defined pulse

  You can define isolated pulse. Create user–defined waveform on the internal disk. There are two options for creating user–defined file; using editor or using signals acquired by oscilloscope. Follow the procedures described below to create the isolated pulse.

Creating Isolated Pulse

Two parameters are important to create an isolated pulse.

- Number of points for 1 bit

  Samples/Cell parameter is displayed on the Disk application screen. This represents the number of points for one bit of disk waveform. Isolated pulse must correspond to this parameter value.

- Total points of the isolated pulse

  Total number of points that make up the isolated waveform should be set to four times of values given by Samples/Cell parameter. The maximum number of points is smaller than the value calculated by the two parameters: data points specified by Write Data(bottom) → Pre–defined Pattern... or Read From File... and the value specified by Samples/Cell parameter. In other words, the maximum number of points is smaller than the number of points after the application performs superposition.

Using formula

Use the following formula to specify the values when the waveform is acquired from calculation.

Peak value:	Center (Except for shifting the value intentionlly)
PW50:	(Samples/cell)/2
Waveform size:	(Samples/cell)*4

For example, you use Lorentz waveform, specify the formula as follows;

```
cells = 10                    'Samples/cell ==> 10
size = cells * 4  'Number of total waveform points
pw = cells / 2    'Pulse width at half level
clock = 1e9                   'AWG clock that needs to calculate

ppw = pw / clock              'Pulse width for calc.
pposit = size / 2 / clock     'Peak position for calc.

"Lorentz.wfm" = 1/(1+(2*(time – pposit)/ppw)^2)
```

Using acquired waveform file

You can create isolated waveform from signals acquired through oscilloscope or other equipments by using the waveform editor.

When acquiring the signals, it is not necessary to observe the number of points or PW50. However, it is required to set the pulse edge to 0 (zero). When you use the waveforms from oscilloscope, it is recommended to adjust the edge to zero level.

Use the following steps to modify the waveform.

First, you need to extract the pulse.

1. Open the acquired waveform by waveform editor.

2. Locate the pulse which you want to extract, then move the left–cursor to the center of pulse.

3. Expand the display by using Zoom function as necessary.

4. Specify the range of pulse you want to extract.

After specifying the range, check the number of points that make up the PW50. Set the total number of points to eight times of PW50(in this case, the PW50 is set to 50%).

5. Locate the left–cursor to 0, the right–cursor to 1 point left of the pulse you want to extract. Then, delete unnecessary data on the left side of the pulse by using **Operation** (bottom) → **Cut** (pop–up).

6. Locate the right–cursor to the maximum point of the waveform, the left–cursor to 1 point right of the pulse you want to extract. Then, delete unnecessary data on the right side of the pulse by using **Operation** (bottom) → **Cu**t (pop–up).

This completes the extraction of pulse you want to create.

Next, you need to adjust the total number of points.

7. Check the number of points that make up the PW50 you extracted(acq_pw).

8. Check the total number of points that make up the extracted pulse(acq_size).

9. Check the value given by Samples/Cell parameter(cells).

10. Specify the total number of points that make up the isolated waveform you want to create(size).

Use the following formula when PW50 is 50%.

pw = cells/2
size = (pw/acq_pw) * acq_size

11. Press **Tools** (bottom) → **Re–Sampling** (pop–up) to open menu.

12. Specify the value of size calculated by New Points and press **OK** (side) button.
Now you have got the isolated waveform.

13. Save the isolated waveform you created by using appropriate name.

This completes the creation of user-defined isolated waveform.

Superpose Parameters

The superpose parameters are used to define an isolated pulse waveform and a quantity for shift. Table 3–41 lists the superpose parameters .

Table 3–41: Superpose parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Samples/Cell	Specifies the number of waveform points to be generated for each point of the input data.
Cell Period	Specifies the cell period.
TAA+ and TAA–	Specifies the pulse width of the positive and negative isolated pulse. The setting range is from 0 to 1.0 in steps of 0.01. The maximum amplitude is 1.0.
PW50+ and PW50–	Specifies the half-width of the pulse as a percentage of the cell. The setting range is from 0 to 200 in step 1. This parameter cannot be set for the PR4, EPR4 and E2PR4.
NLTS	When the pulse is generated continuously, this parameter shifts the pulses from the second one onward. Set the quantity of the shift to this parameter in the percentage of the cell. The setting range is from –100 to 100 in step 1.
NLTS+ and NLTS–	Shifts the current pulse depending on whether the pulse existed or not in two data position advance. The setting range is from –100 to 100 in step 1. When the current pulse has the same polarity as the pulse in two data position advance, the current pulse is shifted backward by the value represented by this parameter (NLTS–). When the current pulse has the different polarity, it is shifted forward by this parameter (NLTS+). The total quantity of shift can be calculated by mixing the value of NLTS+, NLTS– and NLTS.
Asymmetry	Shift the positive pulse forward and the negative pulse backward by the value specified by this parameter. The setting range is from –100 to 100 in step 1.
Lorentz/Gaussian	Specifies the mixture ratio of Lorentz and Gaussian pulse by unit of % as an isolated pulse. Sum of two values within the boxes is always equal to 100. Setting one value to 100 specifies complete the Lorentz or Gaussian pulse. This parameter can be performed only when you select Lorentz/ Gaussian as an isolated pulse.

Generating Waveform

The magnetic disk reading waveform is generated based on the input data, isolated pulse, and superpose parameters. To generate a waveform, select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side).

The square pattern with the period of one cell is set in Marker 1. The input data is set in Marker 2.

Pre-defined isolated pattern is calculated for only 20 cells, and the other part is considered to be 0.

For the isolated pulse, wraparound is included in the calculation in superposition, assuming that this waveform repeats. However, the calculation is not made for the second and subsequent cycles of wraparound. Therefore, correct calculation is not made for input data shorter than the isolated pulse length / (Samples/Cell).

NOTE*. One restriction is applied to the number of input data points;*
input data points > isolated puls data points / (Samples/Cell)

The NLTS calculation requires the position of the previous pulse, which cannot be obtained from the initial part of input data. Also for this problem, information is obtained with wraparound by using the last part of input data.

Saving to File

You can save the generated waveform to a file. If the waveform length does not satisfy the instrument file length conventions, the instrument repeats the data several times and regenerates the waveform to create a valid file.

Network Application

This application creates a network test signals to analyze the various standard network signal.

The signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Convert the input pattern using the standard-defined code and estimate the positions, where pulse will be generated, and its polarity.
- Superpose a standard-defined isolated pulse in the position estimated above.

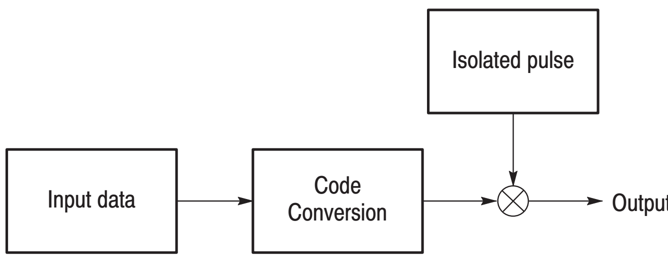


Figure 3–40: Outline flow for producing network test read signal

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front–panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Network** (side) to display the Network Application screen. See Figure 3–41.

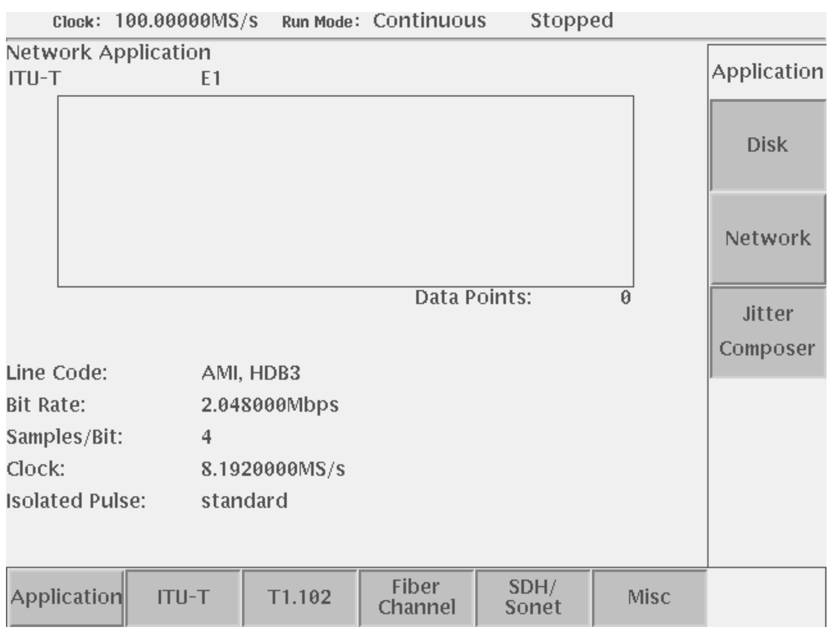


Figure 3–41: Network application initial screen

2. Select a standard by pressing either bottom button, selecting subordinate standard item from the pop–up menu, and press **OK** side button.

The side menu will change. See Figure 3–42.

3. Select a file or pre-defined pattern as a input data by pressing **Read Ptn from File...** (side) or **Pre-defined Pattern...** (side).

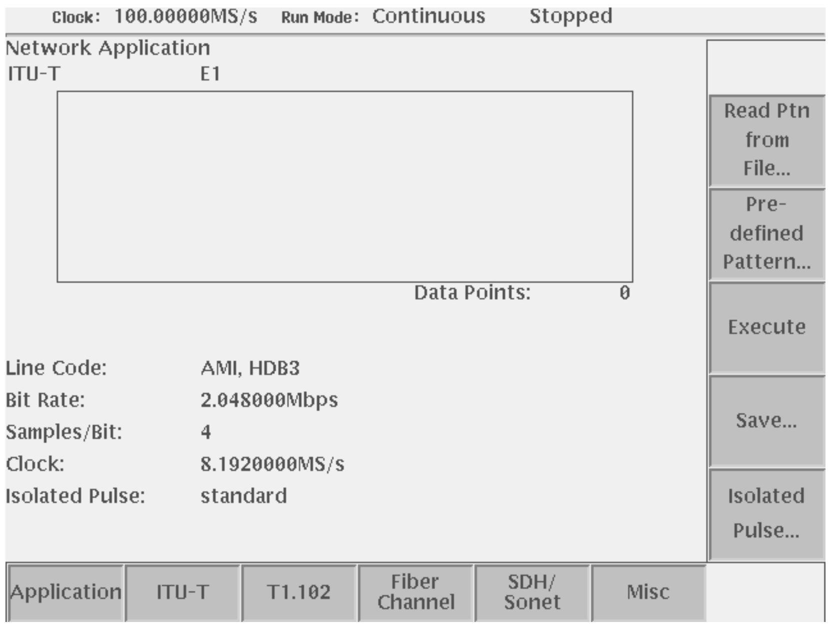


Figure 3–42: Side menu will change after selecting a standard

When you select one of ITU–T E1, E2, E3, T1.102 DS1, DS1A, DS1C, DS2, DS3, STS–T as a standard, you can use user defined isolated pulse.

4. Press **Isolated Pulse...** side button . The side menu will change.

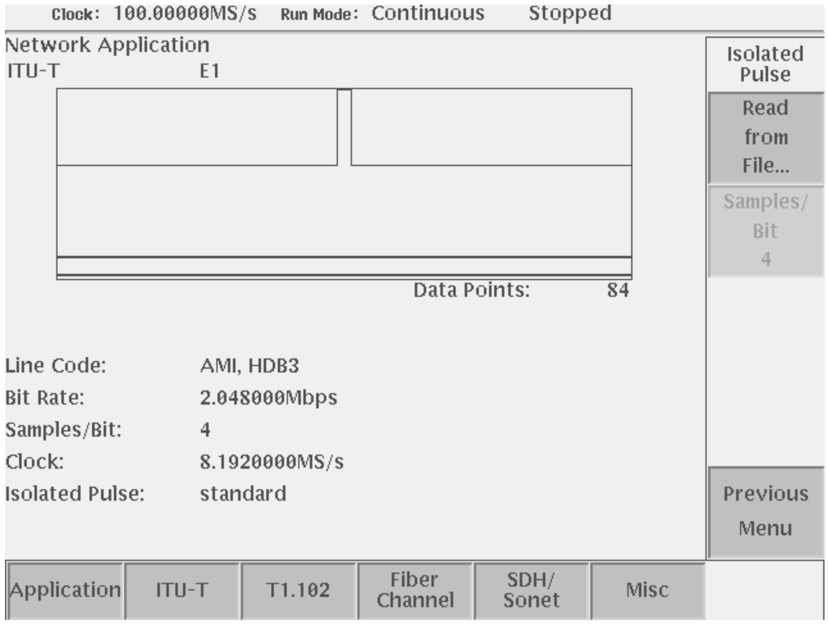


Figure 3–43: Side menu for selecting the Isolated pulse

5. Press **Read from File...** side button . The side menu will change.
6. Select a waveform file from the file list as a iaolated pulse.
7. **Samples/Bit** side button will be enabled. Select a value from 1, 2, 4, 6, 16, 21, 64 .
8. Press **Previous Menu** side button to return Figure 3–43.
9. Press **Execute** side button to execute superposing.

   The generated waveform is displayed in the menu screen window.

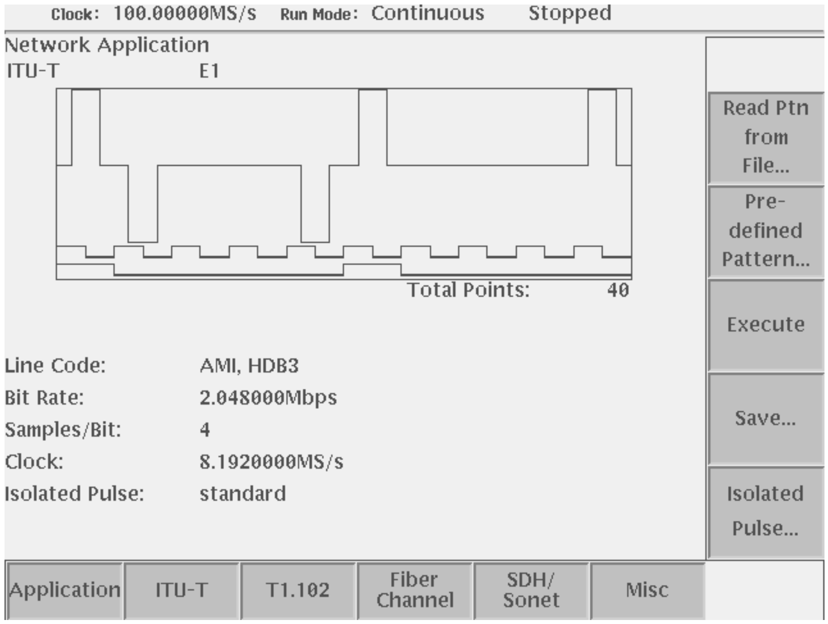


Figure 3–44: Execution of superposing

10. Select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Save...** (side) to save the generated waveform in a file.

Input data

Pattern data file (.*PAT*) or waveform file (.*WFM*) is used as a input data. When a pattern data file is specified for input, the application reads only the MSB bits (DATA9). When a waveform file is specified, this process converts the values equal to or greater than 0.5 to a logic 1, and the values less than 0.5 to a logic 0.

The pattern data or waveform data to be input must have the number of points equal to or more than 20 points.

The pre-defined patterns shown in Table 3–42 are incorporated in the application:

Table 3–42: Pre-defined patterns

Pattern items	Descriptions
PN9	9-bits M-series pseudo random pulse.
PN15	15-bits M-series pseudo random pulse.
0000	
1111	
100100	
10001000	
1000010000	
100000100000	
1000000010000000	
1111100000	

Line Code Conversion

This part inputs the binary bit pattern and converts the transition from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 to a positive or negative pulse. The standard-defined code conversions listed in Table 3–43 are used.

Table 3–43: Code conversion

Code conversion	Descriptions
CMI	Last level: Low, Level of the last binary 1: High
B6ZS, B8ZS (Bipolar with Eight Zero Substitution)	Polarity of the last pulse: Negative, Number of successive 0: 0
B3ZS, HDB3 (High Density Bipolar 3)	Polarity of the last pulse: Negative, Number of successive 0: 0, Number of B pulse: 1

Isolated Pulse

The standard-defined isolated pulse is used. You do not need to set a pulse.

When the Line Code is a AMI standard (ITU–T E1, E2, E3, T1.102 DS1, DS1A, DS1C, DS2, DS3, STS–T), an user defined waveform file can be used as an isolated pulse. The length of isolated pulse has no restriction.

Superpose Parameters

Table 3–44 lists the standard-defined superpose network parameters.

Table 3–44: Network parameters

Standard		Line code	Bit rate	Sample/bit	Clock
ITU-T	STM1E	CMI	155.520000 Mbpd	2	311.04000 MS/s
	E4	CMI	139.264000 Mbpd	2	278.52800 MS/s
	E3	AMI, HDB3	34.368000 Mbps	4	137.47200 MS/s
	E2	AMI, HDB3	8.448000 Mbps	4	33.79200 MS/s
	E1	AMI, HDB3	2.048000 Mbps	4	8.19200 MS/s
T1.102	STS-3	CMI	155.520000 Mbps	2	311.04000 MS/s
	STS-1	AMI, B3ZS	51.840000 Mbps	16	829.44000 MS/s
	DS4NA	CMI	139.264000 Mbps	2	278.52800 MS/s
	DS3	AMI, B3ZS	44.736000 Mbps	16	715.77600 MS/s
	DS2	AMI, B6ZS	6.312000 Mbps	32	201.98400 MS/s
	DS1C	AMI, B8ZS	3.152000 Mbps	4	12.60800 MS/s
	DS1A	AMI, HDB3	2.084000 Mbps	32	66.68800 MS/s
	DS1	AMI, B8ZS	1.544000 Mbps	32	49.40800 MS/s
Fiber Channel	FC531E	NRZ	531.200000 Mbps	1	531.20000 MS/s
	FC266E	NRZ	265.600000 Mbps	1	256.60000 MS/s
	FC133E	NRZ	132.700000 Mbps	1	132.70000 MS/s
SDH/Sonet	OC12/STM4	NRZ	622.080000 Mbps	1	622.08000 MS/s
	OC3/STM1	NRZ	155.520000 Mbps	1	155.52000 MS/s
	OC1/STM0	NRZ	51.840000 Mbps	1	51.84000 MS/s
Misc	D2	NRZ	143.180000 Mbps	1	143.18000 MS/s
	D1	NRZ	270.000000 Mbps	1	270.00000 MS/s
	100 Base–TX	MLT–3	125.000000 Mbps	1	125.00000 MS/s

Generating Waveform

The network test reading waveform is generated based on the input data, isolated pulse, and superpose parameters. To generate a waveform, press **Execute** side button.

The clock attribute of a generated waveform is the one defined in the standard.

The clock whose frequency is the same as the Bit Rate is set in the Marker 1. When the Samples/Bit is 1, the clock with the frequency as half as the bit rate is set in the Marker 1. The input data is set in the Marker 2.

Saving to File

You can save the generated waveform to a file. If the waveform length does not satisfy the instrument waveform file length conventions, the instrument repeats the data several times and regenerates the waveform to create a valid file.

Jitter Composer Application

This application creates signals with jitters and Spread Spectrum Clock (SSC) relative to bit-pattern.

Signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Create data for one period by sorting bit pattern in the direction of time base using parameters.
- Deviate the data for one period in the direction of time base along Jitter Profile.

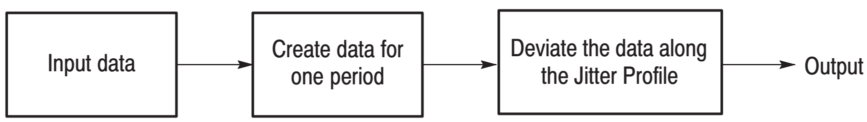


Figure 3–45: Outline flow for Jitter waveform creation

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front–panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Jitter Composer** (side) to display the Jitter Composer. See Figure 3–48.

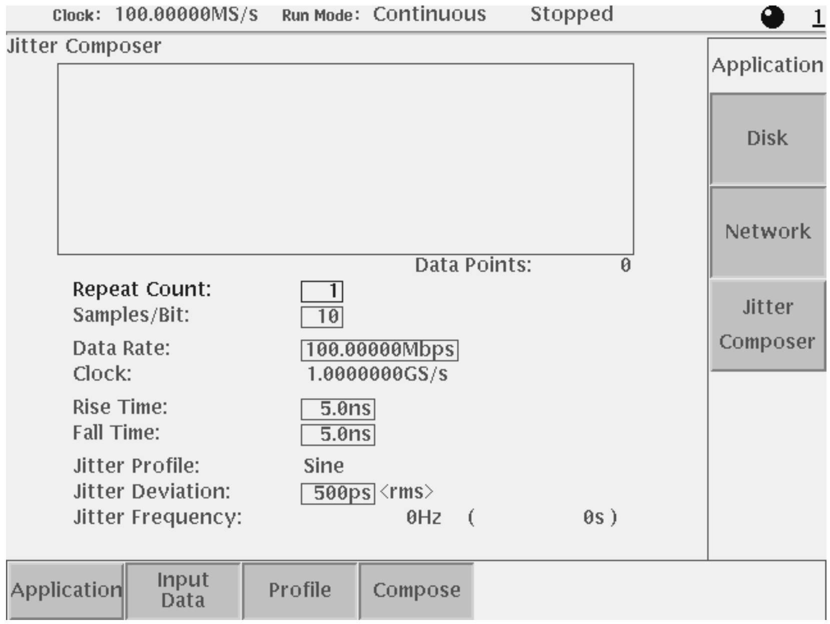


Figure 3–46: Jitter composer application initial screen

Specify input data. Load waveform/pattern files or use pre-defined pattern.

2. Select **Input Data** (bottom)→**Read from File...** (side) or →**Pre-defined Pattern** (side) to select input data.

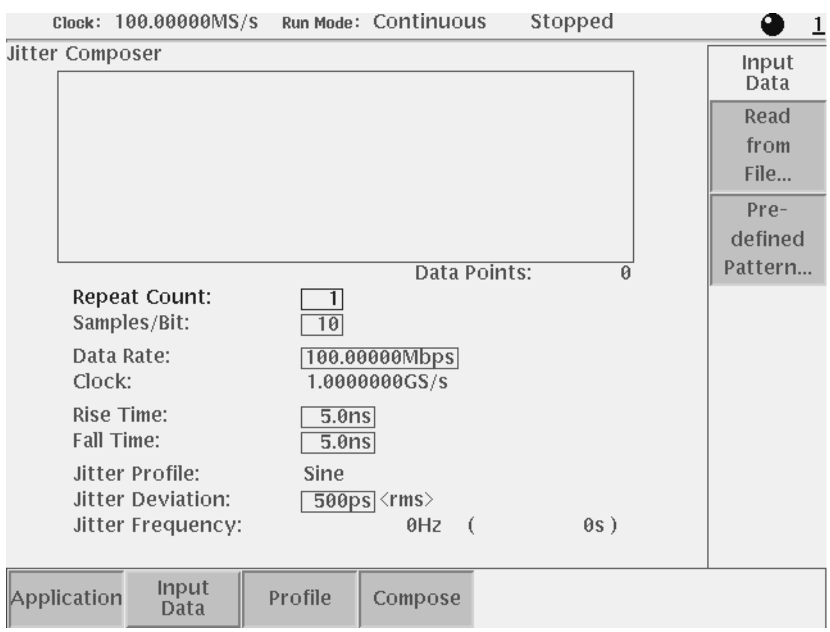


Figure 3–47: Input Data menu

3. Select waveform/pattern file from file list when you load the waveform/pattern file, or select pre-defined pattern from pattern list when you load the pre-defined pattern.

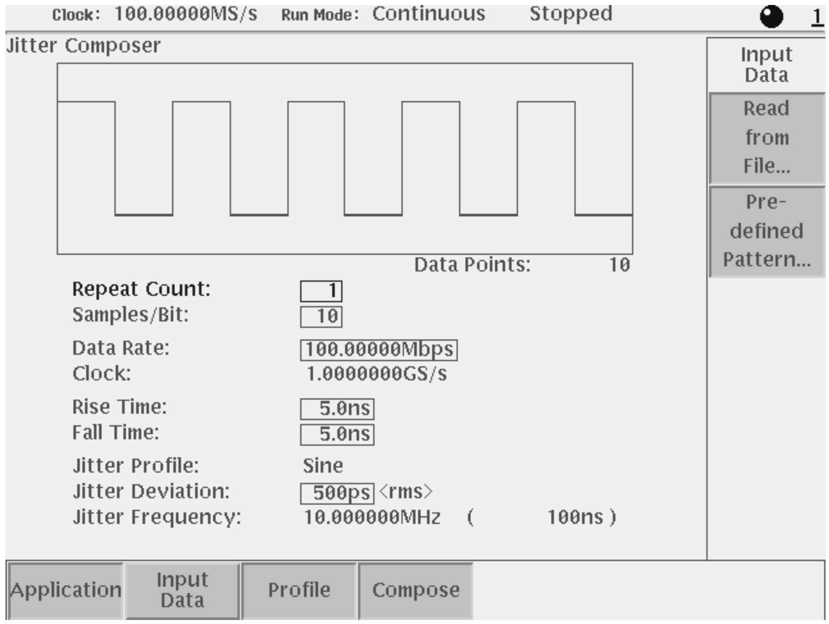


Figure 3–48: A pre-defined pattern was selected as an input data

4. Set the parameters displayed on the menu screen.
5. Press **Profile** (bottom) → **Sine**, or **Triangl** (side) button to select the jitter profile.

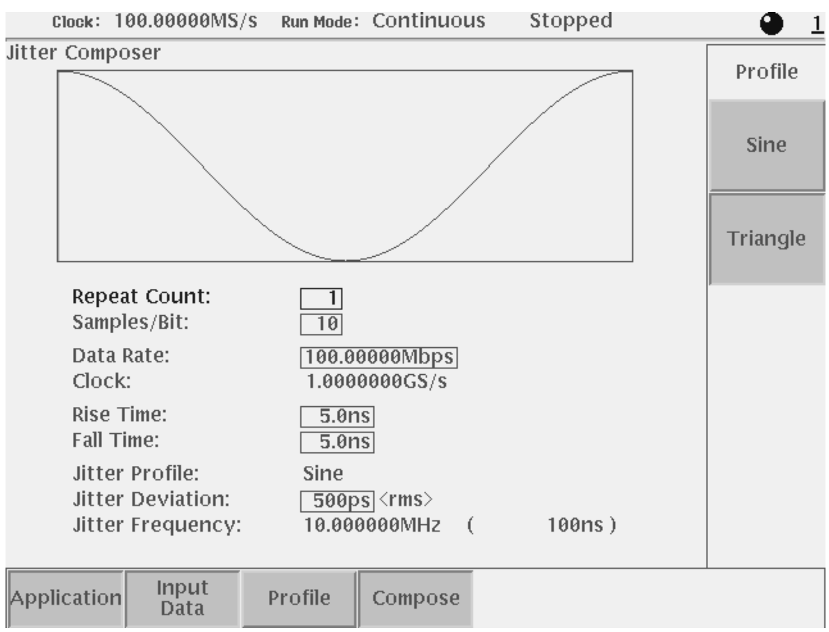


Figure 3–49: Jitter profile menu

6. Select **Compose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side) to generate jitter waveform. The generated waveform is displayed in the menu screen window.

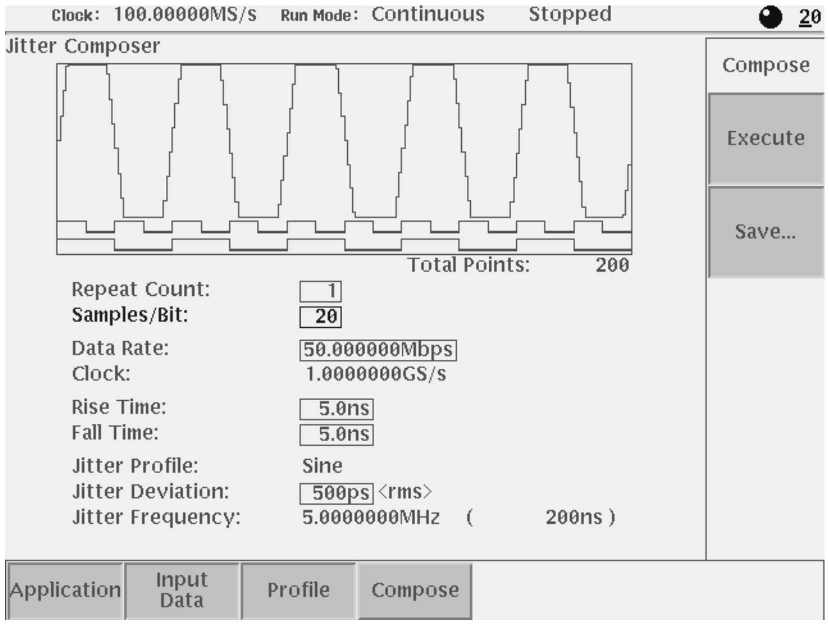


Figure 3-50: Execution of jitter composer

7. Change each parameter and press Execute (side) menu button to generate new output jitter waveform.

8. Select **Compose** (bottom)→**Save...** (side) to save the generated waveform in a file.

Input data

The specified pattern (*.PAT*) or waveform (*.WFM*) file is used as a input data. When a pattern data file is specified for input, the application reads only the MSB bits (DATA9). When a waveform file is specified, this process converts the values equal to or greater than 0.5 to a logic 1, and the values less than 0.5 to a logic 0.

The Pre-defined patterns shown in Table 3–45 are incorporated in the application:

Table 3–45: Pre–defined patterns

Pattern items	Descriptions
PN9	9-bits M-series pseudo random pulse.
PN15	15-bits M-series pseudo random pulse.
100100	
10001000	
1000010000	
1010101010	
100000100000	
1000000010000000	

Jitter composer parameters

The following parameters are provided to be specified when you generate jitter waveform.

Some parameters are uniquely identified by other parameters, however these parameters are only displayed on the screen. It is not indicated that you can set up these parameters.

You can change each parameter anytime as long as it is displayed on the screen regardless of selected bottom menu.

Table 3–46: Jitter composer parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Repeat Count	Specifies the repetition number of original waveform points that makes up one period for jitter waveform.
Samples/Bit	Specifies the number of points to be generated for each point of the input data. The value is larger than 2 because the input data needs rise time and fall time.
Data Rate [bps]	Specifies the data rate for jitter waveform. This value is prior to Samples/Bit, Rise Time, and Fall Time.
Clock [Samples/s]	Display clock rate (display only). The clock rate is automatically set by Data Rate × Sample/Bit.
Rise Time	Specifies rise time of pulse (time between points of10% and 90% level of amplitude). You can select 0(zero). One restriction is applied to Rise Time parameter; Rise Time + Fall Time $\leq$ 1/Data Rate × 2 × 4/5 .
Fall Time	Specifies fall time of pulse (time between points of10% and 90% level of amplitude). You can select 0(zero). One restriction is applied to Fall Time parameter; Rise Time + Fall Time $\leq$ 1/Data Rate × 2 × 4/5 .
Jitter Profile	Specifies the deviation of each point for one period in the direction of time base. Use Profile(bottom) → Sine, Triangle (side) menu to select among sine wave and triangle wave.
Jitter Deviation	Specifies the deviation of jitter waveform. Suppose 10101010......repetitive pattern as an input data, and one 1,0 pair as one period of pattern, this value represents the equivalent deviation for one 1,0 pair.[1]
Jitter Frequency	Display repeated frequency of jitter waveform. This value is automatically set by Clock / Total Points.
Data Points	Display the number of points for input data (display only).
Total Points	Display the number of points for jitter waveform (display only). This value is automatically set by Data Points × Repeat Count × Samples/Bit.

[1] Jitter deviation on peak–to–peak is ;
profile = sine : about 2.83 times of jitter deviation on rms.
profile = triangle : about 3.46 times of jitter deviation on rms.

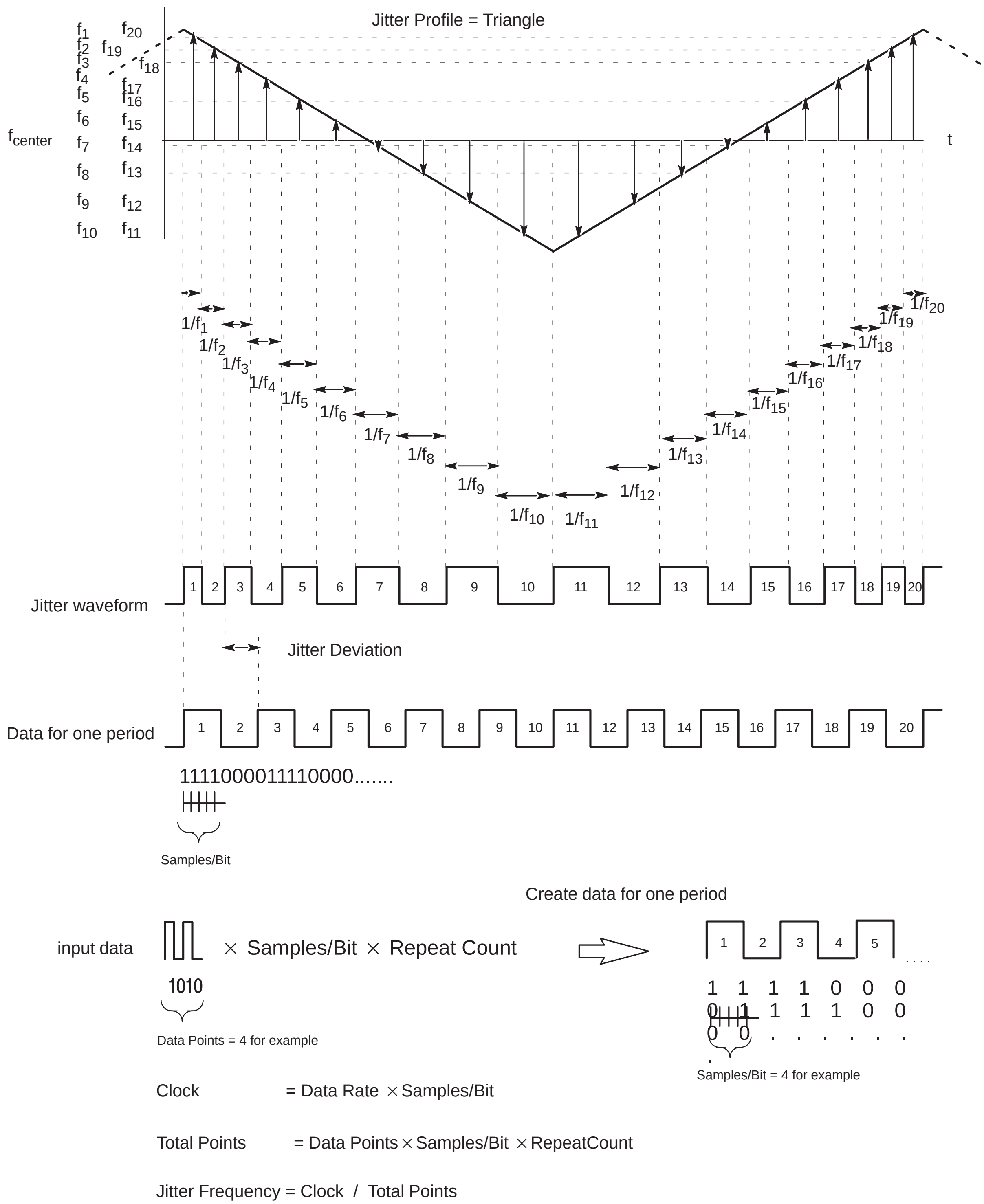


Figure 3–51: Jitter parameters and jitter waveform

Generating Waveform

The jitter waveform is generated based on the input data and jitter parameters described above. To generate a waveform, select **Compose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side).

The clock whose frequency is the same as the Bit Rate is set in Marker 1. The input data is set in Marker 2.

Saving to File

You can save the generated waveform to a file. If the waveform length does not satisfy the instrument file length conventions, the instrument repeats the data several times and regenerates the waveform to create a valid file.

The UTILITY Window

This section describes the following utility settings that can be made to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

- External keyboards
- Setting general purpose knob direction
- Formatting floppy disk
- Displaying disk usage
- Displaying instrument status
- Internal clock (date and time)
- CRT brightness
- Resetting the instrument
- Connecting to GPIB network
- Connecting to Ethernet
- Hardcopy setups
- Calibration and diagnostics
- Upgrading the system software

External Keyboards

You can connect either an ASCII 101-key keyboard or a JIS (Japanese) 106-key keyboard to the keyboard connector on the rear panel. To let the Waveform Generator know the keyboard type, do the following steps:

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom).
2. Select **Keyboard Type** using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.
3. Select **ASCII** or **JIS** using the general purpose knob.

The changes take effect immediately.

About Key Operation

You can use the PC keyboard for menu operations rather than using the instrument front panel keys or buttons. Use the keyboard to input the file name, directory name, and text in the Text/Equation editors. The PC keyboard character keys, ten keys, arrow keys, space key and shift key can be used in place of the front panel keys, buttons, and some menu operation commands.
Table 3–47 lists other edit operations you can perform from the PC keyboard.

Table 3–47: External keyboard edit operations

Control keys	Descriptions
Character and numeric keys	Characters found in the character palette can be input from the corresponding keys on the keyboard
◀ and ▶ keys	Corresponds to the front–panel ◀ and ▶ keys. In the equation editor, they move the caret horizontally.
▲ and ▼ keys	Corresponds to the front–panel ▲ and ▼ keys. In the equation editor, they move the caret vertically.
Delete	Deletes a character to the right of the caret
Backspace	Deletes a character to the left of the cursor.
Ctrl-C	Copy
Ctrl-X	Cut
Ctrl-V	Paste
Ctrl-Z	Undo
Ctrl-S	Toggles the selection on and off.

Setting General Purpose Knob Direction

Use the general purpose knob to highlight items in the pop-up menu or file list. The default setting for the knob rotation is clockwise for up (forward) and counterclockwise for down (backwards).

- Turning the knob clockwise causes the highlight bar to move up.
- Turning the knob counterclockwise causes the highlight bar to move down.

You can change the default setting for the general purpose knob by following the steps below:

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom).
2. Select the **Knob Direction** using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.
3. Select **Forward** or **Backward** using the general purpose knob.

The changes take affect immediately.

Formatting a Floppy Disk

The Waveform Generator provides the function to format a 2HD 1.44 MB floppy disk into MS-DOS format. Note that you cannot define a disk label for the floppy disk.

NOTE. *Formatting a floppy disk destroys any data on that disk. Before formatting a disk, make sure it contains no data you might ever need.*

Do the following steps to format a floppy disk:

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Disk** (bottom).
2. Push the **Format Floppy** side button to start formatting.

It takes some times to format a floppy disk. While the formatting is being executed, the clock icon displayed in the screen. When terminated, the clock icon disappears and the floppy disk drive LED goes off.

Displaying Disk Usage

The Waveform Generator display the informations on the disk usage and free space of the hard disk and floppy disk.

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Disk** (bottom).
2. Push the **Main** side button for the hard disk or **Floppy** side button for the floppy disk depending on which you want to know the information.

The drive name, free space, and total capacity for the selected storage drive are displayed.

Free space for the currently selected storage drive is displayed in the file list on the EDIT menu screen.

CRT Brightness

Do the following steps to adjust the CRT brightness:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Brightness Level** (screen).
2. Turn the general purpose knob to adjust the CRT brightness level. The default brightness level is 70%.

Displaying Instrument Status

Do the following steps to display the instrument software version and status of the SCPI registers.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Status** (bottom)→**System** (side) to display the instrument software version.
2. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Status** (bottom)→**SCPI Registers** (side) to display the current status of the SCPI registers.

Refer to *AWG500/AWG600 Series Programmer Manual* (Tektronix part number: 071-0555-XX) for the SCPI.

Internal Clock (Date and Time)

Do the following steps to set the date and time in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom).
2. Set the current year, month and day in the **Year**, **Month** and **Day** items, respectively.
3. Set the current hour, minutes and seconds in the **Hour**, **Min** and **Sec** items, respectively.

The changes are effective immediately.

Resetting the Instrument

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator uses the Factory Reset and Secure commands to reset the instrument.

Factory Reset

Factory Reset resets the instrument to the factory settings at the time of shipment. Some settings that are set in the UTILITY menu such as Network and GPIB settings, are not reset when **Factory Reset** is initiated.

To perform the factory reset, do the following steps:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

***NOTE**. Before pushing the OK side button, confirm that the data in the editor has been saved to a file.*

Secure

The secure is the function that removes the settings and all data files stored in the instrument hard disk. This is sometimes useful when you are storing data that is confidential and must transport the instrument for servicing, demonstrations, etc.

***CAUTION.** Executing the secure causes to remove all settings and data files in the hard disk. Make sure you really want to remove all data before execution. After execution, you cannot recover the files.*

Do the following steps to execute the Secure function:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Secure** (side).

The message *Secure destroys settings, and ALL DATA FILES* is displayed in the message box.

2. Make sure that you want to move the all settings and data.

3. Push the **OK** side button.

All files, including the files used in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator system, are removed, and the instrument settings are replaced with the factory settings.

Connecting to a GPIB Network

The GPIB Interface can be used for both remotely controlling the instrument from an external device (such as a PC) and for capturing waveform data from an external device (such as a Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscope). This section describes how to set up the instrument GPIB interface.

Refer to the *AWG510 & AWG520 Programmer Manual* (Tektronix part number 071-0555-XX) for information on the remote control commands. Refer to *Capturing Waveforms* on page 3–177 for procedures and information on how to transfer waveforms from an external device.

Setting GPIB Parameters

Configuration and Address are two GPIB parameters that you must set. The GPIB Configuration contains three parameters:

- **Talk/Listen**: Select this mode to remotely control the Waveform Generator from an external host computer.
- **Controller**: Select this mode to use the Waveform Generator as a controller to transfer waveform data to or from another device connected to the GPIB bus.
- **Off Bus**: Select this mode to electrically disconnect the Waveform Generator from the GPIB bus.

The GPIB address defines a unique address for the Waveform Generator. Each device connected to the GPIB bus must have a unique GPIB address. The GPIB address must be from 0 to 30.

Do the following steps to set the GPIB parameters:

1. Select **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Comm** (bottom). The screen as shown in Figure 3–52 appears.

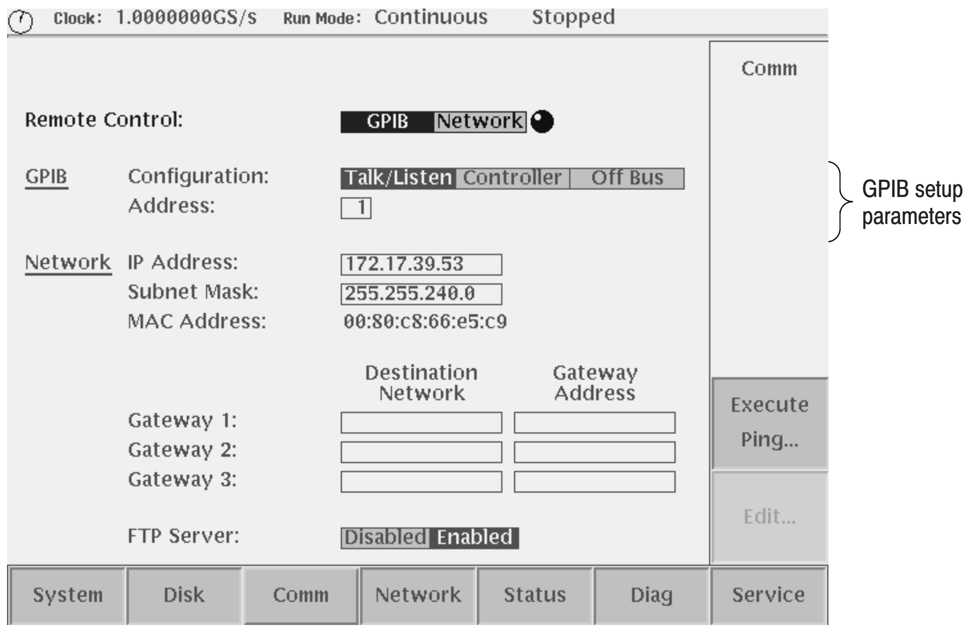


Figure 3–52: GPIB setup screen menu

2. Select **GPIB** for remote control.
   a. Select Remote control using ▲ and ▼ buttons.
   b. Select **GPIB**.
3. Set the GPIB bus connection parameter:
   a. Select GPIB Configuration using ▲ and ▼ buttons.
   b. Select a configuration mode: **Talk/Listen**, **Controller**, or **Off Bus**.
4. Set the instrument GPIB address:
   a. Select GPIB Address using ▲ and ▼ buttons.
   b. Set GPIB address using the general purpose knob. Make sure that the value you enter is unique for this GPIB bus.

The changes take effect immediately.

Ethernet Networking

The Waveform Generator can be connected to a network to access hard disk file systems in the remote computers that use Network File System (NFS) protocol. You can also log in to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator from the remote computer to transfer files by using FTP link software.

You can set up to three remote computers in the Waveform Generator and mount their file systems at the same time. You select the remote files the same way you select the internal hard disk or floppy disk.

This subsection describes the following network operations:

- Connecting to Ethernet
- Testing the network connection
- Network Parameter
- Mounting remote file system
- Setting a FTP link

Connecting to the Ethernet

You can connect the Waveform Generator to a 10 BASE-T Ethernet network. To mount a remote file system, you must set the following parameters in the instrument:

- Select Network for remote control through Ethernet
- IP address and Subnet Mask for the Waveform Generator
- Up to three gateway addresses (if necessary)

Figure 3–53 shows the screen menu in which you can set the network parameters to your AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

***NOTE**. To connect the instrument to the Ethernet, you need to connect the cables before you power on the instrument.*

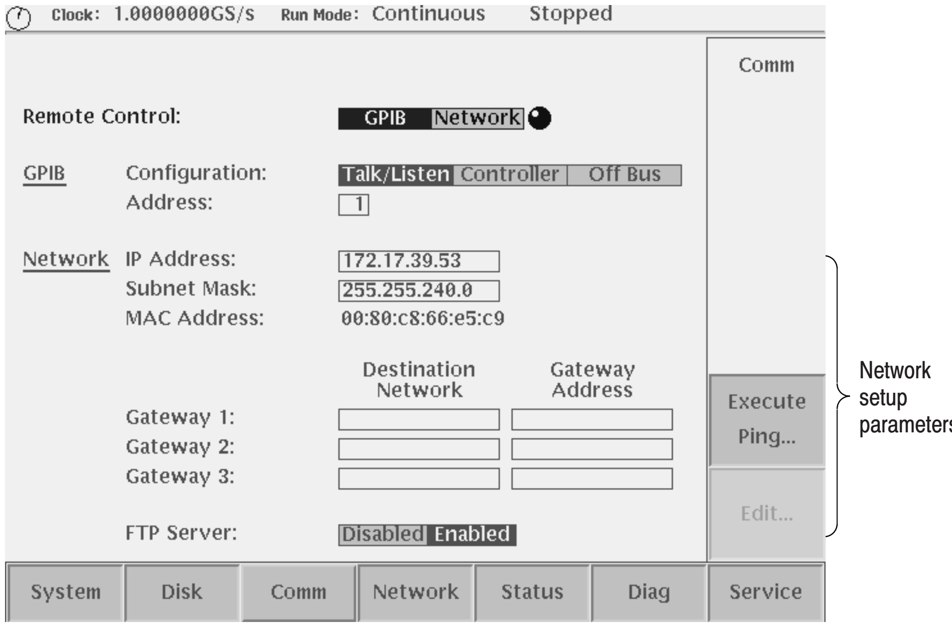


Figure 3–53: Network setup screen menu

To let the network recognize the Waveform Generator, set the IP address and Subnet Mask, and if necessary, also set the Gateway address as following steps:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Comm** (bottom) to display the network setup screen menu.

2. Select **Network** for remote control.

   a. Select **Remote Control** using ▲ and ▼ buttons.

   b. Select **Network**.

   This parameter must be set when you control the instrument through Ethernet. Otherwise, you can skip this step and go to step 3.

3. Set the following network parameters in the screen menu:

   a. Set a IP address of your AWG500-Series Waveform Generator in the **IP Address** field.

   b. If necessary, set a subnet mask in the **Subnet Mask** field.

   c. If necessary, set a gateway address and destination network in the **Gateway Address** and **Destination Network** fields, respectively.

   Set the Gateway address of a gateway when the remote computers are connecting to another network that is connected to the network through a gateway. You can set up to three gateways.

4. Set the FTP server to Disable or Enable in the **FTP Server** field.

   Setting the FTP server to Enable allows you to enter into the hard disk system of the instrument from a remote computer.

The changes take effect immediately. If you are not familiar with the network setup, consult with your network administrator.

***NOTE**. The port number is fixed to 4000. This port number must be assigned to the application software or the Ethernet driver on the external controller.*
The MAC Address is displayed on the network setup screen menu.

Testing the Network Connection

When you complete the physical connection and settings, you can check whether or not the Waveform Generator can recognize the network and the remote computers, or whether the network can recognize the Waveform Generator.

Do the following steps to use the ping command to verify that the instrument can communicate with the network:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Network** (bottom) or
   UTILITY (front–panel)→**Comm** (bottom)
2. Push the **Execute Ping** side button to display a dialog box.
3. Enter a IP address of the remote computer in the dialog box.
4. Push the **OK** side button

   The ping command sends a packet to the remote computer specified by the IP address. When the computer receives the packet, it sends the packet back to the sender (your AWG500-Series Waveform Generator).

   When the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator can communicate with the remote computer through the network, the message as shown in Figure 3–54 is displayed. If it failed to establish the communication, the message box displaying an error message such as *Unknown error* is displayed.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 for all the remote computers to which you desire to verify the connection through the network.

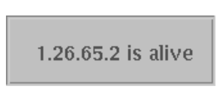


Figure 3–54: Message box to indicate the establishment of communication

Network Parameter

You can set the FTP Version and NFS Timeout time. Do the following steps to set these parameters.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Service** (bottom)→**Tweak AWG1** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

2. Push **NFS Timeout** (side) and set the NFS Timeout time using the general purpose knob or the numeric keypads. The time range is from 25 to 300 seconds.

3. Push FTP Version(side) button to toggle between **Standard** and **Obsolete**. Usually, set Standard.

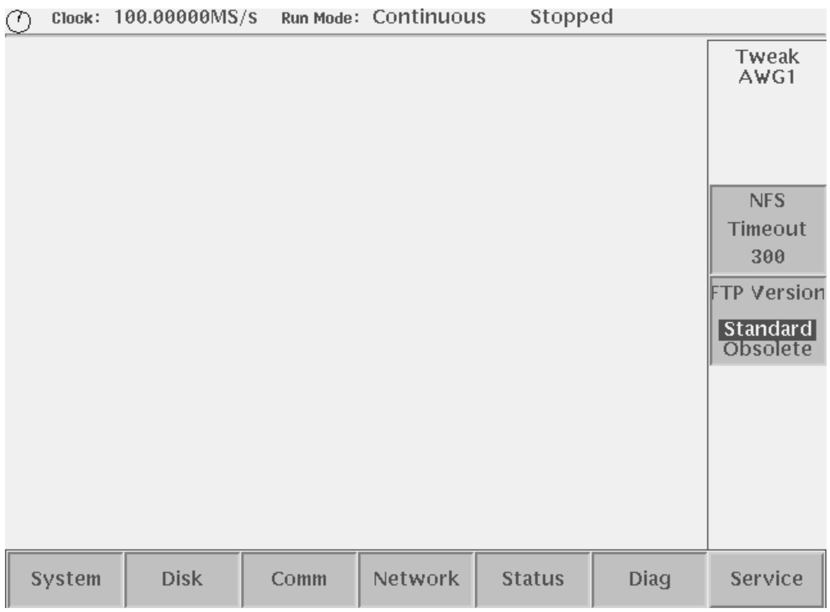


Figure 3–55: Network parwmeter screen

Mounting Remote File Systems

Figure 3–56 shows the screen menu in which you can set the parameters to mount a remote file system on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator, using the NFS protocol.Refer to the documentations about the NFS, for the details on the remote file system , NFS protocol and/or how to set the NFS in the computers.

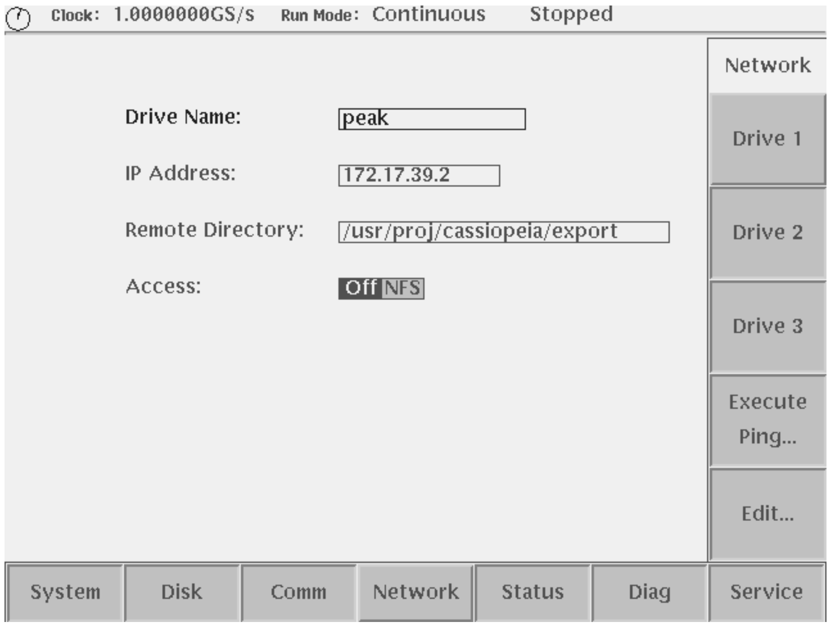


Figure 3–56: UTILITY screen mounting remote file system

Do the following steps to mount the remote file system :

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Network** (bottom).
2. Push the **Drive1** side button for setting a remote file system as a drive 1.

   Do the following substeps to set the remote file system for the Drive 1:

NOTE. You cannot select the Access field unless you set an IP address and remote directory.

---

   a. Define the remote file system name in the **Drive Name** field. The drive name set here is displayed as one of the drive selections. Figure 3–57 shows an example of the drive selections.

   b. Set the remote computers IP address in the **IP Address** field.

c. Specify a remote file system node in the remote file system in the **Remote Directory** field.

d. Push **Off** to disconnect or **NFS** to connect from the **Access** field.

You can connect or disconnect to/from the network logically while connecting physically. Select **Off** to disconnect, and **NFS** to connect.

You can use all the file system existed under the node you specified here through the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

***NOTE**. UID (User Identification) and GID (Group Identification) are 2001 and 500 respectively.*

---

3. Repeat steps a through d to set the remote file systems for Drive2 and Drive3, if necessary.

The changes take affect immediately. You can use the remote file system defined in above procedures by selecting as a storage media.

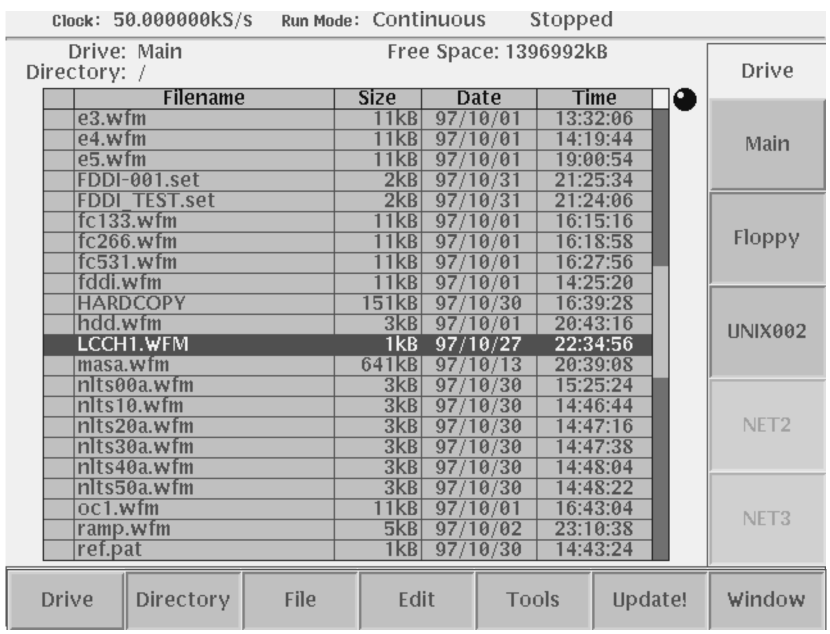


Figure 3–57: Drive selections in EDIT menu

FTP Link

When you set the FTP Server to enable, you can enter into the hard disk or floppy disk file system of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform generator from a remote computer.

Type the following commond on your computer keyboard:

ftp <IP address>

Since the Waveform Generator prompts you to enter a login name and password, you just press the Return or Enter key on your keyboard. The message '*User log in*' and the prompt '*ftp>*' appear when you successfully logged in.

At the prompt, you can use the commands as listed in Table 3–48. Note that these are the only available ftp commands for use with the instrument.

Table 3–48: Available FTP commands

Commands	Descriptions
ascii	Sets the file transfer mode to ascii.
binary	Sets the file transfer mode to binary. Use this mode when you transfer the file other than the text file.
bye	Terminate the ftp session and exit the ftp.
cd *xxxx*	Changes the current working directory on instrument. Specify a directory at *xxxx*. To change the drive, specify "/*<drive–name>*/". For example, to move into the floppy disk, type as follows: cd "/floppy/" Type "/main/" for the hard disk drive, "/NET1/" for remote file system NET1, so on.
dir	Lists the all files in the current directory in the instrument
get *xxxx [local–file]*	Receive the file *xxxx* in the instrument and stores in the local file. If the local-file is not specified, the same name as *xxxx* is used for a local file.
hash	Toggles hash-sign on and off. When the hash-sign is set to on, the hash-sign (#) is printed for each data block transferred.
ls	Lists the all files in the current working directory in the instrument.
put *xxxx [remote-file]*	Transfers the file *xxxx* in your local computer and stores in the instrument file. If the remote-file is not specified, the same name as *xxxx* is used for a instrument file.
pwd	print the path to the current directory in the instrument
quit	Terminates the ftp session and exit the ftp.

***NOTE**. The ftp server in the AWG500 Series Waveform Generator does not support mget commands, nor meta–characters. When you use the put command with meta–character, for example as in:*

put ABS.WFM *.*

on your computer, the file named *.* may be created in the internal disk of the AWG500 Series Waveform Generator.

This *.* file is not displayed on the AWG500 Series Waveform Generator file list. Access to a file created in this manner is not possible through the front panel. Use GPIB commands to access such files.

Hardcopy

The image on the screen can be output, as it is, to a file. Using a hardcopy file, you can make reports with a desktop publishing (DTP) application software running on PC, or output those files to a printer via a PC, for example. Note that you cannot connect a printer directly to the instrument

Initiate hardcopy function by pushing the **HARDCOPY** button on the front–panel or entering the GPIB command. You can select either TIFF or BMP for the file formats. Select the hard disk, floppy disk, or a remote computer file system for the file output destination. The file size is approximately 150 Kbytes independently of the format.

Hardcopy Settings

Before running a hardcopy, specify the hardcopy format and the output destination, as you needed.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom) to display the hardcopy setup screen. See Figure 3–58.
2. Select a hardcopy format:
   a. Select **Hard Copy Format** using the ▲ or ▼ button.
   b. Select either **TIFF** or **BMP** using the general purpose knob or the ◀ or ▶ button.
3. Select a drive where hardcopy files are stored:
   a. Select **Hard Copy Drive** using the ▲ or ▼ button.
   b. Select **Hard Disk**, **Floppy**, or **NETx** using the general purpose knob.

Note that the **NETx** means remote computer file system that you defined. By default, they are **NET1**, **NET2** and **NET3**. For defining the remote file system, refer to page 3–159.

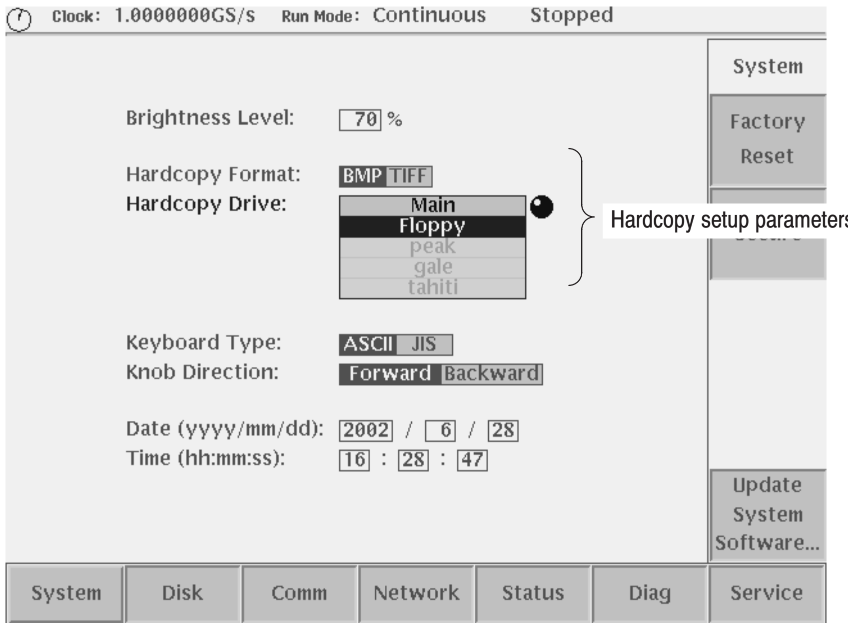


Figure 3–58: Hardcopy setup screen

Running Hardcopy

When you push the **HARDCOPY** button on the front–panel, the currently displayed image on the screen is output to an image file. The file format and output destination drive are as specified in the **UTILITY** menu. The destination directory is the current one.

1. Display the view on the screen for which you want to make a hardcopy.
2. Push the **HARDCOPY** button on the front–panel.

   The hardcopy function runs. When terminated, the message box displaying the output destination and file name are displayed on the screen, as shown in Figure 3–59.

Figure 3–59: Hardcopy complete message box

3. Push the **OK** side button.

To rename a created file or move it to another directory, use the **EDIT** menu.

Saving Hardcopy to a File

If you use the **HARDCOPY** button to produce a hardcopy file, a file name such as *TEK00000.BMP* is automatically assigned as the file name. The ”TEK” substring is fixed. The ”00000” substring indicates the counter value, which is reset to 0 each time you power on the instrument. Hereafter, it is incremented by 1 each time a hardcopy is produced. The extension is either ’BMP’ or ’TIF’, depending on the specified format. The output destination drive will be as specified in the **UTILITY** menu. The directory will be defined as the current one for this drive.

If you use the GPIB command to produce a hardcopy, you must specify the output file name using a special command with which you must only the file name. The drive and path are the current drive and directory of GPIB that are set when the **Hardcopy** command is received from the GPIB. Refer to *AWG510 & AWG520 Programmer Manual* for more details.

Calibration and Diagnostics

The Waveform Generator is equipped with the functions that perform calibration and tests internal hardware. This function requires minimal additional time to perform, requires no additional equipment, and more completely test the internal hardware of the Waveform Generator. They can be used to quickly determine if the waveform generator is suitable for putting into service, such as when it is first received.

The calibration and diagnostics can be performed in the screen appeared when you push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Diag** (bottom).

Calibration

The calibration updates the internal constants so that the instrument outputs waveforms within the specified accuracy. See Figure 3–61 for the calibration items and possible error codes.

The calibration must be performed in the following cases:

- After a 20-minute worm up period
- Prior to high precision waveform output
- When the ambient temperature has changed more than +5 ˚C or less than –5 ˚C from the previous calibration

Refer to the calibration and diagnostic screen to see if calibration has recently been performed on the instrument. See Figure 3–61.

The calibration has completed when Done is displayed in the Calibration result field. No calibration has been performed if the - - - is displayed. The factory reset also causes the - - - to be displayed.

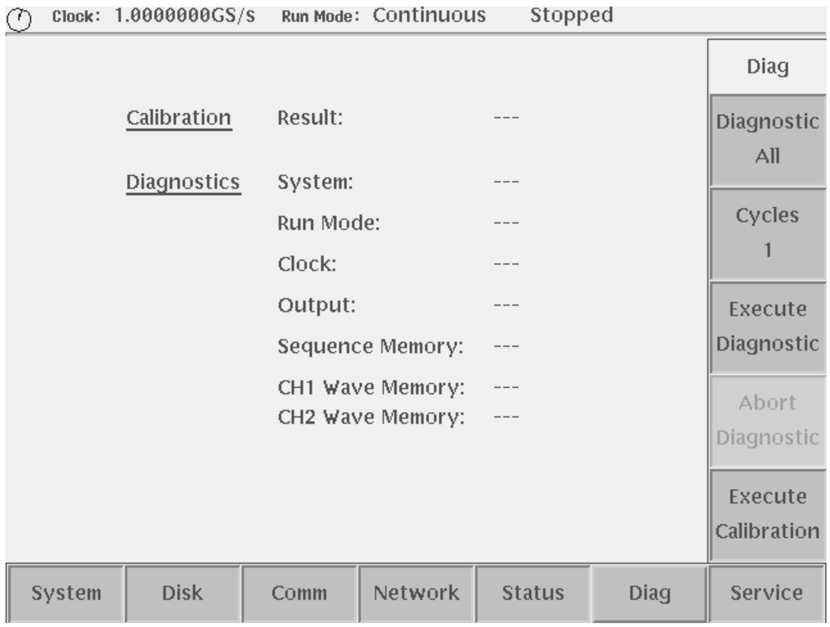


Figure 3–60: Calibration and diagnostic screen

***NOTE**. The calibration data in the memory may be lost if the instrument is powered off while the calibrations are running.*

Do the following steps to execute the calibration:

1. Turn off the output, if the waveform is being output, by pushing the **RUN** button so that the RUN LED goes off.
2. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Diag** (bottom)→**Execute Calibration** (side). The internal calibration routine runs immediately and requires up to 15 seconds to complete.

The status message box appears when calibration has been terminated. See Figure 3–61.

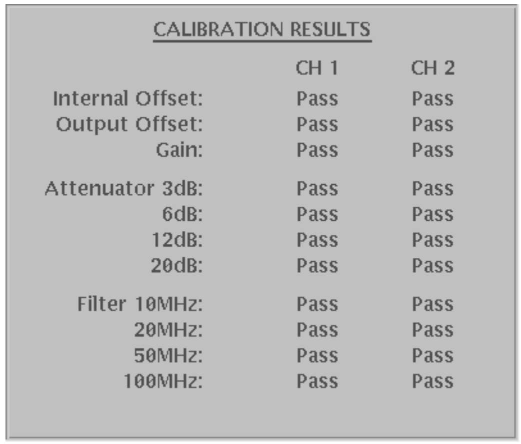


Figure 3–61: Status message box

Pass is displayed in the message box if the calibration successfully terminates. **Fail** is displayed if calibration encounters a problem.

Push the **OK** side button or **CLEAR MENU** button to erase the status message box and return to the screen shown in Figure 3–60.

Power-on Diagnostics

At power on, only a limited set of hardware tests for all the test categories are performed and the results are displayed on the screen. When error is detected, the instrument displays the message *Press any key to continue* to stays the results on the screen. Press any key to go on to the SETUP menu screen.

In the power on diagnostics, error on the digital to analog converter (DAC) calibration result for both channels may be reported, that are not executed in the manual diagnostics.

See Table 3–49 for the test categories and error codes.

Manual Diagnostics

The manual diagnostics routines can execute full set of hardware tests for all the test categories or only for the specified category, except for the DAC. You can also specify the test cycle of 1 to infinite times.

To execute the diagnostics, do the following steps:

1. Turn off the output, if the waveform is being output, by pushing the **RUN** button so that the RUN LED goes off.
2. Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Diag** (bottom).

   The screen as shown in Figure 3–60 appears.
3. Push the **Diagnostic** *xxxx* side button and select a test category by turning the general purpose knob.

   The *xxxx* represents currently selected test category. You can select one from **All**, **System**, **Run Mode**, **Clock**, **Output**, **Seq Mem** and **Wave Mem**. If you select **All**, the diagnostic routines of all categories are executed.
4. Push the **Cycle** ***n*** side button and select a test cycle by turning the general purpose knob.

   The ***n*** represents currently selected test cycle. You can select one from **1**, **3**, **10**, **100** or **Infinite**. If you select **Infinite**, the diagnostic tests are repeated infinitely. Push the **Abort Diagnostic** side button to stop the execution.
5. Push the **Execute Diagnostic** side button to start the diagnostic tests.

The **- - -** is displayed at each test category on the screen either at the beginning or after the factory reset. The mark **- - -** is also displayed while the diagnostic test is executing. See Figure 3–61. When the diagnostic test terminates without error, Pass is displayed instead of the **- - -**. The test routine displays the error code and skips to the next test if an error is detected.

See Table 3–49 for the test categories and error codes.

Table 3–49: Diagnostic categories and error codes

Categories	Error codes	Descriptions
System	2101 to 2106	Bios test error
	2111 to 2116	front–panel test error
	2301	A30 board test error
	2401 to 2402	Clock delay data test error
	2701 to 2702	Cal data test error

Table 3–49: Diagnostic categories and error codes (cont.)

Categories	Error codes	Descriptions
Run mode	3101 to 3104	CTRL1 registers test error
	3201 to 3216	Event table memory data bus error
	3251 to 3274	Event table address bus error
	3301 to 3302	Event table CS test error
	3351 to 3352	Event memory cell test error
Clock	4101 to 4104	A40 clock board test error
Output (CH1)	7111	Output offset device test error
	7121	Internal offset device test error
	7131	ARB gain test error
	7141 to 7144	ATTEN test error
	7151 to 7154	Filter test error
	7171	OUTPUT ON key test error
Output (CH1 or CH2)	7271	OUTPUT ON key test error
	7211	Output offset device test error
	7221	Internal offset device test error
	7231	ARB gain test error
	7241 to 7244	ATTEN test error
	7251 to 7254	Filter test error
Sequence memory	5101 to 5116	Data bus test error
	5151 to 5174	Address bus test error
	5201 to 5206	CS test error
	5251 to 5256	Cell test error
Waveform memory (CH1)	5301 to 5316	Data bus test error
	5351 to 5374	Address bus test error
	5401 to 5464	Module test error
	5501 to 5549	Cell test error
Waveform memory ($\overline{\text{CH1}}$ or CH2)	5601 to 5616	Data bus test error
	5651 to 5674	Address bus test error
	5701 to 5764	Module test error
	5801 to 5849	Cell test error
ARB DAC (CH1) [1]	5901 to 5912	ARB DAC test error
ARB DAC ($\overline{\text{CH1}}$ or CH2) [1]	5951 to 5962	ARB DAC test error

1 **These tests are executed at power on or manually by service personnel. Refer to the *AWG510 & AWG520 Service Manual* (071-0101-XX) for more details.**

Upgrading the System Software

The system software in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator can be updated by using the utility menu. The System software consists of both the user program and the operating system. The upgrades can be done independent of each other. Refer to page 3–152 for information regarding the current system software versions.

Preparation

Do the following prior to performing the system software upgrade procedure:

- Read the Instruction documents included in the upgrade kit carefully.
- Refer to the instruction documents included in the upgrade kit for more information.

CAUTION. *To avoid damage to the instrument, follow the instruction documentation included in the upgrade kit.*

Upgrade Procedure

Follow the steps below to upgrade system software:

1. Copy the system software in the upgrade kit to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator internal hard disk.
2. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel) → **System** (bottom) → **Update System Software...** (side) → **Update Program...** or **Update OS...** (side).
3. Before executing the update, a caution dialog appears. Push the **OK** (side) button to continue, or the **Cancel** (side) button to abort.

   The Select File dialog box appears.
4. Select the file for upgrade that was copied in step 1, then press the **OK** (side) button.

   The file confirmation dialog box appears.
5. Press the **OK** (side) button.

   The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator checks the selected file properties. The “Illegal file format” message appears if you select an invalid file. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator updates the system software.
6. After the updating procedure has completed, power off, then power on the instrument. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator starts up with updated system software.

Quick Editing

Quick edit allows you to modify and output the currently edited waveform (with the waveform editor) in real time by using knobs on the front–panel. It enables you to scale or shift the cursor-to-cursor data on the Waveform editor screen along the vertical and/or horizontal axis. To do so, you can use the vertical scale, vertical offset, horizontal scale, and horizontal offset front-panel knobs.

If **Update Mode** is set to **Auto** with the waveform editor, waveform modifications using the knobs are automatically updated to the waveform file and to the output waveform.

***NOTE**. You can enter into the quick edit mode only from the waveform editor.*

Screen Display

You can enter into the quick edit mode only from the waveform editor. First you open a target waveform with the waveform editor, and then push the **QUICK EDIT** button on the front–panel. The screen is the same as that of the waveform editor in graphic mode except for the bottom and side buttons. No bottom button is available, and only three side buttons can be used for adjusting the editing parameters. See Figure 3–62 for an example of the quick edit screen.

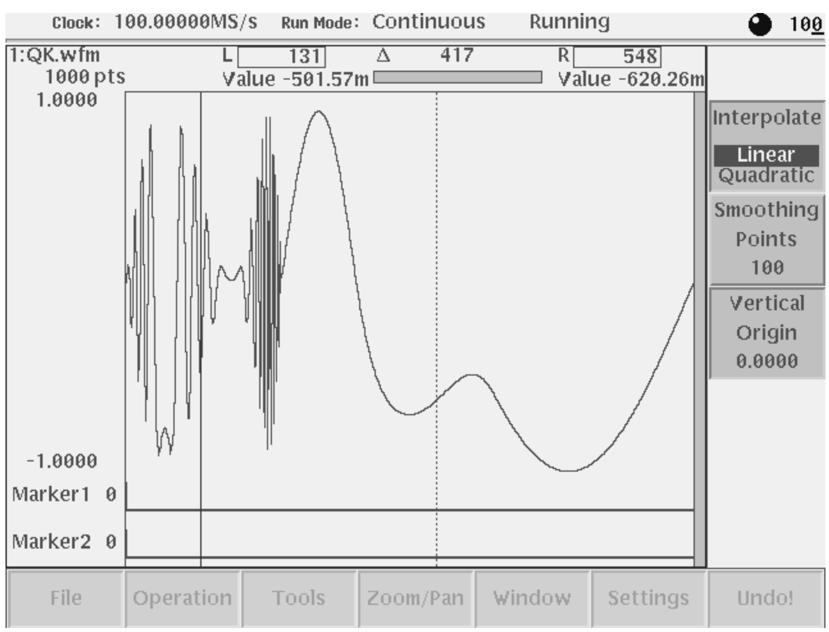


Figure 3–62: A waveform example under quick editing

Quick Edit Mode

The following are enabled when Quick Edit is on.

- Operating four knobs of **VERTICAL SCALE**, **VERTICAL OFFSET**, **HORIZONTAL SCALE**, and **HORIZONTAL OFFSET**.
- Setting parameters on the **Quick Edit** screen
- Moving the cursors using the general purpose knob or numeric keys
- Operations not requiring menu changes (pressing a button such as **RUN**, **OUTPUT**, or **HARDCOPY**)
- Updating the contents of the edit buffer

Quick Edit Mechanism

When you enter into the quick edit mode, the instrument copies the data in the edit buffer into the undo buffer. All the changes you make immediately reflect to the data in the edit buffer (and also to the data in the waveform memory if that data is being loaded to output).

When you save the changes and quit the quick editor, the instrument simply terminate the quick editor. However, when you cancel the changes and quit the quick editor, the instrument copies the data in the undo buffer back to the edit buffer (and also to the waveform memory if the data is being loaded), and then terminate the quick editor.

About Smoothing

Quick Edit performs expand, shrink, or shift the cursor-to-cursor data. Consequently, if nothing is processed, a gap may be produced between the changed and unchanged portions. To link the entire data smoothly, smoothing is performed.

Cursor-to-cursor points move in response to turn of a knob. Also for the unchanged portions, the smoothing moves the positions so that the entire data is linked smoothly. This occurs throughout the range specified with the **Smoothing Points** side menu. The amount of shift is calculated internally to enable smooth link and minimize the effect on the unchanged portions. The calculation uses a cubic polynomial for the horizontal amount and sine for the vertical amount.

The value of the points mentioned above are usually non-integers. That is, the resulting horizontal coordinates of the points are not integers. The values at the coordinates (integers) on the horizontal axis of the waveform data are sequentially obtained using the interpolation you specified with the **Interpolate** side menu.

Quick Controls

To enable the Quick Edit mode, press the QUICK EDIT front-panel button, as shown in Figure 3–63.

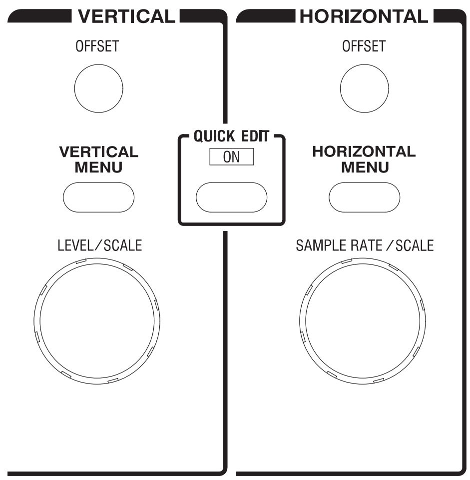


Figure 3–63: Controls for quick editing

VERTICAL SCALE Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is scaled vertically with the **Vertical Origin** side menu as the center. You may set a three-digit value (0.1 to 10.0) for the scaling factor. Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with the value set in **Smoothing Points** side menu, with the appropriate cursor position as the center.

VERTICAL OFFSET Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is shifted vertically. The amount of shift can be set in 0.00001 increments in the –1.0 to 1.0 range. Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with **Smoothing Points** side menu, with the appropriate cursor position as the center.

HORIZONTAL SCALE Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is scaled horizontally with the midpoint of the data as the center. You may set a three-digit value (0.1 to 10.0) for the scaling factor. Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with **Smoothing Points** side menu, with the end point of the scaled data as the center.

HORIZONTAL OFFSET Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is shifted horizontally. The amount of shift can be set with a five-digit value from -1000.0 to 1000.0 (0.001–point resolution). Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with **Smoothing Points** side menu, with the end point of the scaled data as the center.

Starting Quick Edit

Quick Edit works for the cursor-to-cursor waveform data you placed in the edit mode in the Waveform editor.

1. Start the Waveform editor to display the target waveform.
2. Specify the modification area using the cursors.
3. Press **QUICK EDIT** button on the front–panel.

While Quick edit is on, the **QUICK EDIT** LED stays lit up.

To observe changes while outputting the waveform, you must load the target waveform to the waveform memory.

1. Load the target waveform to the waveform memory in the following way: Select **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load** (side).
2. Set the output parameters on the side menu screen to output the waveform.
3. Place the loaded waveform in the edit mode:
4. Specify the modification area using the cursors.
5. Press the **OK EDIT** button on the front–panel to execute Quick Edit.

NOTE*. When a waveform is loaded in the waveform memory, the changes made in the Quick editor can not reflect to the output. To reflect the changes to the output, be sure to load the target waveform in the SETUP menu, enter into the editor, and then enter into the Quick editor.*

Exiting Quick Edit

When exiting Quick Edit, you can select whether or not to save waveform changes.

1. Press the **QUICK EDIT** button on the front–panel.
2. Before Quick edit is exited, you are asked whether to fix the current changes.
3. Select the **Yes**, **No**, or **Cancel** side menu.

Setting Parameters

Interpolating Method

When changes are made to the waveform by turning a knob, the values of the shifted points are calculated by interpolation. You can select either **Linear** or **Quadratic** for the interpolating method.

1. Pressing the **Interpolation** side button causes toggling between **Linear** or **Quadratic**.

Range of Smoothing

Smoothing is performed so that, when you make changes to the waveform by turning a knob, the shifted points and the points in the non-shifted area are linked smoothly. This parameter specifies the extent (of the non-shifted points) to which smoothing applies. The value may be 0 to 1000.

1. Press the **Smoothing** side button.
2. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys for setting.

Position of Center of Vertical Extent

This specifies the center used for vertical scaling. The value may be –1.0 to 1.0.

1. Press the **Vertical Origin** side button.
2. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys for setting.

Moving Cursor

During execution of Quick Edit, you can change the target area for editing, by moving the cursors. Note that, when you are using one of the four VERTICAL/ HORIZONTAL knobs, the general purpose knob and the numeric keys remain assigned to changing the value through a knob. To move a cursor, press **TOGGLE** button on the front–panel before operating the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

1. Press **TOGGLE** button on the front–panel to assign the general purpose knob to cursor movement.
2. Set the cursor position using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

Renewing Edit Buffer

During execution of Quick Edit, you can combine the four **VERTICAL** and **HORIZONTAL** knobs and the general purpose knob, as desired, for the operation purpose. Each time you operate any of the knobs, the following internal calculation is made to renew the waveform data.

- The cursor-to-cursor data is defined as the object of calculation with respect to the waveform that was obtained when you start Quick Edit.
- Using the current **Vertical Scale**, **Vertical Offset**, **Horizontal Scale**, and **Horizontal Offset** values, the calculation is made in this order with respect to the cursor-to-cursor data.
- Smoothing is executed.

About Undo

The undo buffer is used for waveform backup, so the quick editor does not support Undo function. Before exiting it, you are asking whether to reflect the changes in the waveform in the waveform editor. To cancel changes, select **No** at this time.

Capturing Waveforms

This section describes about transferring waveforms from the instruments to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator over the GPIB interfaces.

The Waveform Generator is equipped with the function to capture the waveform data acquired in oscilloscopes and/or generated in generators over the GPIB interface without control by an external controller. The waveforms captured are automatically converted to the waveforms that the Waveform Generator can handles

When you use this function, set the Waveform Generator GPIB configuration to controller.

Possible Instruments

The Waveform Generator captures waveforms from following instruments:

- Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscopes
- LeCroy DSO oscilloscope

Basic Concept on Communication for Capturing

Waveform data is transferred over the GPIB network. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator must be the controller and the another instrument(s) must be in Talk/Listen mode, and all instrument including the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator have the unique GPIB address.

When you execute this function, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator starts addressing, one by one, to the instruments that are being connected to the same GPIB network in the order from the lower to higher GPIB address. When an instrument that has addressed responds to that addressing, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator stops addressing and starts negotiation for waveform data transfer.

Regardless of a number of instruments connected to the GPIB network, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator can communicate with the instrument that has respond earliest (possibly the one that has the lowest GPIB address in the same network) and that is the type you specified for the capturing waveform.

You must set the GPIB address and Talk/Listen mode, but you do not need the other settings in the source instrument. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator performs all settings to the source instrument necessary for waveform transfer during negotiation.

Procedures for Capturing Waveforms

To capture waveform, do the following steps:

1. Set the GPIB parameters in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

   The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator must be set to the controller. Refer to *Connecting to a GPIB Network* on page 3–153 for setting the GPIB parameters.

2. Set GPIB a GPIB address and Talk/Listen mode in the source instrument.

3. Start acquisition in the source instrument.

4. Capture the waveform:

   a. Push **EDIT** (front–panel)→**Tools** (bottom)→**Capture Waveform** (side).

   The dialog box listing the instruments appears as shown in Figure 3–64.

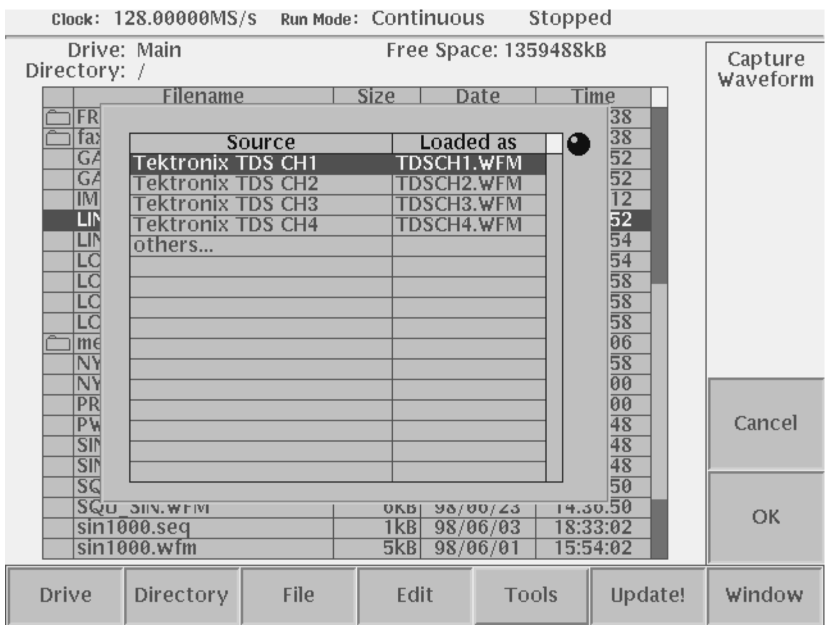


Figure 3–64: Source instrument selection dialog box

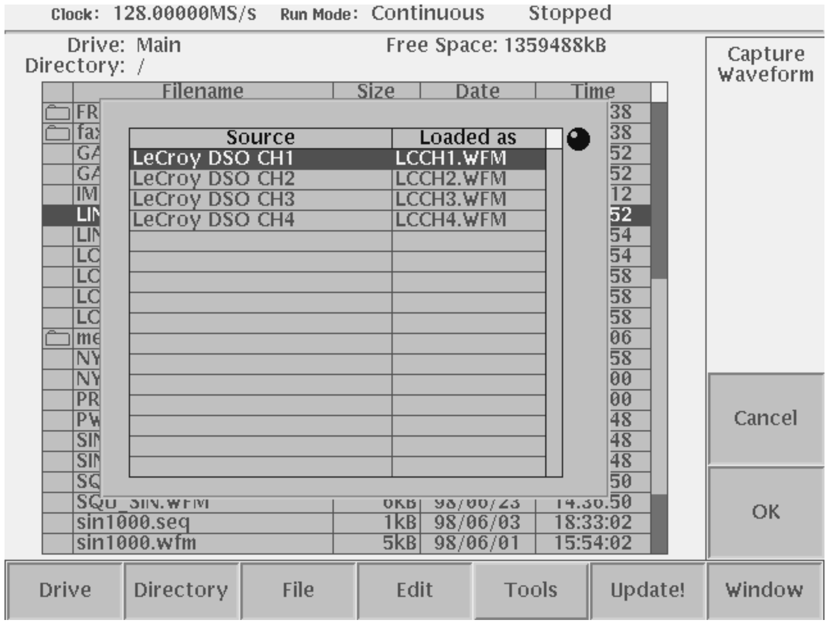


Figure 3–65: Source instrument selection under Others...

b. If necessary, select **Others...** to open the other source instrument list.

c. Select a source instrument from the list.

d. Push the **OK** side button.

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator starts transferring the waveform from the selected source instrument. The file transferred to the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator are automatically converted and saved in the file specified in the column of the line you selected. If needed, change the file name and perform another waveform data transfer.

About Transferred Files

When you capture a waveform from a selected instrument, the corresponding waveform file is created in the current directory of the current drive. At the same time, the set file is also created to save the setup information such as amplitude, offset, etc.

Use the set file to output the waveform file with the same settings as those captured in the instrument.

File Conversion

The Waveform Generator has the ability to import and export various formats of waveform data. Import converts waveform files created with a certain non-AWG500-Series Waveform Generator device into files the instrument can use. Export converts AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform files into text files.

Each AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform file contains the clock rate information, waveform data, and marker information. Import uses default values for the information unavailable through the external file.

Import

The following files can be converted into AWG500-Series Waveform Generator compatible waveform files (.*wfm* files):

- AWG20xx.WFM to Waveform

  An AWG2000 Series .*wfm* file is converted into an AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform file. The marker data and clock rates are inherited.

- AWG20xx.WFM to Pattern

  An AWG2000 Series .*wfm* file is converted into an AWG500-Series Waveform Generator pattern file. The marker data and clock rates are inherited.

  Note that the upper 10 bits in the AWG2021 or AWG2005 waveform file are converted into the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator wavefron file. The lower two bits are neglected. In the AWG2041 waveform file, 8–bit data is converted into the upper data bits: Data2 to Data9 in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator pattern file. The values in the Data0 and Data1 are undefined.

- TDS.WFM to Waveform

  A waveform file generated with a Tektronix TDS Series oscilloscope is converted into an AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform file. The clock rate and position information are inherited. The offset information is neglected in this conversion.

- EASYWAVE.WAV to Waveforn

  A data file (.*wav*) generated with LeCroy EASYWAVE software is converted into the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform file. No attributes are inherited.

- text file to Waveform

  An ASCII-form text file is converted into the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform file. Numeric values separated by separators are loaded. Headers or similar codes are not defined. The separator can be a space, comma, tab, CR, or LF.

  An exponential notation (e.g., –.1E-2) may be used as a numeric value. A unit prefix (e.g., m, u, n, p, k, M) may not be used. If you use a numeric value followed by an alphabetical character (e.g., 1.2V), the value will be interpreted properly, ignoring the alphabetical character.

  If you use a sequence of consecutive separators, it will be interpreted as a single separator.

Therefore, the meaning of the following line:

    1,2,3,4<CR><LF>

is the same as:

    1 , 2, , 3,,, 4 ,,, <CR> <LF>

If an alphabetical character (such as A, B, C, and/or D) is placed instead of a numeric value, the value 0 will result. (This is not handled as an error.)

The actual input file formats are as follows:

Format 1: Numeric values that are listed horizontally

    0,0.1,0.2,0.3,0.4

The respective values are converted into the analog data. The marker value is converted into 0.

Format 2: Repetitions of three numeric values listed on a line

    0.1,1,0
    0.2,0,1
    0.3,0,0

One line corresponds to 1 point. The first value is the analog data, and the subsequent two are markers 1 and 2. For marker data, values larger than 0.5 are regarded as 1, and the others as 0.

Export

AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform files (*.wfm* files) can be converted into the following files. You may use a format including marker data and one not including it.

- Waveform to text file
- Waveform to text file with marker

For both file types, 1-point data is written on a line. The return code is CR/LF.

If no marker is included:

```
1.0
0.5
–0.9
0.1
```

If markers are included:

```
1.0,1,1
0.5,0,1
–0.9,1,0
0.1,0,0
```

Convert between Waveform and Pattern

AWG500-Series Waveform Generator waveform files (*.wfm* files) and pattern files (*.pat* files) can be converted from one form to the other.

- Waveform to Pattern
- Pattern to Waveform

In this conversion, the marker data is always inherited.

Executing File Conversion

This command converts the file you selected in the **EDIT** menu. It is available for any file residing on the hard or floppy disk or a remote file system.

1. Push the **EDIT** button on the front–panel.

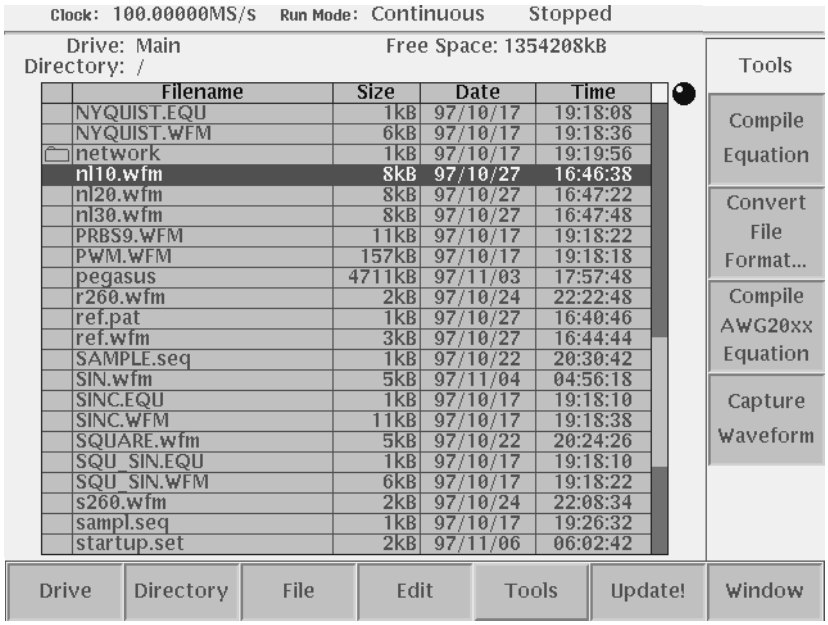


Figure 3–66: Screen and side menu buttons for importing and exporting

2. Select the file you want to convert from the file listing on the screen.

3. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Convert File Format...** (side). A dialog box appears that lets you select the conversion type. See Figure 3–67.

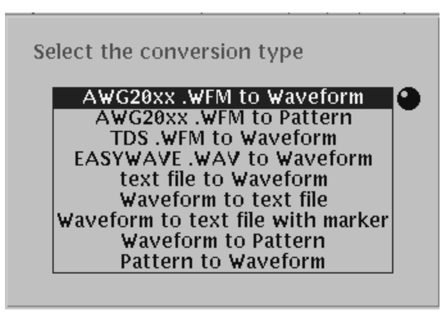


Figure 3–67: Select the conversion type dialog box

4. Select a conversion type using the general purpose knob or the ⏶ or ⏷ button.

5. Push the **OK** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears that lets you specify the converted file name and the destination.

6. Enter a file name and then press **OK** side button.

File Management

This section describes the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator file management commands and conventions.

Command Summary

Table 3–50 lists the available file management commands.

Table 3–50: File utility commands

Commands	Descriptions
Copy	Copies a file
Rename	Renames a file or directory
Delete	Deletes a file or directory
Delete All	Deletes all files and non-empty directories in the current directory
Attribute	Assigns Read/Write or Read Only attribute to a file
Make Directory	Creates an empty directory
Up Level	Moves to the upper level directory
Down Level	Moves down to a selected directory
Drive	Selects a storage drive

Path Name

You can specify a file or directory location using the absolute path or relative path expression. The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator uses the same file expression as used in the UNIX file system. Table 3–51 shows the characters available for specifying direct or indirect path names.

Table 3–51: Special symbols used for expressing file path

Symbols	Descriptions
.	Represents current directory
..	Represents higher level directory
/	Represents top level directory (root directory) or delimiter. If the slush appears at the most-left position in a path, the path represents an absolute path. If the slush appears in the middle of a path, the path represents a relative path.

***NOTE**. You cannot specify the storage drive as part of a file path name. You must use the menu **Drive** buttons to specify a drive.*

File Operations

For file operations, you can select Single Window or Double Windows.

In the Double Windows, you can copy or move a file or all files from currently selected window to the destination specified by the other window. You cannot perform rename, delete, and assigning attribute operations in the Double Windows.

The following text describes how to perform file management tasks in the Single Window. The explanations for file management tasks in the Double Windows follows the Single Window's explanations.

Selecting a Drive

Drives include the instrument hard disk drive, the instrument floppy disk drive, and up to two drives accessible from the instrument over the Ethernet connection. Do the following steps to select a new source or target drive.

1. Push **EDIT** (front–panel)→**Drive** (bottom).
2. Select a storage drive from the side menu.

***NOTE**. The floppy disk file list displayed on the screen does not automatically update when you replace the diskette with another one. To update the file list, re-select the floppy disk drive.*

Moving Directories

Do the following steps to move to a different directory:

1. Push **EDIT** button. As needed, select a drive as referring to *Selecting Drive* described above.

2. Push the **Directory** bottom button.

3. To move a directory up by one level, push the **Up Level** side button.

   To move a directory down by one level, select the directory from the file listing on the screen, and then push the **Down Level** side button.

4. Repeat step 3 until you reach the destination directory.

Making Directory

Do the following steps to create a new directory:

1. Push the **EDIT** button. As needed, select a drive and/or directory as referring to *Moving Directory* described above.

2. Push **Directory** (bottom)→**Make Directory** (side). The Input Filename dialog box appears.

3. Use the Input Filename dialog box to specify the new directory name and/or destination.

Selecting Files

Do the following steps to select a file:

1. Push the **EDIT** button.

2. Select a file from the file listing on the screen using the ⏶ or ⏷ buttons or general purpose knob.

Copying Files

This includes pasting the file and enables you to duplicate it. Specify the duplication's file name and destination. Do the following steps to copy a file:

1. Select a file.

2. Push the **Copy** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears.

3. Use the Input Filename dialog box to specify the duplication's file name and destination. The copied file destination must be on the current drive but can be a different directory.

Renaming Files

Do the following steps to rename a file:

1. Select a file or directory to rename.

2. Push the **Rename** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears.

3. Use the Input Filename dialog box to specify the new file name and the destination.

Deleting One or All Files

Delete deletes the selected file. Delete All clears all files and empty directories contained in the current directory. These commands do not delete any non-empty directories contained in the current directory. Whenever deleting files or directories, the instrument displays a dialog box asking you to confirm the file/directory deletion. Do the following steps to delete one or more files and/or empty directories:

1. Select a file or directory to delete.
2. Push the **Delete** or **Delete All** side button.
3. Push **OK** or **Cancel** (side), depending on the message to confirm deletion.

Moving Files

To move a file between directories or drives, use the **Move** or **Move All** command in the double windows . Refer to Operation in Double Windows on page 3–190 .

Assigning Attribute to Files

Attribute prevents a file or directory from unconditional modifications or deletion. This is made by assigning the **Read Only** or **Read/Write** attribute to the file. After you assign the **Read Only** attribute to the file, a key mark appears on the left of the file listing.

1. Select a file to which you want to assign or change an attribute status. All files are assigned read/write status by default.
2. Push the **Attribute** side button to toggle between **Read/Write** and **Read Only**, as necessary.

File Operation in Double Windows

In the Double Windows, you can also perform drive and directory operations only to the currently selected window as the same procedures as those in the Single Window . Refer to *File Operations* on page 3–186 for the procedures.

When the Window bottom button is displayed, you can divide the file list in the Edit Screen into two as shown in Figure 3–68. This function is called Double Windows.

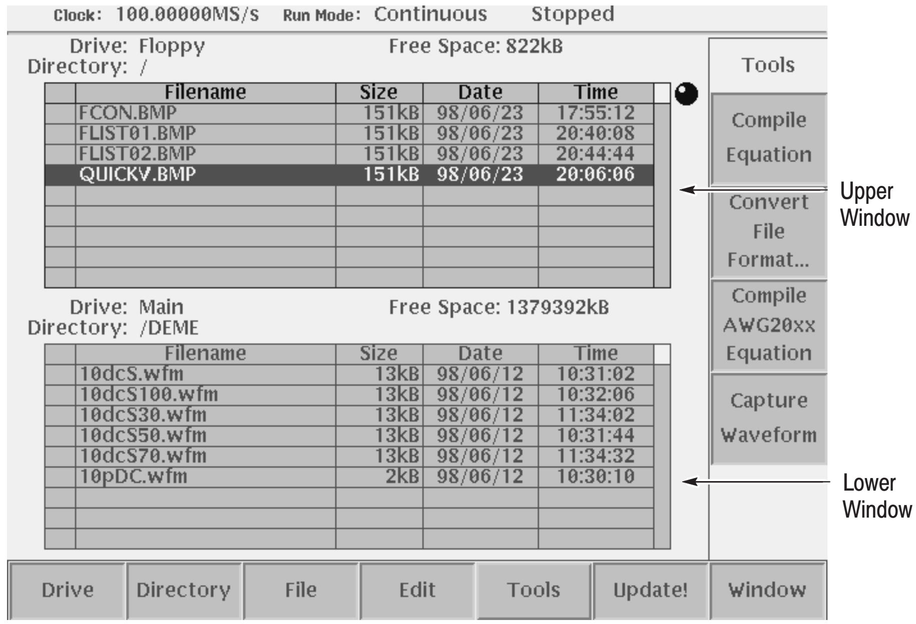


Figure 3–68: Double Windows

In Double Windows, for example, you can display the file list of the hard disk and the one of the floppy disk, or the file list of a directory and the one of an another directory. All the functions invoked from the bottom buttons except the **File** are available.

The most important functions to be used in two file lists displaed at the same time are Copy and Move file operations. The explanation follows Window Operation below.

Window Operation

The windows are named as Upper and Lower windows as indicated in Figure 3–68. You should select a window for operation.

When you push **EDIT** (front) → **Window** (bottom) , the Window side button appears. Push the **Window** side button to select **Double** that causes to display double windows. Push again the **Window** side button to select **Single** that causes to return the display back into the signal file list.

When you display the double windows, the **Select** side button will be available. Push the **Select** side button to select **Upper** for file operation in the upper file list window. Push again the **Select** side button to select **Lower** for file operation in the lower file list window.

Operation in Double Windows

The most usefule functions to be used in the double windows may be those invoked from the **File** bottom button. The functions available in the **File** bottom button is described in Table 3–52.

Table 3–52: File operation in double windows

Operation	Description
Copy	Copies a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Copy All	Copies all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot copy the directory or directory structure.
Move	Moves a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Move All	Moves all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot move the directory or directory structure.

NOTE. You cannot use the **Rename**, **Delete**, **Delete All**, and **Attribute** side buttons unless you display the single file list window.

In copy or move operation, when the files with the same file name exist in the destination, the message *Overwrite existing file <filename>* appears. At the same time, the **Cancel**, **No**, **Yes to All**, and **Yes** side buttons appears. Press any of those side button to proceed the operation.

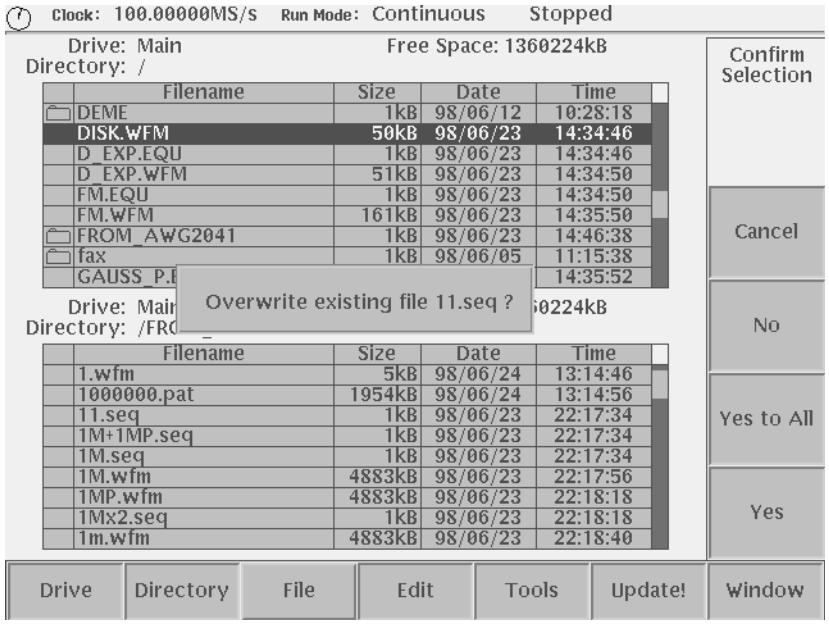


Figure 3-69: Overwrite confirmation

Table 3-53: Cinfirmation selection for copy-all and move-all operations

Side menu	Description
Cancel	Cancels and stops copy or move operation.
No	Skips the copy or move operation for the file indicated in the message.
Yes to All	Overwrites the all files without displaying any messages until the operation is finished.
Yes	Overwrites the file indicated in the message and proceeds the operation.

You cannot copy or move the dirctory. In copy–all or move–all operation, the message *Directory cannot be copied* appears when a directory is being tried to move or copy. Press **OK** side button to confirm and proceed the operation.

FG Mode

The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator provides the Function Generator (FG) mode to output standard function waveforms. This section describes the FG mode.

FG mode signals are created and output using the following process:

- Select the output channel (for multiple output channel models), Select the waveform type.
- Set the output parameters such as frequency and amplitude.
- Turn the OUTPUT button to ON.

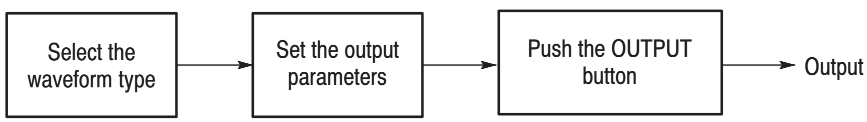


Figure 3–70: Outline flow for producing Function Generator signal

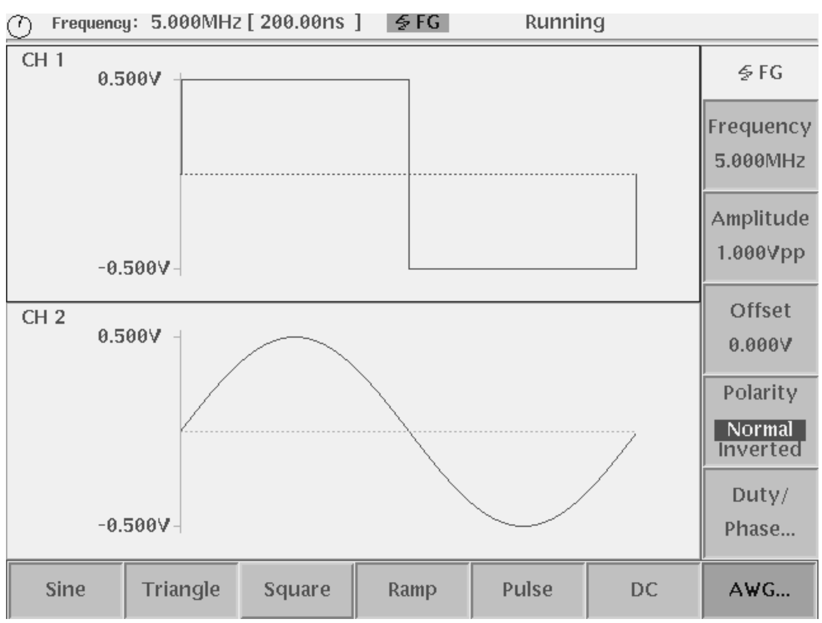


Figure 3–71: FG mode screen (AWG520)

Change the generator mode

AWG mode to FG mode

The instrument initializes in the AWG mode when powered on.

Do the following to change the generator mode from AWG to FG :

1. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→ **Ez FG...** (side) button.

The instrument displays the FG mode screen.

FG mode to AWG mode

Do the following to change the generator mode from FG to AWG :

1. Push **AWG...** (bottom) button.

The instrument returns to the AWG mode.

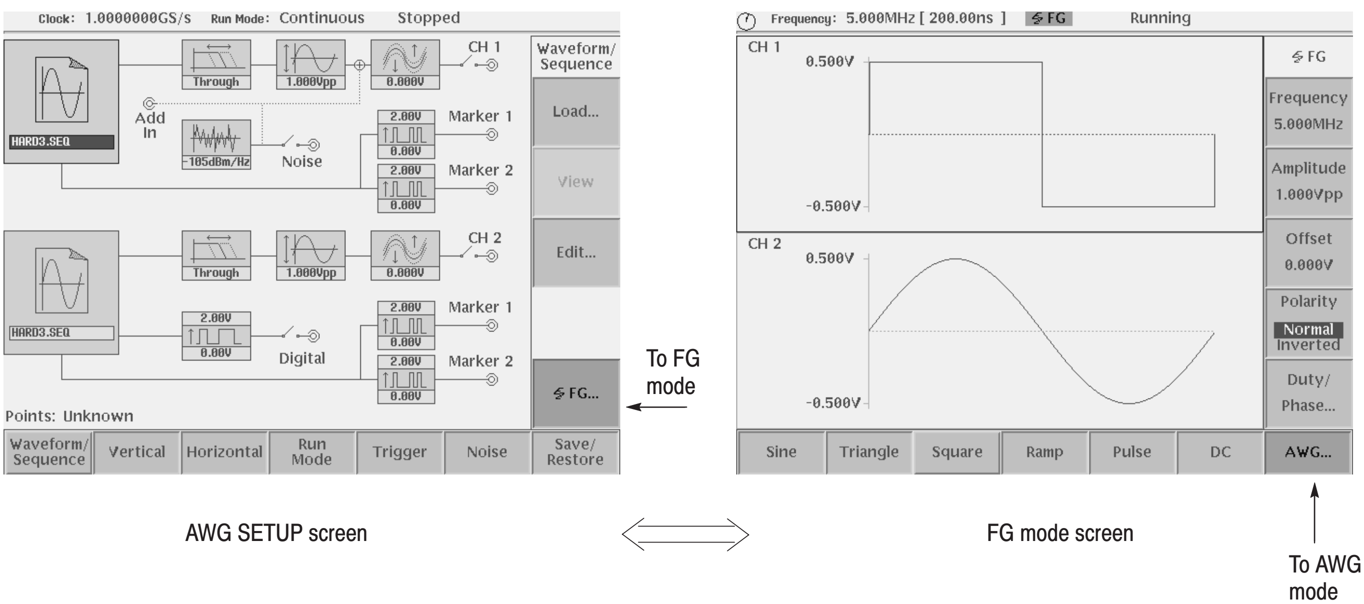


Figure 3–72: Change the generator mode (AWG520)

NOTE*. All the parameters on the FG mode menu are independent of the AWG mode parameters. Therefore, the output parameters, such as frequency, amplitude and offset, have no effect on the parameters set with the SETUP menu while in the other mode.*
In FG mode, the AWG 500 runs CONTINUOUS mode only.

Waveform type

Select the Channel

In the case of multiple channel models, AWG520, select the output channel first. The selected channel area is displayed enclosed in a frame. AWG510 displays only CH 1 waveform.

1. Push **CH1** or **CH2** (front) button to select the output channel.

Select the Waveform type

You can select Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, Pulse and DC waveform.

1. Push **Sine**, **Triangle**, **Square**, **Ramp**, **Pulse** or **DC** (bottom) button to select the desired waveform type.

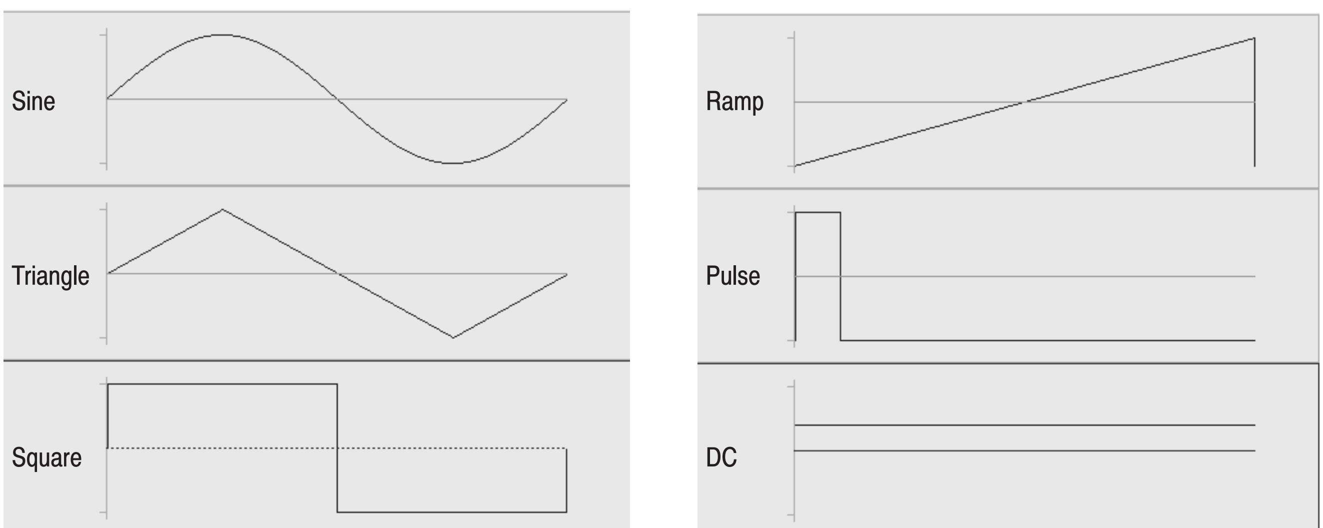


Figure 3–73: Waveform type

Parameters

Output parameters

The output parameter menu selections are the same for each waveform except Pulse and DC. Pulse has one extra side menu item (Duty), and DC has only one side menu item (Offset).

A Multiple channel model, AWG520 , includes Phase side menu selection that allows you to phaseshift each channel's output.

***NOTE**. Frequency is the same for all channels. Amplitude, Offset and Polarity are set separately for each channel.*

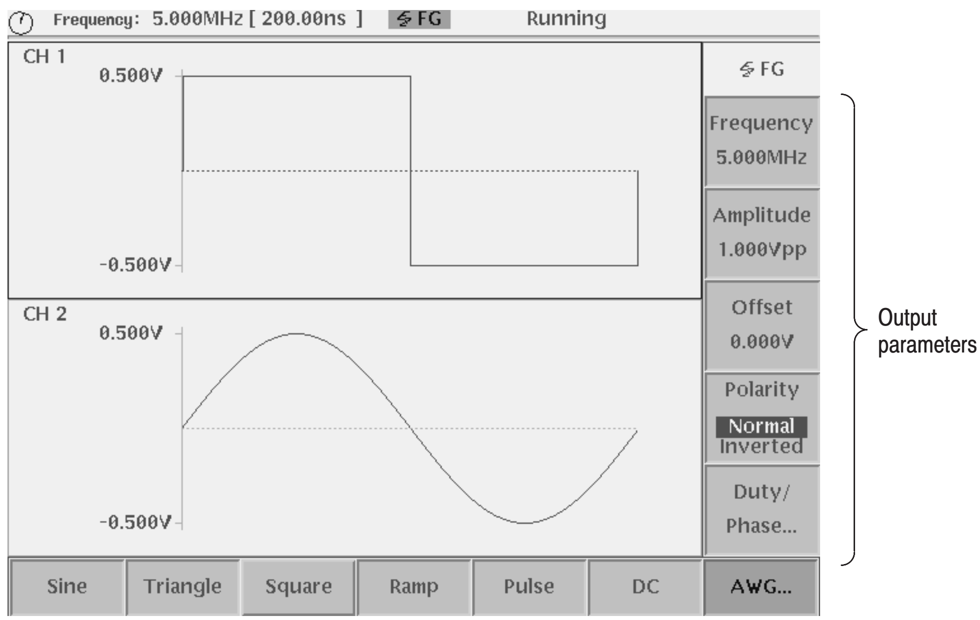


Figure 3–74: Output parameters (AWG520)

Frequency

The frequency is set with a 4-digit number from 1.000 Hz to 100.0 MHz using the SAMPLE RATE / SCALE knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.

The internal cut-off filter used is determined by the waveform type and the frequency selected. The cut-off frequencies are as follows;

Table 3–54: Output frequency and filter cut-off frequency

Waveform type	Output Frequency	Filter Cut–off Frequency
Sine	1.000 Hz to 2.000 MHz	20 MHz
	2.001 MHz to 5.000 MHz	50 MHz
	5.001 Mhz to 20.00 MHz	100 MHz

***NOTE**. In case of the waveform which passed through the filter, there exists timing delay between the start points of waveform and marker.*

Amplitude

The amplitude output voltage range is from 0.020 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ to 2.000 $V_{p\text{-}p}$, in 1 mV increments, terminated into 50 Ω.
Set the waveform amplitude using the LEVEL / SCALE knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.

Offset

The offset range is from –1.000 V to +1.000 V, in 1 mV increments. Use the VERTICAL OFFSET knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob to set the waveform offset level.

Offset is also used for setup of DC level.

Polarity

This menu sets the output waveform polarity. Pushing the Polarity menu button toggles polarity between Normal and Inverted.

Duty

When you select Pulse waveform, Duty...(AWG510) or Duty/Phase... (AWG520) side menu is added. The Duty cycle is set from 0.1% to 99.9% using the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob. Incremental step size depends on the output frequency. Refer to Table 3–56 on page 3–199.

Phase (AWG520 only)

AWG520 have a phase shift function that allows you to shift the waveform horizontally. The Phase is set from –360 degrees to +360 degrees using the HORIZONTAL OFFSET knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob. Incremental step size depends on the output frequency. Refer to Table 3–56 on page 3–199.

Marker signal

Marker1 and Marker2 signals are generated and output from MARKER OUT1 and OUT2 rear connectors. The waveform marker signal has the same form as a pulse waveform. The level and width of the markers are fixed and cannot be changed. Table 3–55 describes the marker specification. Marker width depends on the output frequency. Refer to Table 3–56 on page 3–199.

Table 3–55: Predefined Marker signal

Waveform	Hi	Low	Level
Marker1	0 (phase = 0 deg.) to 20 % of one period of waveform	20 to 100 % of one period of waveform	Hi : 2V into a 50 Ω load Lo : 0V into a 50 Ω load
Marker2	0 (phase = 0 deg.) to 50 % of one period of waveform Frequency 25.01MHz to 40.00MHz 0 (phase = 0 deg.) to 52 % of one period of waveform	50 to 100 % of one period of waveform 52 to 100 % of one period of waveform	

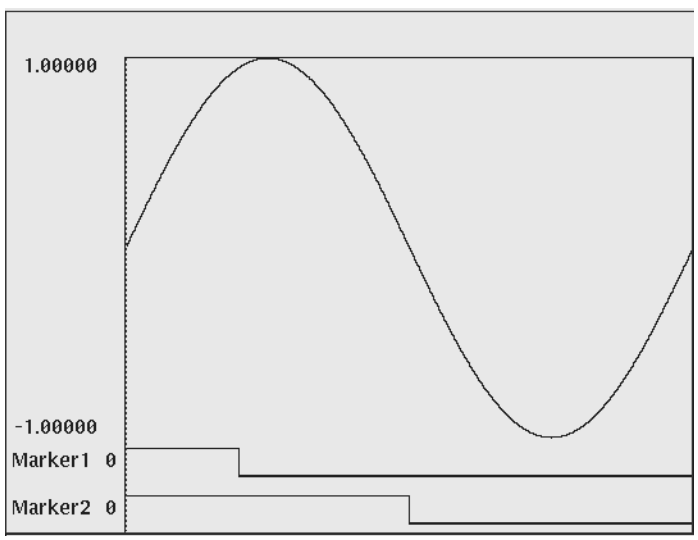


Figure 3–75: Marker pattern

Frequency and Resolution

While operating in FG mode, the output frequency determines the number of data points used to generate the waveform data and the marker data for one period. The resolution of Phase and Pulse Duty ratio and the width of Marker position corresponding to the number of data points are shown in the following table.

Table 3–56: Output Frequency and Waveform Length

Frequency	Number of Data Points	Phase Resolution (degree)	Duty Ratio Resolution (%)	Marker1 position[1]	Marker2 position[2]
1.000Hz to 100.0kHz	10000	0.036	0.1	2000	5000
100.1kHz to 1.000MHz	1000	0.36	0.1	200	500
1.001MHz to 5.000MHz	200	1.8	0.5	40	100
5.001MHz to 10.00MHz	100	3.6	1	20	50
10.01MHz to 20.00MHz	50	7.2	2	10	25
20.01MHz to 25.00MHz	40	9	2.5	8	20
25.01MHz to 40.00MHz	25	14.4	4	5	13[3]
40.01MHz to 50.00MHz	20	18	5	4	10
50.01MHz to 100.0MHz	10	36	10	2	5

1: 20% position of 1 waveform period
2: 50% position of 1 waveform period
3: 52% position of 1 waveform period because of number of data points.

Operation Flow

When the AWG500 is in AWG mode, change to FG mode. Reference page 3–194.

1. Push **CH1** or **CH2** (front–panel) button to select the output channel. (AWG520 only)
2. Push **Sine**, **Triangle**, **Square**, **Ramp**, **Pulse** or **DC** (bottom) button to select the waveform.
3. Set the output parameters according to the waveform selected.
   - Duty is added to the side menu for Pulse mode.
   - Offset is only used for setup of DC level. Offset is selected on the DC side menu.

   AWG520 only

   - Frequency is common to all channels.
   - Phase is added on the side menu.
   - Amplitude, Offset, Polarity and Phase can be set for each channel

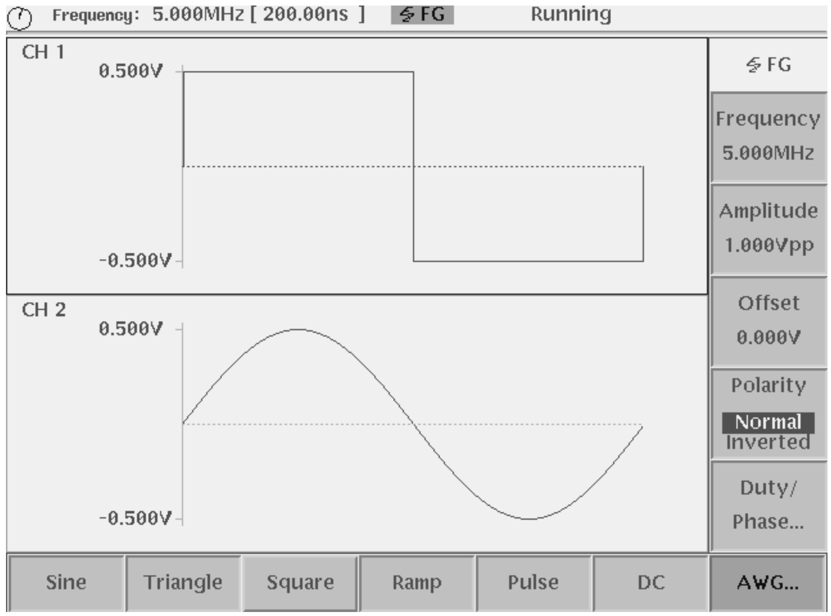


Figure 3–76: Pulse sub-side menu (AWG520)

4. Push the **RUN** (front) button to turn on the RUN LED. Usually, when it switches to FG mode from AWG mode, it automatically changes to the run state (the RUN LED is on).

5. Push the **CH**(**1 or 2**) **OUT** button to output the signal at the corresponding output connector.

Appendix A: Specifications

This section contains the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generator specifications. All specifications are guaranteed unless labeled "typical". Typical specifications are provided for your convenience but are not guaranteed.

Specifications that are marked with the ✓ asterisk (*) symbol in the column Characteristics are checked in *Appendix B: Performance Verification* and the page number referenced to the corresponding performance verification procedures can be found in the column PV reference page.

The characteristics in the specifications are listed in tables that are divided into categories. In these tables, the subcategories may also appear in boldface under the column Characteristics.

Performance Conditions

The performance limits in this specification are valid with these conditions:

- The Waveform Generator must have been calibrated/adjusted at an ambient temperature between +20 °C to +30 °C.
- The Waveform Generator must be in an environment with temperature, altitude, humidity, and vibration within the operating limits described in these specifications.
- The Waveform Generator must have had a warm-up period of at least 20 minutes.
- The Waveform Generator must be operating at an ambient temperature between +10 °C to +40 °C.

Electrical Specification

Table A–1: Operation modes

Characteristics	Description
Continuous	Waveform is continuously output in this mode. When a sequence is defined, waveforms are sequentially or repeatedly output in the order defined by the sequence. The extended sequence functions such as trigger input, event jump, etc. are neglected in this mode.
Triggered	Waveform is output only once when a trigger event is created. A trigger signal is created by the external trigger input signal, GPIB trigger command, and/or pressing the front–panel FORCE TRIGGER button. The extended sequence functions such as trigger input, event jump, etc. are neglected in this mode.
Gated	The waveform is output as the same way as in the continuous mode only when the gate is opened. The gate is opened by the gated signal. Note that the output is made from the top of the first waveform for every gate periode. The clock signal continuously output from the connector even outside the gate periode.
Enhanced	The waveforms are sequentially or repeatedly output according to the procedures defined in the sequence. All extended functions such as trigger input, event jump, etc. are effective and waveforms are controlled for output by this functions in this mode.

Table A–2: Arbitrary waveforms

Characteristics	Description	
Waveform memory	Memory length: 4 194 048 words (10 bits/1 word)	
Marker memory	Memory length:	
	AWG510	4 194 048 words (2 markers × 1 bit / 1 word)
	AWG520	4 194 048 words (4 markers × 1 bit / 1 word)
Sequence memory	Maximum 8000 steps The sequence operates for both CH1 and CH2 in the AWG520.	
Sequence counter	1 to 65 536, or Infinite	
Waveform data points	Multiple of 4 in the range from 256 to 4 194 048 points	

Table A–3: Clock generator

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Sampling frequency	50.000 000 kHz to 1.000 000 0 GHz	
Resolution	8 digits	
Internal clock [1]		
* Frequency accuracy	± 1 ppm (25 ¿), during 1 year after calibration	Page B–20
Phase noise, Typical	–80 dBc / Hz (1 GHz with 10 kHz offset) –100 dBc/Hz (1 GHz with 100 kHz offset)	

1 **The internal reference oscillator is used.**

Table A–4: Internal trigger generator

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Internal trigger rate [2]		
* Accuracy	± 0.1%	Page B–35
Range	1.0 μs to 10.0 s	
Resolution	3 digits, minimum 0.1 μs	

2 **The internal reference oscillator is used.**

Table A–5: Main output

Characteristics [3]	Description	PV reference page
Output connector	front–panel BNC connectors	
Output signal		
AWG510	Complemental; CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$	
AWG520	Single-ended; CH1 and CH2	
DA converter		
Differential non-linearity	Within 1 bit	
Integral non-linearity	Within 1 bit	
Resolution	10 bits	
Output impedance	50 Ω	

Table A–5: Main output (Cont.)

Characteristics [3]	Description	PV reference page
Normal out		
Output voltage	–2.0 V to +2.0V, into a 50 Ω load	
Amplitude		
Range	20 mV_{p-p} to 2 V_{p-p}, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
* DC accuracy	± (1.5 % of amplitude + 2 mV), offset: 0 V	Page B–22
Offset		
Range	–1.000 V to 1.000 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
* Offset accuracy	± (1 % of offset + 10 mV), 20 mV amplitude (waveform data: 0)	Page B–22
Reverse power protection	Up to 0.4 W	
* Pulse response	(Waveform data: –1 and 1, offset: 0 V, and filter: through)	Page B–30
Rise time (10 % to 90 %)	≦ 2.5 ns (amplitude > 1.0 V_{p-p}) ≦ 1.5 ns (amplitude ≦ 1.0 V_{p-p})	
Fall time (10 % to 90 %)	≦ 2.5 ns (amplitude > 1.0 V_{p-p}) ≦ 1.7 ns (amplitude ≦ 1.0 V_{p-p})	
* Aberration	(500 MHz Bandwidth) ± 10 % (amplitude > 1.0 V_{p-p}) ± 7 % (amplitude ≦ 1.0 V_{p-p})	Page B–30
* Flatness	± 3 % (after 50 ns from rise and fall edges)	Page B–30
Small signal bandwidth, Typical	300 MHz (–3 dB, amplitude fixed to 0.5 V)	
* Sinewave characteristics (CH1 and CH2)	(Clock: 1 GHz, waveform points: 32, frequency: 31.25 MHz, amplitude: 1.0 V, offset: 0 V, filter: through)	
Harmonics	≦ –50 dBc (DC to 400 MHz)	Page B–33
Noise	≦ –53 dBc (DC to 400 MHz)	Page B–33
Phase Noise	≦ –90 dBc / Hz (10 kHz offset)	

Table A–5: Main output (Cont.)

Characteristics [3]	Description	PV reference page
Direct DA out		
Output voltage	0.5 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ (with –0.27 V offset), into a 50 Ω load	
* DC accuracy		Page B–26
Amplitude	0.5 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ ± 10 %	
DC offset	–0.27 V ± 10 %	
* Pulse response	(Waveform data: –1 and 1)	Page B–30
Rise time (10 % to 90 %)	≦ 700 ps	
Fall time (10 % to 90 %)	≦ 700 ps	

[3] **The characteristics are specified at the end of the BNC cable (012-0482-00).**

Table A–6: Filter

Characteristics	Description	
Type	Bessel low pass filter, 100 MHz, 50 MHz, 20 MHz, and 10 MHz	
Rise time (10 % to 90 %)	10 MHz 20 MHz 50 MHz 100 MHz	35 ns 17 ns 7.0 ns 3.5 ns
Delay from trigger	10 MHz 20 MHz 50 MHz 100 MHz Through	77 ns + 1 clock 57 ns + 1 clock 47 ns + 1 clock 42 ns + 1 clock 37 ns + 1 clock
	See Figure A–2 for T_{d1}	

Table A–7: Auxiliary outputs

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Marker [4]		
Number of markers		
AWG510	2 (Note that the markers are not additionally installed even when the Option 03 is installed.)	
AWG520	4	
Level (Hi/Lo)	–2.0 V to +2.0 V, into a 50 Ω load –4.0 V to +4.0 V, into a 1 MΩ load	
Resolution	0.05 V	
* Accuracy	Within ± (0.1 V +5 % of setting)	B–55
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 %), Typical	0.5 ns (1 V_{p-p}, Hi: +0.5 V, Lo: –0.5 V) 1.0 ns (2 V_{p-p},Hi: +1 V, Lo: –1 V) 2.0 ns (4 $Vp-_{p}$, Hi: +2 V, Lo: –2 V)	
Variable delay		
Range	0 ns to +2 ns	
Resolution	20 ps	
Period jitter	Measured by TDS694C with options 1M and HD and TDSJIT1	
Typical	Refer to Table A–8.	
Cycle to cycle jitter	Measured by TDS694C with options 1M and HD and TDSJIT1	
Typical	Refer to Table A–9.	
Marker skew[4]	32 ps	
Connector	Rear panel SMB connectors	
Offset		
Clock out [5]		
Level	ECL 100 K compatible (internally loaded in 50 Ω to –2 V and 43 Ω series terminated)	
Period jitter	Measured by TDS694C with options 1M and HD and TDSJIT1	
Typical	Refer to Table A–10.	
Cycle to cycle jitter	Measured by TDS694C with options 1M and HD and TDSJIT1	
Typical	Refer to Table A–11.	
Connector	Rear panel BNC connectors	

Table A–7: Auxiliary outputs (Cont.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Noise [5]		
Level	–145 dBm / Hz to –105 dBm / Hz	
Attenuator	1 dB step	
Accuracy	± 2.5 dB (at 100 MHz, –105 dBm/Hz)	
Connector	Rear panel BNC connectors	
Type	Gaussian	

4 **The characteristics are specified at the end of the SMB–BNC cable (012-1459-00).**

5 **The characteristics are specified at the end of the BNC cable (012-0482-00).**

Table A–8: Period JItter (CH1 MARKER1 OUT)

Clock	1 GS/s		800 MS/s		400 MS/s	
Measurement	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
AWG520	6.0 ps	42.0 ps	5.0 ps	30.0 ps	4.5 ps	26.0 ps
AWG520 OP3	6.0 ps	42.0 ps	5.0 ps	30.0 ps	4.5 ps	26.0 ps
AWG510	5.0 ps	35.0 ps	5.0 ps	30.0 ps	4.5 ps	26.0 ps
AWG510 OP3	6.0 ps	42.0 ps	5.0 ps	30.0 ps	4.5 ps	26.0 ps

Table A–9: Cycle to Cycle JItter (CH1 MARKER1 OUT)

Clock	1 GS/s		800 MS/s		400 MS/s	
Measurement	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
AWG520	9.5 ps	70.0 ps	9.0 ps	55.0 ps	8.0 ps	50.0 ps
AWG520 OP3	9.5 ps	70.0 ps	9.0 ps	55.0 ps	8.0 ps	50.0 ps
AWG510	8.5 ps	60.0 ps	8.0 ps	55.0 ps	8.0 ps	50.0 ps
AWG510 OP3	9.5 ps	70.0 ps	9.0 ps	55.0 ps	8.0 ps	50.0 ps

Table A–10: Period JItter (CLOCK OUT)

Clock	1 GS/s		800 MS/s		400 MS/s	
Measurement	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
AWG520	11.0 ps	42.0 ps	11.0 ps	42.0 ps	11.0 ps	42.0 ps
AWG520 OP3	14.0 ps	50.0 ps	14.0 ps	50.0 ps	14.0 ps	50.0 ps
AWG510	5.5 ps	30.0 ps	5.5 ps	30.0 ps	5.5 ps	30.0 ps
AWG510 OP3	11.0 ps	75.0 ps	11.0 ps	50.0 ps	11.0 ps	50.0 ps

Table A–11: Cycle to Cycle JItter (CLOCK OUT)

Clock	1 GS/s		800 MS/s		400 MS/s	
Measurement	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
AWG520	18.0 ps	82.0 ps	18.0 ps	82.0 ps	18.0 ps	82.0 ps
AWG520 OP3	22.0 ps	86.0 ps	22.0 ps	86.0 ps	22.0 ps	86.0 ps
AWG510	9.0 ps	52.0 ps	9.0 ps	52.0 ps	9.0 ps	52.0 ps
AWG510 OP3	20.0 ps	125.0 ps	18.0 ps	90.0 ps	18.0 ps	90.0 ps

Table A–12: Digital data out (option 03)

Characteristics [6]	Description	PV reference page
Output signal	D0 to D9	
Connector	Rear panel SMB connectors	
Level		
Hi/Lo	–2.0 V to +2.0 V, into a 50 Ω load –4.0 V to +4.0 V, into a 1 MΩ load	
Resolution	0.05 V	
* Accuracy	Within ± (0.1 V +5 % of setting)	B–62
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 %), Typical	0.5 ns (1 V_{p-p}, Hi: +0.5 V, Lo: –0.5 V) 1.0 ns (2 V_{p-p},Hi: +1 V, Lo: –1 V) 2.0 ns (4 V_{p-p}, Hi: +2 V, Lo: –2 V)	
*Skew between data	330 ps ≦ 1 ns	B–64

Table A–12: Digital data out (option 03) (Cont.)

Characteristics [6]	Description	PV reference page
Delay		
Data to marker	4.4 ns See Figure A–2 for T_{d5}.	
Clock to data	3.7 ns See Figure A–2 for T_{d6}.	

[6] **The characteristics are specified at the end of the SMB–BNC cable (012-1459-00).**

Table A–13: Auxiliary inputs

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Trigger input [7]		
Connector	Rear panel BNC connectors	
Impedance	50 Ω ± 2 Ω 1 kΩ ± 100 Ω	
Polarity	POS (positive) or NEG (negative)	
Input voltage range	± 10 V, into a 1 kΩ load ± 5 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Threshold		
Level	–5.0 V to 5.0 V	
Resolution	0.1 V	
* Accuracy	± (5 % of level + 0.1 V)	Page B–37
Pulse width	Minimum 10 ns, 0.2 V amplitude	
Trigger dead time	Maximum 500 ns	
Trigger jitter	Maximum 1.6 ns	
Gate jitter	Maximum 32 clocks	
Delay to marker, Typical	30 ns + 1 clock See Figure A–2 for T_{d2}	
Delay to data, Typical		
TRIGGER mode	37 ns + 1 clock See Figure A–2 for T_{d1}.	
GATE mode	Minimum 45 ns + 358.5 clocks Miaximum 45 ns + 430.5 clocks	
Event trigger input		
Connector	9-pin, D type on the rear panel	
Number of events	4 bits	
Input signal	4 event bits and Strobe	

Table A–13: Auxiliary inputs (Cont.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Threshold	TTL level	
Pulse width	Minimum 64 clocks	
Input voltage range	0 V to +5 V (DC + peak AC)	
Impedance	2.2 kΩ, pull-up to +5 V	
Delay to analog out	≦ 462.5 clocks + 45 ns	
Recovery Time	Miaximum 500 clock	
CH1 ADD input		
Connector	Rear panel BNC connector	
Input voltage range	–1 V to +1 V (DC + peak AC)	
Impedance	50 Ω	
Bandwidth	DC to 200 MHz (–3 dB), 1 Vp-p input	
Amplitude accuracy	±5 % **NOTE**: CH1 output cannot exceed ±2 V (into a 50 Ω load).	
Reference 10 MHz clock input		
Connector	Rear panel BNC connector	
Input voltage range	0.2 V to 3.0 Vp-p (into a 50 Ω load, AC coupling) Maximum ±10 V	
Impedance	50 Ω	
Reference frequency	10 MHz ±0.1 MHz	
External clock input		
Connector	Rear panel BNC connector	
Input voltage range	0.25 V_{p-p} to 1.0 V_{p-p} (into a 50 Ω load, AC coupling) Maximum ±10 V	
Impedance	50 Ω	
Frequency range	10 MHz to 1 GHz	
Duty ration	40% to 60%	
Pulse width	Minimum 0.5 ns	

[7] **The characteristics are specified at the end of the BNC cable (012-0482-00).**

Table A-14: Funcion Generator (FG)

Characteristics	Description	
Operation Mode	Continuous mode only	
Waveform Shape	Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, Pulse, DC	
Frequency	1.000 Hz to 100.0 MHz	
Amplitude		
Range	0.020 V_{p-p} to 2.000 V_{p-p}, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
Offset		
Range	–1.000 V to +1.000 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
DC Level	DC waveform only	
Range	–1.000 V to +1.000 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
Phase	AWG520 only	
Range	–360 degree to +360 degree	
Resolution	Frequency	Resolution
	1.000 Hz to 100.0 kHz	0.036 degree
	100.1 kHz to 1.000 MHz	0.36 degree
	1.001 MHz to 5.000 MHz	1.8 degree
	5.001 MHz to 10.00 MHz	3.6 degree
	10.01 MHz to 20.00 MHz	7.2 degree
	20.01 MHz to 25.00 MHz	9.0 degree
	25.01 MHz to 40.00 MHz	14.4 degree
	40.01MHz to 50.00 MHz	18.0 degree
	50.01MHz to 100.0 MHz	36.0 degree
Polarity	Normal, Inverted	
Duty	Pulse waveform only	
Range	0.1 % to 99.9 %	
Resolution	Frequency	Resolution
	1.000 Hz to 1.000MHz	0.1 %
	1.001MHz to 5.000 MHz	0.5 %
	5.001 MHz to 10.00 MHz	1.0 %
	10.01 MHz to 20.00 MHz	2.0 %
	20.01 MHz to 25.00 MHz	2.5 %
	25.01 MHz to 40.00 MHz	4.0 %
	40.01 MHz to 50.00 MHz	5.0 %
	50.01 MHz to 100.00 MHz	10.0 %
Marker Out		
Pulse Width		
Mrker1	Hi : 0 % to 20 % of 1 waveform period Lo : 20% to 100 % of 1 waveform period	

Characteristics	Description
Marker2	Hi : 0 % to 50 % of 1 waveform period Lo : 50 % to 100 % of 1 waveform period Hi : 0 % to 52 % of 1 waveform period Lo : 52 % to 100 % of 1 waveform period at frequency range is 25.01MHz to 40.00MHz
Level	
Hi	Hi : 2V into a 50 Ω load
Lo	Lo : 0V into a 50 Ω load

Table A–15: Display

Characteristics	Description	
Display		
Display area	Horizontal	13.2 cm (5.2 in)
	Vertical:	9.9 cm (3.9 in)
Resolution	640 (H) × 480 (V) pixels	

Table A–16: Timer

Characteristics	Description
Timer	
Operation life	6 years
Type	Li 3 V, 190 mAh

Table A–17: AC line power

Characteristics	Description	
Rating voltage	100 VAC to 240 VAC	
Voltage Range	90 VAC to 250 VAC, continuous range, CAT II	
Source frequency	48.0 Hz to 63 Hz (voltage range from 100 VAC to 240 VAC)	
Maximum consumption	AWG510 (Standard)	400 W
	AWG520	600 W
Maximum current	AWG510 (Standard)	5 A
	AWG520	8 A
Fuse rating	10 A FAST, 250 V, UL 198G (3 AG) 5 A (T), 250 V, IEC 127	

Table A–18: Interface connectors

Characteristics	Description
GPIB	24-pin, IEEE 488.1 connector on the rear panel
Ethernet	10BASE-T, RJ-45 connector on the rear panel
Keyboard connector	6-pin, mini-DIN connector on the rear panel

Mechanical Specification

Table A-19: Mechanical

Characteristics	Description	
Net weight	17 kg (37.5 lb) (AWG520)	
Dimensions	Height	178 mm (7.0 in) 194 mm (7.64 in) with Feet
	Width	422 mm (16.6 in) 434 mm (17.1 in) with Handle
	Length	560 mm (22.0 in) 602 mm (23.71 in) with Rear Feet

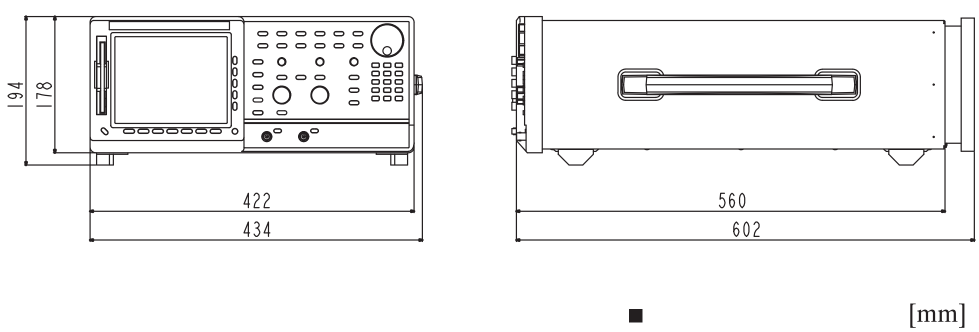


Figure A-1: Dimensions

Environmental Specification

Table A–20: Installation requirement

Characteristics	Description	
Heat dissipation		
Maximum power	600 W (maximum line current: 8 Arms, at 50 Hz)	
Surge Current	30 A (25 °C) peak for equal to or less than 5 line cycles, after the instrument has been turned off for at least 30s	
Cooling clearance	Bottom	2 cm (0.8 in) ***NOTE:*** *The feet on the bottom provides the required clearance when set on a flat surface.*
	Sides	15 cm (6 in)
	Rear	7.5 cm (3 in)

Table A–21: Environmental

Characteristics	Description
Atmospherics	
Temperature	
Operating	+10 °C to +40 °C
Non-operating	–20 °C to +60 °C
Relative humidity	
Operating	20 % to 80 % (no condensation) Maximum wet-bulb temperature 29.4 °C
Non-operating	5 % to 90 % (no condensation) Maximum wet-bulb temperature 40.0 °C
Altitude	
Operating	Up to 3 km (10 000 ft) Maximum operating temperature decreases 1 °C each 300 m (1 000 ft) above 1.5 km (5 000 ft)
Non-operating	Up to 12 km (40 000 ft)
Dynamics	
Random vibration	
Operating	2.646 m/s^2 rms (0.27 Grms), from 5 Hz to 500 Hz, 10 minutes
Non-operating	22.344 m/s^2 rms (2.28 Grms), from 5 Hz to 500 Hz, 10 minutes
Shock	
Non-operating	294 m/s^2 (30 G), half-sine, 11 ms duration

Certification and Compliances

The certification and compliances for the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generator are listed in Table A–22.

Table A–22: Certifications and compliances

EC declaration of conformity	EC council EMC Directive 89/336/EEC, amended by 89/336/EEC; EN61326–1: 1997 Product Family Standard for Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control, and Laboratory Use–EMC Requirements. Emissions: EN 55011 Class A — Radiated and Conducted emissions EN 61000-3-2 — Power Line Harmonic Immunity: EN 61000-4-2 — Electrostatic Discharge Immunity EN 61000-4-3 — Radiated RF Electromagnetic Field Immunity EN 61000-4-4 — Electrical Fast Transient/Burst Immunity EN 61000-4-5 — Surge Immunity EN 61000-4-6 — Conducted Disturbances Induced by RF Field Immunity EN 61000-4-11 — Power Line Interruption Immunity Compliance was demonstrated to the following specification as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities: Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, ammended by 93/68/EEC EN 61010-1/A2:1995 — Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use
EC Declaration of Conformity – Low Voltage	Compliance was demonstrated to the following specification as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities: Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, amended by 93/68/EEC EN 61010-1/A2:1995 — Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use
FCC compliance	FCC Code of Federal Regulations, 47 CFR, Part 15, Subpart B, Class A
Australian/New Zealand declaration of Conformity - EMC	Complies with EMC provision of Radio–communications Act per the following standard: AS/NZS 2064.1/2 — Industrial, Scientific, and Medical Equipment: 1992
Approvals	Complies with the following safety standards: UL3111–1, First Edition — Standard for electrical measuring and test equipment. CAN/CSA C22.2 No.1010.1-92 — Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use.

Table A–22: Certifications and compliances (Cont.)

Installation category Description	Terminals on this product may have different installation (over–voltage) category designations. The installation categories are:	
	Category	*Examples of products in this category*
	CAT III	Distribution-level mains (usually permanently connected). Equipment at this level is typically in a fixed industrial location
	CAT II	Local-level mains (wall sockets). Equipment at this level includes appliances, portable tools, and similar products. Equipment is usually cord-connected
	CAT I	Secondary (signal level) or battery operated circuits of electronic equipment
Pollution degree	A measure of the contaminates that could occur in the environment around and within a product. Typically the internal environment inside a product is considered to be the same as the external. Products should be used only in the environment for which they are rated.	
	Pollution Degree 2	Normally only dry, nonconductive pollution occurs. Occasionally a temporary conductivity that is caused by condensation must be expected. This location is a typical office/home environment. Temporary condensation occurs only when the product is out of service.
Conditions of Approval	Safety Certifications/Compliances are made for the following conditions: Altitude (maximum operation): 2000 meters	
IEC Characteristics	Equipment type: Test and Measuring Installation Category II (as defined in IEC 61010–1, Annex J) Pollution Degree 2 (as defined in IEC 61010–1) Safety Class I (as defined in IEC 61010–1, Annex H)	

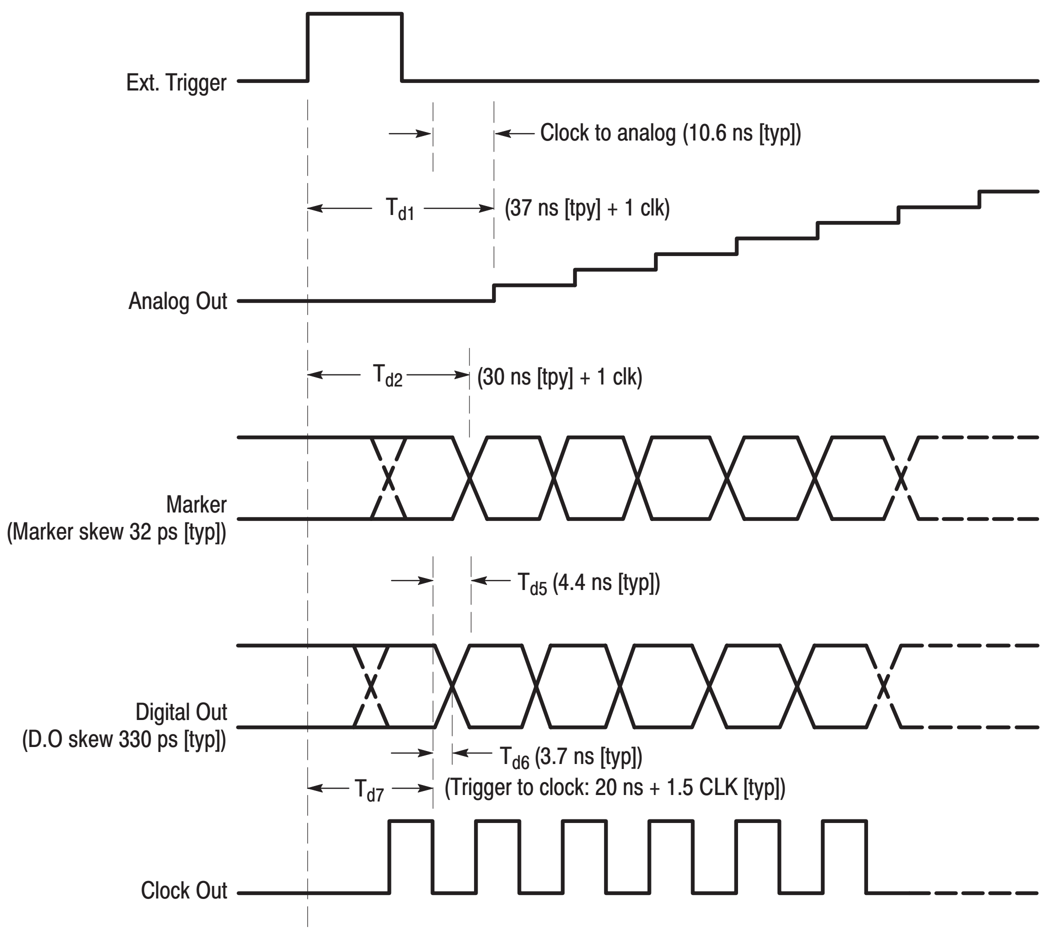


Figure A-2: Signal timing

Appendix B: Performance Verification

Two types of Performance Verification procedures can be performed on this product: *SelfTests* and *Performance Tests*. You may not need to perform all of these procedures, depending on what you want to accomplish.

- To rapidly confirm that the Waveform Generator functions and was adjusted properly, just do the *Self Tests*, which begin on page B–3.

  Advantages: These procedures require minimal additional time to perform, require no additional equipment, and more completely test the internal hardware of the Waveform Generator. They can be used to quickly determine if the waveform generator is suitable for putting into service, such as when it is first received.

- If more extensive confirmation of performance is desired, do the *Performance Tests*, beginning on page B–7, after doing the *Self Tests* just referenced.

  Advantages: These procedures add direct checking of warranted specifications. They require more time to perform and suitable test equipment is required. (Refer to *Equipment Required* on page B–8).

Conventions

Throughout these procedures the following conventions apply:

- Each test procedure uses the following general format:

  Title of Test

  Equipment Required

  Prerequisites

  Procedure

- Each procedure consists of as many steps, substeps, and subparts as required to do the test. Steps, substeps, and subparts are sequenced as follows:

  1. First Step

  a. First Substep

  - First Subpart
  - Second Subpart

  b. Second Substep

  2. Second Step

- Instructions for menu selection on follow this format: **front–panel BUTTON→Main Menu Button→Side Menu Button**. For example, "Push **UTILITY→System→Reset to Factory→OK**"
- In steps and substeps, the lead-in statement in italics instructs you what to do, while the instructions that follow tell you how to do it, as in the example step below, *"Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls"* by doing "Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Reset to Factory** (side)→**OK** (side). Now, push the front–panel menu button...".
- Where instructed to use a front-panel button or knob, or select from a bottom or side menu, the name of the button or knob appears in boldface type: "push **EDIT**; then **Drive...**, push **Floppy** side button and use the knob to select the waveform file **SINE.WFM** from the file list."

STOP. *The symbol at the left is accompanied by information you must read to do the procedure properly.*

Self Tests

The *Self Tests* use internal routines to confirm basic functionality and proper adjustment. No test equipment is required to do these test procedures.

The self tests include internal diagnostics to verify that the instrument passes the internal circuit tests, and calibration routines to check and adjust the instrument internal calibration constants.

Diagnostics

This procedure uses internal routines to verify that the instrument functions and was adjusted properly. No test equipment or hookups are required.

The instrument automatically performs the internal diagnostics at power-on; you can also run the internal diagnostics using the menu selections described in this procedure. The difference between these two methods of initiating the diagnostics is that the menu method does more detailed memory checking than the power-on method.

Equipment required	None
Prerequisites	Power on the instrument and allow a twenty-minute warmup period before doing this procedure.

1. *Confirm that no output is performed:* Confirm that the RUN LED does not light. If not, push the **RUN** button so that the RUN LED goes off.
2. *Verify that internal diagnostics pass:* Do the following substeps to verify passing of internal diagnostics.

   a. *Display the diagnostics menu and select all tests*:

      - Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Diag** (bottom)→**Diagnostic All** (side).
      - If All is not displayed, select All using the general purpose knob.

      The screen as shown in Figure B–1 appears.

      The list on the screen shows the test items and results in the calibration and diagnostics previously made. For the diagnostics, in addition to selecting all of the test items shown on the screen, you can select only a test item that you want to run using the general purpose knob. The result of the diagnostics are shown as error code. Pass means that the tests have been made without error. If an error is detected, error code is displayed.

You can also specify how many times the diagnostic tests are performed. Push the **Cycle** side button and then turn the general purpose knob to select the cycle from 1, 3, 10, 100 or Infinite. When you select Infinite, the tests are repeatedly performed, and are not be terminated until you push the **Abort Diagnostic** side button.

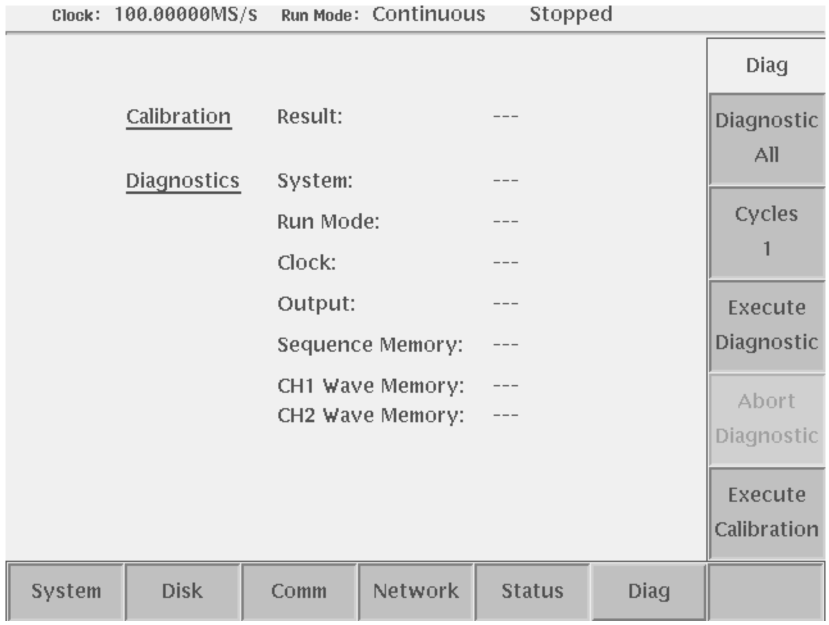


Figure B–1: Diagnostic menu

b. *Run the diagnostics*: Push the **Execute Diagnostic** side button. This executes all the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator diagnostics automatically.

c. *Wait*: The internal diagnostics do an extensive verification of AWG500-Series Waveform Generator functions. While this verification progresses, the screen displays the clock icon. When finished, the resulting status appears on the screen.

d. *Confirm that no failures are found*: Verify that no failures are found and reported on-screen. If the diagnostics terminates without error, Pass is displayed instead of the **- - -**. If a value is displayed, meaning an error is detected, consult a qualified service technician for further assistance.

3. *Return to regular service*: Push any bottom or menu button (other than **UTILITY**) to exit the diagnostic screen.

Calibration

The instrument includes internal calibration routines that check electrical characteristics such as offset, attenuations and filters. Perform calibration to adjust internal calibration constants as necessary. This procedure describes how to do the internal calibration.

Equipment required	None
Prerequisites	Power on the instrument and allow a 20 minute warmup period at an ambient temperature between +20 °C and +30 °C before doing this procedure.

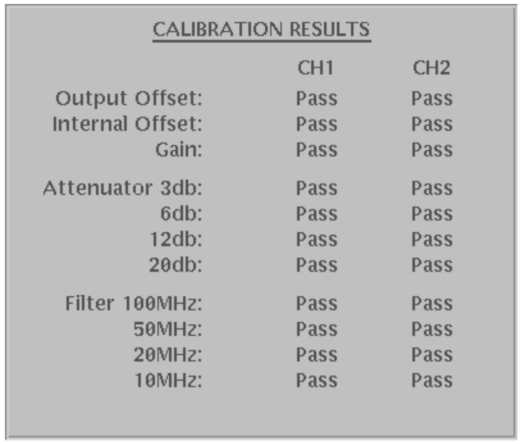
1. *Confirm that no output is performed:* Confirm that the RUN LED does not light. If not, push the **RUN** button so that the RUN LED goes off.

***NOTE**. When you start calibration while the output is being performed, some calibration items may be failed.*

2. *Verify that internal adjustments pass:* Do the following substeps to verify passing of internal adjustments.

   a. *Run the adjustments routine*: Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**Diag** (bottom)→ **Execute Calibration** (side). This executes the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator calibration routines automatically.

   b. *Wait*: The internal calibration does an exhaustive verification of proper AWG500-Series Waveform Generator function. While this verification progresses, the message box displaying *Executing Calibration* appear on screen. When finished, the resulting status will appear in the message box as shown in Figure B–2.



CALIBRATION RESULTS

	CH1	CH2
Output Offset:	Pass	Pass
Internal Offset:	Pass	Pass
Gain:	Pass	Pass
Attenuator 3db:	Pass	Pass
6db:	Pass	Pass
12db:	Pass	Pass
20db:	Pass	Pass
Filter 100MHz:	Pass	Pass
50MHz:	Pass	Pass
20MHz:	Pass	Pass
10MHz:	Pass	Pass

Figure B–2: Calibration result message box

c. *Confirm that no failures are found*: Verify that no failures are found and reported in the message box. If the calibration displays **Fail** as the result, consult a qualified service technician for further assistance.

3. *Return to regular service*: Push the **OK** side button and then any bottom or menu button (other than the **UTILITY**) to exit the diag screen.

NOTE. *When the instrument is powered off while the calibrations is executed, the calibration data in the memory may be loss.*

Performance Tests

This section contains a collection of procedures for checking that the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator performance as warranted.

The procedures are arranged in fifteen logical groupings, presented in the following order:

Table B–1: Performance test items

Titles	See (performance verification)	Test items	See (specifications)
Operating mode tests	Page B–13	Continuous, Triggered, and Gated mode normality	
Clock frequency tests	Page B–20	Clock frequency accuracy	Page A–3
Amplitude and offset accuracy tests (normal out)	Page B–22	Amplitude accuracy, and DC offset accuracy	Page A–4
Amplitude, DC offset and rise time accuracy tests (direct DA out)	Page B–26	Amplitude accuracy, DC offset accuracy and Rise time accuracy	Page A–5
Pulse response tests	Page B–30	Rise time accuracy, Abberation, and Flatness	Page A–4
Sine wave tests	Page B–33	Harmonics level accuracy, and Noise level accuracy	Page A–4
Internal trigger tests	Page B–35	Trigger interval normality	Page A–3
Trigger input tests	page B–37	Trigger level accuracy, and Trigger function normality	Page A–9
Event input and enhanced mode tests	page B–42	External event input function normality, and Event mode normality	
10 MHz reference input tests	Page B–49	Reference input normality, and clock output frequency accuracy	Page A–10
External clock input tests	Page B–51	External clock input normality	Page A–10
Add input tests	Page B–53	Add input function normality, and Input level accuracy	Page A–10
Marker output tests	Page B–55	Marker output level accuracy	Page A–6
Marker delay tests	Page B–59	Marker delay function	Page A–6
Digital data output tests (Option 03 only)	Page B–62	High and low level accuracies, Output period accuracy, and Skew	Page A–8
Clock output tests	Page B–66	Clock output normality	Page A–6
Noise output tests	Page B–68	Noise level accuracy	Page A–7

They check all the characteristics that are designated as checked in *Specifications.* (The characteristic items that must be checked are listed with the asterisk (*) in *Specifications*).

***STOP**. These procedures extend the confidence level provided by the basic procedures described on page B–3. The basic procedures should be done first, then these procedures performed if desired.*

Prerequisites

The tests in this section comprise an extensive, valid confirmation of performance and functionality when the following requirements are met:

- The cabinet must be installed on the instrument.
- You must have performed and passed the procedures under *Self Tests,* found on page B–3.
- The waveform generator must have been last adjusted at an ambient temperature between +20° C and +30° C, must have been operating for a warm-up period of at least 20 minutes, and must be operating at an ambient temperature between +10° C and +40° C.

Related Information

Read *Conventions* on page B–1.

Equipment Required

These procedures use external, traceable signal sources to directly check warranted characteristics. The required equipment list follows this introduction.

Table B–2: Test equipments

Item number and description	Minimum requirements	Example (recommended)	Purpose
1. Frequency Counter	1 MHz to 100 MHz, Accuracy: $<$ 0.2 ppm	Anritu MF1603A	Used to check reference input test.
2. Digital multi meter	DC volts range: 0.05 V to 10 V, Accuracy: $\pm$0.1 %	Fluke 8842A	Used to check to measure voltage.
3. Oscilloscope	Bandwidth: $>$ 500 MHz, 1 MΩ and 50 Ω inputs	Tektronix TDS784C	Checks output signals. Used in many procedures.
4. Oscilloscope	Bandwidth: $>$ 1 GHz, Rise time: $<$ 350 ps, 50 Ω input	Tektronix TDS820	Checks direct DA rise time.
5. Spectrum Analizer	1 KHz to 1 GHz	Tektronix 497P or Advantest R4131	Checks output signals.
6. Function Generator	Output voltage: –5 V to +5 V, Frequency accuracy: $<$ 0.01 %	Tektronix AFG310	Generates external input signals. Used in many input signal test procedures.
7. Signal Generator	Output voltage: $>$ 0.25 V_{p-p}, Frequency: $>$ 1 GHz	Agilent 8648x, x: B or D	Used to check external clock input.
8. BNC Coaxial Cable (3 required)	50 Ω, male to male BNC connectors	Tektronix part number 012-0482-00	Signal interconnection

Table B–2: Test equipments (cont.)

Item number and description	Minimum requirements	Example (recommended)	Purpose
9. SMB to BNC Coaxial Cable (2 required)	50 Ω, male SMB to male BNC connectors	Tektronix part number 012-1459-00	Signal interconnection
10. BNC to N Connector	Male BNC to female N	Tektronix part number 103-0045-00	Signal interconnection
11. BNC-T Connector	Mail BNC to female BNC to female BNC	Tektronix part number 103-0030-00	Signal interconnection
12. Dual-Banana Connector	Female BNC to dual banana	Tektronix part number 103-0090-00	Signal interconnection
13. DC block	N type, 50 Ω	Tektronix part number 015-0509-00	DC block
14. Adapter	SMA (male) to BNC (female), 50 Ω	Tektronix part number 015-1018-00	Checks direct DA rise time.
15. Precision Terminator	50 Ω, 0.1 %, BNC	Tektronix part number 011-0129-00	Signal termination
16. Performance check disk	Must use example listed	Supplied with the product, Tektronix part number 063-2983-xx	Used to provide waveform files
17. Ground closure (loop-back cable) with 9-pin, D-type connector		Custom, See Figure B–3.	Used for event mode test

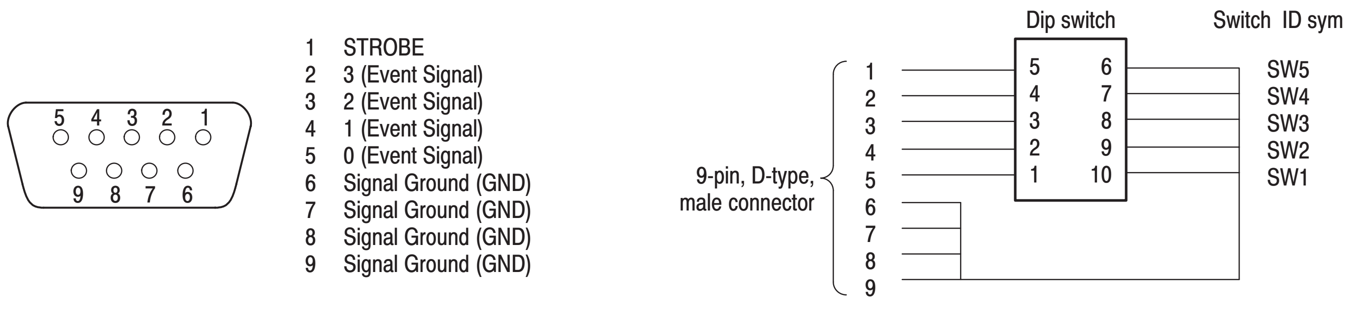


Figure B–3: EVENT IN connector pins and signals and ground closure connector with 9-pin D-type connector

Loading Files

The following steps explain how to load files from the Performance Check/Adjustment disk (063-2983-XX) into waveform memory and/or sequence memory.

1. Insert the disk into the Waveform Generator floppy disk drive.
2. Select **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side)→ **Drive...** (side) to display the Select Drive dialog box. The dialog box is as show in Figure B–4.
3. Select ***Floppy*** from the dialog box with the general purpose knob, and then push the **OK** side button.

   The Select Drive dialog box disappears and the files in the floppy disk are listed up on the Select File dialog box.
4. With the general purpose knob, select a file to be loaded from the dialog box, and then push the **OK** side button.

   The waveform or sequence you selected is loaded into the instrument, and the instrument is also setup with the parameters stored in that file.
5. Remove the floppy disk from the floppy drive if the floppy disk is no longer needed.
6. Push any bottom button or menu button to exit the menu.

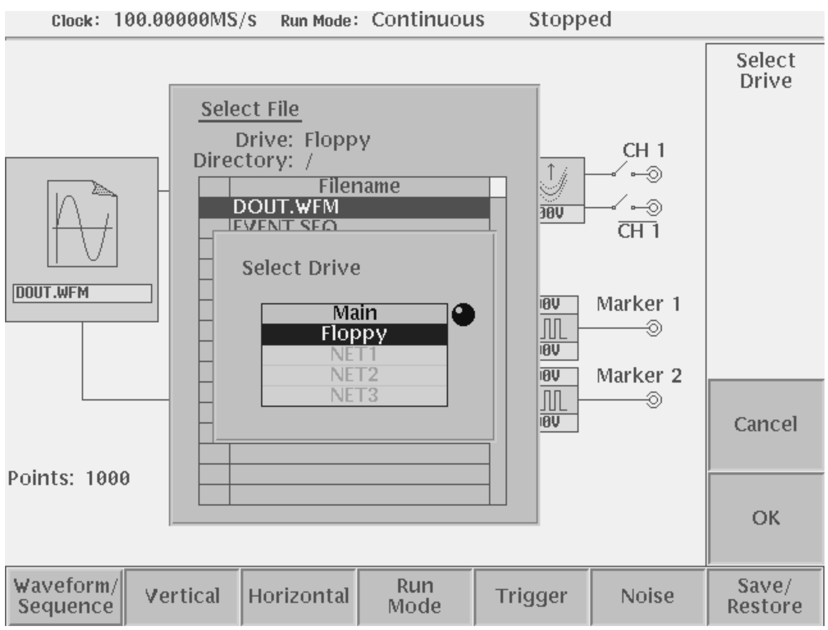


Figure B–4: Loading file; selecting storage drive

__NOTE__. The floppy disk file list displayed on the screen does not automatically update when you replace the diskette with another one. To update the file list, re-select the floppy disk drive.

Performance Check/Adjustment Files

Table B–3 lists the sequence and waveform files on the Performance Check/Adjustment disk (063-2983-XX) that are used in these performance tests, the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator front-panel settings that each file sets up, and the performance test that uses each file.

__NOTE__. The files on the Performance Check disk are locked (the files are marked by the icon in the file list), so the data in these files cannot be changed unless the lock is opened.

Table B–3: Waveforms and sequences in performance check disk

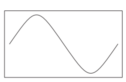
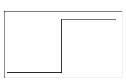
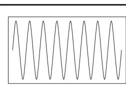
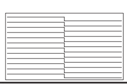
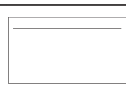
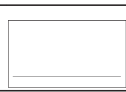
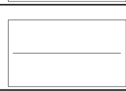
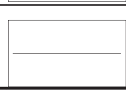
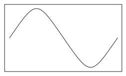
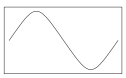
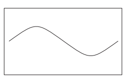
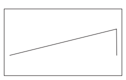
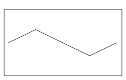
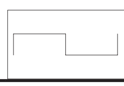
No.	File name	EDIT menu		SETUP menu				Marker setup	Usage
		Form	Points	Clock	Filter	Ampl	Offset		
1	MODE.WFM		1000	1 GHz	Through	1 V	0 V	Marker1,2: 0 to 499: High, 500 to 999: Low	Run mode,Trigger level, Marker
2	PULSE.WFM		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Pulse amplitude, Internal trigger accuracy
3	SINE.WFM		256	1 GHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Sine characteristics
4	DOUT.PAT		512	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Digital data out
5	AMP1.SEQ								Amplitude accuracy (Normal out)
6	AMP2.SEQ								Amplitude accuracy (Direct out)
7	DC_P.WFM (AMPx.SEQ) [1]		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Amplitude accuracy
8	DC_M.WFM (AMPx.SEQ) [1]		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Amplitude accuracy
9	DC0.WFM (AMP2.SEQ)		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Amplitude accuracy
10	OFFSET.WFM		1000	100 MHz	Through	20 mV	0 V		Offset accuracy

Table B–3: Waveforms and sequences in performance check disk (Cont.)

No.	File name	EDIT menu		SETUP menu				Marker setup	Usage
		Form	Points	Clock	Filter	Ampl	Offset		
11	TRIG.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Trigger input
12	PT_EVENT.SEQ								Event input
13	PT_STROB.SEQ								Event input
14	S260.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ) [2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
15	S260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ) [2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
16	R260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ) [2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
17	T260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ) [2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
18	Q260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ) [2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input

1. The AMPx.SEQ represents AMP1.SEQ and AMP2.SEQ.
2. The PT_xxxxx.SEQ represents PT_EVENT.SEQ and PT_STROB.SEQ

Operating Mode Tests

These procedures check operation of the Cont, Triggered and Gated modes.

Check Cont Mode

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector through the coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–5).

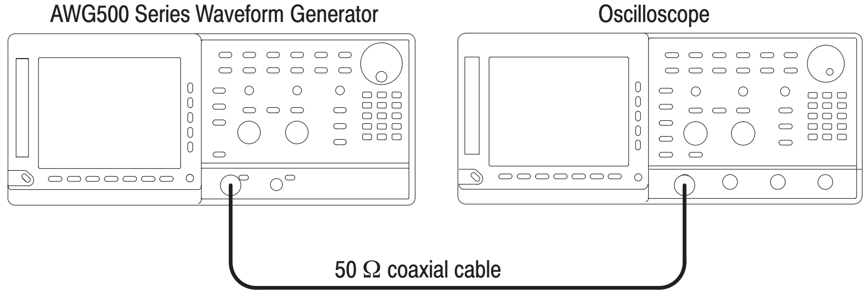


Figure B–5: Cont mode initial test hookup

   b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical CH1
CH1 coupling . . . . DC
CH1 scale . . . . 0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance . . . . 50 Ω

Horizontal
Sweep . . . . 500 ns/div

Trigger
Source CH1
Coupling . . . . DC
Slope . . . . Positive
Level . . . . +100 mV
Mode . . . . Auto

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the waveform file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check against limits*: Check that the amplitude of the sine wave displayed on the oscilloscope is 5 vertical divisions and that the waveform of one cycle per 2 horizontal divisions is displayed.

5. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Check Triggered Mode

Equipment required	Three 50 Ω coaxial cables, a BNC–T connector, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator meets the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector through the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector.

   b. *Hook up the function generator:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **TRIG IN** connector though a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and BNC–T connector to the function generator output connector, and connect a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to BNC–T connector and the oscilloscope CH2 input (see Figure B–6).

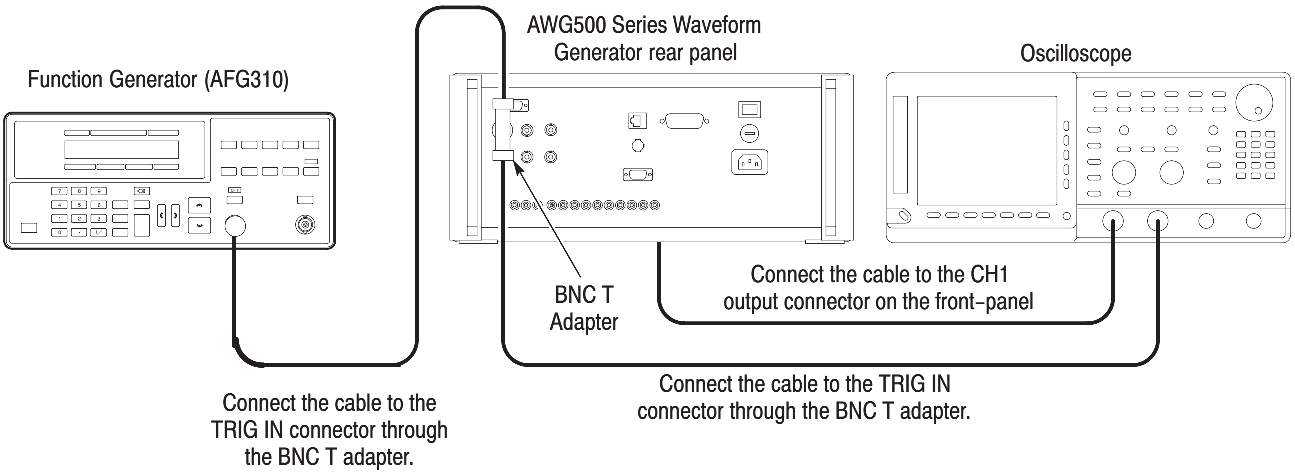


Figure B–6: Triggered mode initial test hookup

c. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	500 ns/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

d. *Set the function generator (AFG310) controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	400 kHz
Amplitude	2.0 V (4 V into open circuit)
Offset	1.0 V (2 V into open circuit)
Output	Off

2. *Set AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*
   Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
   System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Set triggered mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side) to set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to triggered mode.

   c. *Select the file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the **RUN** button and **CH1** output connector light.

4. *Check triggered mode with manual triggering*: Push the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **FORCE TRIGGER** button and check that when the button is pushed, the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave.

5. *Check triggered mode with external triggering:*

   a. *Enable function generator output:* Turn on the function generator output.

   b. *Check triggering:* Check that for each trigger supplied by the function generator, the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave (see Figure B–7).

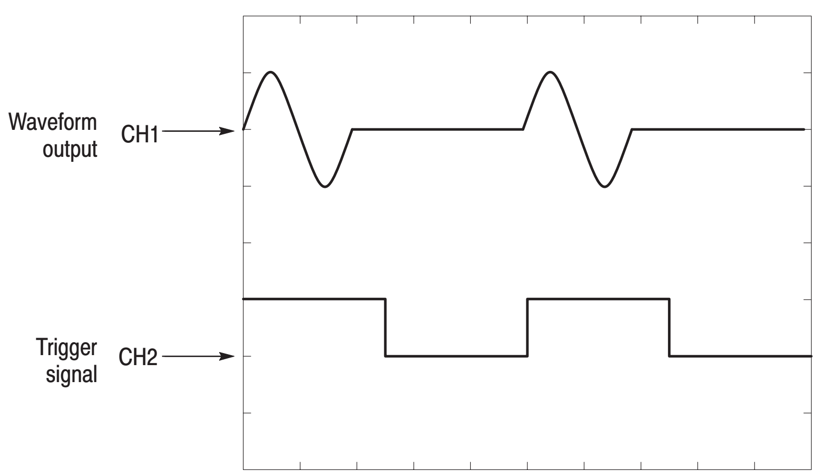


Figure B–7: Relationship between trigger signal and waveform output

6. *End procedure:* Turn off the function generator output. Retain the test hookup.

Check Gated Mode

Equipment required	Three 50 Ω coaxial cables, an adapter (BNC T male to 2 females), a function generator, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG500 meets the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Use the test hookup from previous check.*
2. *Set the test equipment controls:*
   a. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 and CH2 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

   b. *Set the function generator (AFG310) controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	10 kHz
Amplitude	2.0 V (4 V into open circuit)
Offset	1.0 V (2 V into open circuit)
Output	Off

3. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*
   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side)**.**

b. *Set gated mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Gated** (side).

c. *Select the waveform file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

4. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the **RUN** button and **CH1** output connector light.

5. *Check gated mode with manual trigger:* Hold down the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **FORCE TRIGGER** button, and check that the oscilloscope continuously displays a sine wave while you are holding down the **FORCE TRIGGER** button.

6. *Check gated mode with gate signal:*

a. Change the oscilloscope horizontal sweep setting to 20 μs/div.

b. Set the oscilloscope trigger source to CH2.

c. *Apply gate signal:* Turn on the function generator output.

d. *Check gated mode with positive gate signal:* Check that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal amplitude is equal to or larger than 1 V (see Figure B–8).

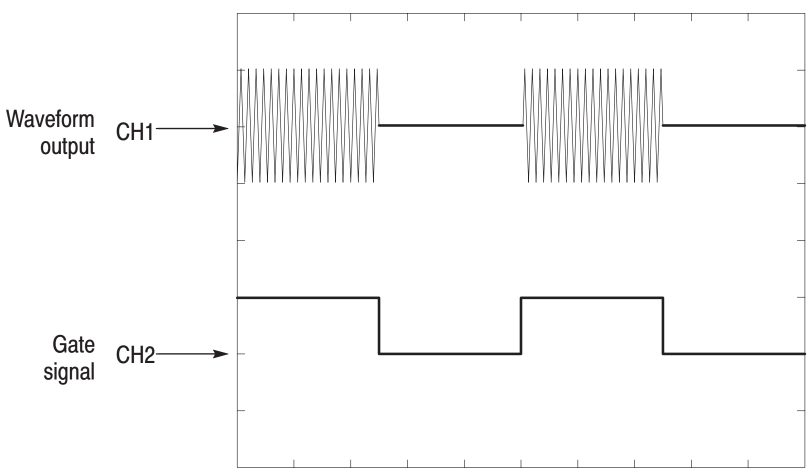


Figure B–8: Relationship between gate signal and waveform output

e. *Change the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator trigger polarity to negative:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Negative** (side).

   f. *Check gated mode with a negative gate signal:* Check that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal amplitude is equal to or less than 1 V.

7. *End procedure:* Turn off the function generator output, and disconnect the function generator and oscilloscope.

Clock Frequency Tests

These procedures check the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator clock frequency accuracy.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator and a frequency counter.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up frequency counter:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator clock output connector through a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and a 50 Ω precision terminator to the frequency counter input A connector (see Figure B–9).

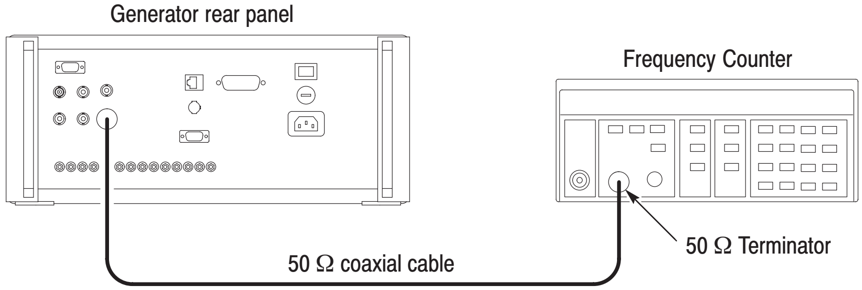


Figure B–9: Clock frequency initial test hookup

b. *Set frequency counter controls:*

INPUT A
- Slope . . . . (rising edge)
- Coupling . . . . AC

FUNCTION . . . . A FREQ
Gate time . . . . 0.2 s
Level . . . . 0 V

2. *Set AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*
Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side)**.**

b. *Select the file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

c. *Set clock frequency:*

   - Push **HORIZONTAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Clock** (side).
   - *Enter numeric value of 10M:* Push **1, 0** and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output:* Push the **RUN** button so that the LEDs above the RUN button lights.

4. *Check clock frequency accuracy:* Check that the frequency counter reading is 10 MHz ±10 Hz (1 ppm).

5. *End procedure:* Disconnect the frequency counter.

Amplitude and Offset Accuracy Tests (Normal Out)

These procedures check the accuracy of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator normal waveform outputs; amplitude and offset.

***NOTE**. The amplitude and offset accuracy checks are structured as a continuous test. After Check Amplitude Accuracy, the next test uses the control settings from the last test and uses the next step in the sequence file.*

Check Amplitude Accuracy

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, a BNC (female)-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up DMM:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output through a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and an adapter (BNC-to-dual banana) to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–10).

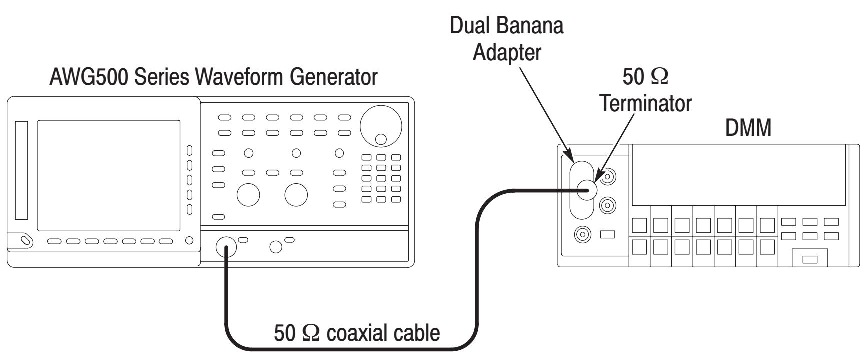


Figure B–10: Amplitude accuracy initial test hookup

b. *Set the DMM controls:*

Mode . . . . VDC
Range . . . . Auto
Input . . . . Front

2. *Set AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the sequence file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Set enhanced mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side) to set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to enhanced mode.

c. *Select the sequence file:* Load the **AMP1.SEQ** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the **RUN** button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check amplitude accuracy:*

a. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator amplitude and confirm the offset setting:*

- Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Amplitude** (side).
- *Enter numeric value of 0.02:* Push **0, ., 0, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order to set the amplitude to 0.020 V.
- *Confirm the current offset setting:* Confirm that the offset setting display on the **Offset** side button is 0.000 V. If not, push the **Offset** side button, and push **0** and then **ENTER** key.

b. *Check the amplitude accuracy of 20 mV amplitude setting:*

- Write the reading on DMM as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write the reading on DMM as a negative voltage.
- Check that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 20 mV ± 2.3 mV.

c. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator amplitude:* Push **0, ., 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order to set the amplitude to 0.200 V.

d. *Check the amplitude accuracy of 200 mV amplitude setting:*

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write the reading on DMM as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write the reading on DMM as a negative voltage.

- Check that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 200 mV ± 5 mV.

e. *Enter numeric value of 2:* Push **2** and **ENTER** keys in this order to set the amplitude to 2 V.

f. *Check the amplitude accuracy of 2 V amplitude setting:*

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write the reading on DMM as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write the reading on DMM as a negative voltage.
- Check that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 2 V ± 0.032 V.

5. *Check CH1 or CH2:* Repeat the *Check Amplitude Accuracy* for the AWG510 CH1 or the AWG520 CH2, depending on the instrument that you are currently testing.

6. *End procedure:* Retain the test hookup and control settings.

Check Offset Accuracy

1. *Use the test hookup and settings from previous check.*

2. *Set AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the sequence file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select the sequence file:* Load the **OFFSET.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

c. Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Amplitude** (side).

d. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator amplitude:* Push **0, ., 0, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order to set the amplitude to 0.020 V.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1** buttons so that the LEDs above the **RUN** button and **CH1** output connector light.

4. *Check offset accuracy:*

   a. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator offset:*

      - Push the **Offset** side button.
      - *Enter numeric value of 0:* Push **0** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

   b. *Check the offset accuracy of 0 V offset setting:* Check that the reading on the DMM falls within 0 V ± 10 mV.

   c. *Change the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator offset to 1 V:* Push **1** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

   d. *Check the offset accuracy of 1 V offset setting:* Check that the reading on the DMM falls within 1 V ± 0.020 V.

   e. *Change the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator offset to –1 V:* Push **–**, **1** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

   f. *Check the offset accuracy of –1 V offset setting:* Check that the reading on the DMM falls within –1 V ± 0.020 V.

5. *Check $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ or CH2:* Repeat the *Check Offset Accuracy* for the AWG510 $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ or the AWG510 CH2, depending on the instrument that you are currently testing.

6. *End procedure:* Disconnect the DMM and 50 Ω terminator.

Amplitude, Offset Accuracy and Rise Time Tests (Direct DA Out)

These procedures check the accuracy of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator direct waveform outputs; amplitude and offset.

Check Amplitude and DC Offset

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, a BNC (female)-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator meets the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up DMM:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output through a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and an adapter (BNC-to-dual banana) to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–11).

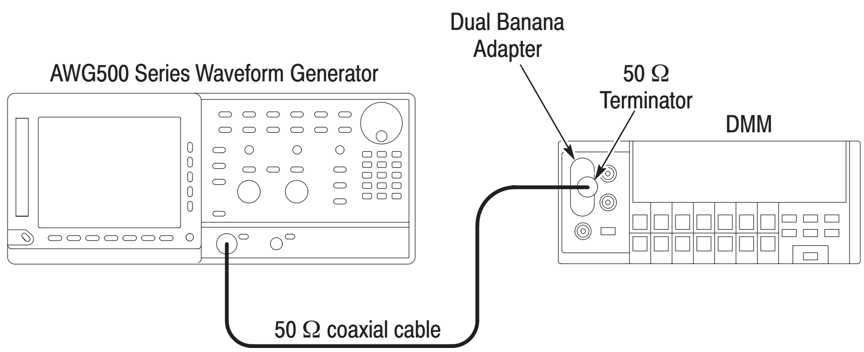


Figure B–11: Direct DA out amplitude accuracy initial test hookup

   b. *Set the DMM controls:*

Mode	VDC
Range	2 V
Input	Front

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Set enhanced mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side) to set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to enhanced mode.

c. *Set direct DA mode:* Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Add/Direct Out** (side)→**Output** (side)→**Direct** (side).

d. *Select the file:* Load the **AMP2.SEQ** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check direct DA amplitude accuracy:*

a. *Check the value at the high state:*

- Check that the reading from the DMM display is about 0 V.
- Write the reading value.

b. *Check the value at the low state:*

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Check that the reading from the DMM display is about –0.5 V.
- Write the reading value.

c. *Check the amplitude:* Check that the high state value minus low state value falls within 0.5 V ±0.05 V.

d. *Check the DC offset:*

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Check that the reading from the DMM display is about –0.27 V ±0.027 V.

5. *Check $\overline{\mathit{CH1}}$ or CH2:* Repeat the step 4 for the AWG510 $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$ or the AWG510 CH2, depending on the instrument that you are currently testing.

6. *End procedure:* Disconnect the DMM.

Check Pulse Rise Time

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, SMA-to-BNC adapter and an oscilloscope (TDS820).
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector and the oscilloscope CH1 input connector through the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and the SMA-to-BNC adapter (see Figure B–12).

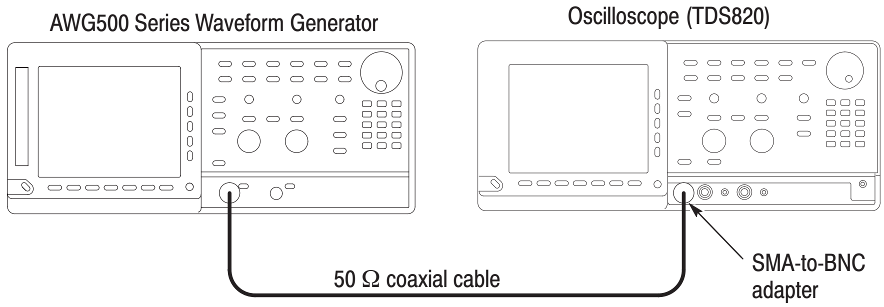


Figure B–12: Direct DA out pulse rise time initial test hookup

b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	100 mV/div
CH1 vertical position	About 2.7 Div
Horizontal	
Sweep	500 ps/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Slope	(rising edge symbol)
Level	–250 mV
Mode	Auto

***NOTE**. The pulse rise time tests use the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator control setting that have been used in the amplitude and DC offset tests. Do not initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls.*

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Select the file:* Load the **PULSE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

   b. *Set enhanced mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Continuous** (side) to set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to continuous mode.

   c. *Set direct DA mode:* Push **Vertical** (bottom)→ **Add/Direct Out** (side)→**Output** (side)→**Direct** (side).

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check pulse rise time:* Check that the rise time of the pulse waveform displayed on the oscilloscope is equal to or less than 700 ps.

5. *Check $\overline{\mathit{CH1}}$ or CH2:* Repeat the step 4 for the AWG510 $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$ or the AWG510 CH2, depending on the instrument that you are currently testing.

6. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Pulse Response Tests

This procedure checks the pulse response characteristics of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output waveforms at amplitudes of 1 V and 2 V.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector through the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–13).

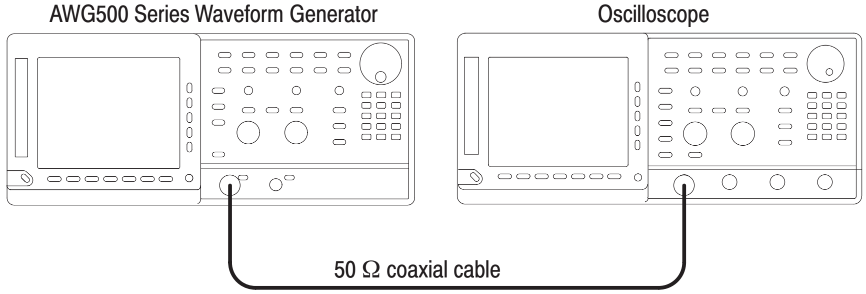


Figure B–13: Pulse response initial test hookup

b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical CH1
CH1 coupling . . . . DC
CH1 scale . . . . 0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance . . . . 50 Ω

Horizontal
Sweep . . . . 500 ps/div

Trigger
Source CH1
Coupling . . . . DC
Slope . . . . Positive
Level . . . . 0 V
Mode . . . . Auto

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*
Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select the file:* Load the **PULSE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check pulse response at 1 V amplitude:*

a. *Check rise time:* Check that the rise time of the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope from 10% to 90% point is equal to or less than 1.5 ns.

b. *Check aberration:*

- Set oscilloscope sweep to 12.5 ns/div (or 20 ns/div).
- Check that the aberration of the displayed waveform on the oscilloscope screen is within ± 7 %.

c. *Check flatness:*

- Set oscilloscope sweep to 200 ns/div.
- Check that the flatness of the displayed waveform on the oscilloscope is within ± 3 % after 50 ns from the rising edge.

5. *Check pulse response at 2 V amplitude:*

a. *Change the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical CH1
CH1 scale . . . . 0.5 V/div

b. *Change the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*

- Push **VERTICAL MENU**→**Amplitude**.
- *Enter numeric value of 2:* Push **2** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

c. *Repeat substeps 4a through 4c, as checking to the follow limits:*

- Rise time 2.5 ns, maximum
- Aberration ± 10 %, maximum
- Flatness ± 3 %, maximum

6. *Check $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ or CH2:* Repeat the *Check Pulse Response* for the AWG510 $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ or the AWG510 CH2, depending on the instrument that you are currently testing.

7. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Sine Wave Tests

This procedure checks the sine wave characteristics of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output waveforms.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a DC block, an adapter (N male to BNC female), and a spectrum analyzer.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the spectrum analyzer:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output connector through the coaxial cable, adapter, and DC Block to the input connector on the spectrum analyzer (see Figure B–14).

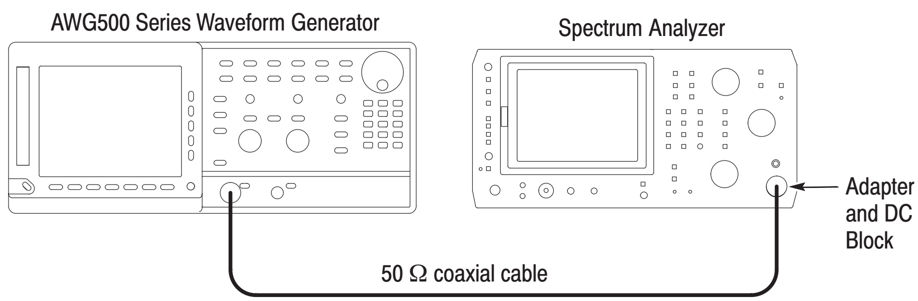


Figure B–14: Sine wave initial test hookup

b. *Set spectrum analyzer controls:*

Center frequency	200 MHz
Full Span	500 MHz
Reference level	10 dBm
RF attenuation	20 dB
Video filter	1 kHz
Resolution BW	1 MHz

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select the file:* Load the **SINE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check harmonics and noise level:*

a. *Check harmonics level:* Check that the harmonics level of the spectrum displayed on the spectrum analyzer from 0 Hz to 400 MHz is –50 dBc or less.

b. *Check noise level:* Check that the noise level of the spectrum displayed on the spectrum analyzer from 0 Hz to 400 MHz is –53 dBc or less.

5. *Check CH2:* Repeat the *Sine Wave Tests* for the AWG520 CH2, depending on the instrument that you are currently testing.

6. *End procedure:* Disconnect the spectrum analyzer.

Internal Trigger Tests

These procedures check internal trigger function of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector through the coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector on the oscilloscope (see Figure B–15).

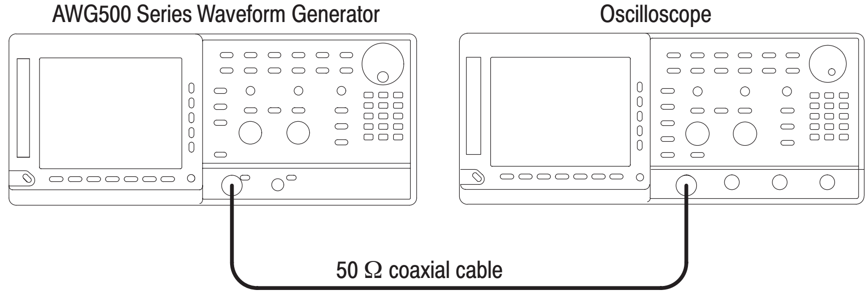


Figure B–15: Internal trigger initial test hookup

   b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 ms/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0.2 V
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

   c. *Set trigger mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side).

   d. *Set trigger interval:*

      - Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Source** (side)→ **Internal** (side).

      - Push the **Interval** side button.

      - *Enter numeric value of 1 m:* Push **1** and **m** (SHIFT+9) keys in this order.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the **RUN** button and **CH1** output connector light.

4. *Check the trigger interval*: Check that the period of the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope is one horizontal divisions.

5. *Change the trigger interval:*

   a. *Enter numeric value of 2 ms:* Push **2** and **m** (SHIFT+9) keys in this order.

6. *Check the trigger interval*: Check that the period of the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope is two horizontal divisions.

7. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Trigger Input Tests

These procedures verify the trigger level accuracy of the AWG500-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	A BNC T adapter, three 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector.

   b. Connect a BNC T adapter to the TRIG IN connector and then use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the BNC T adapter to the oscilloscope CH2 input connector.

   c. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the function generator output to the other end of the BNC T adapter.

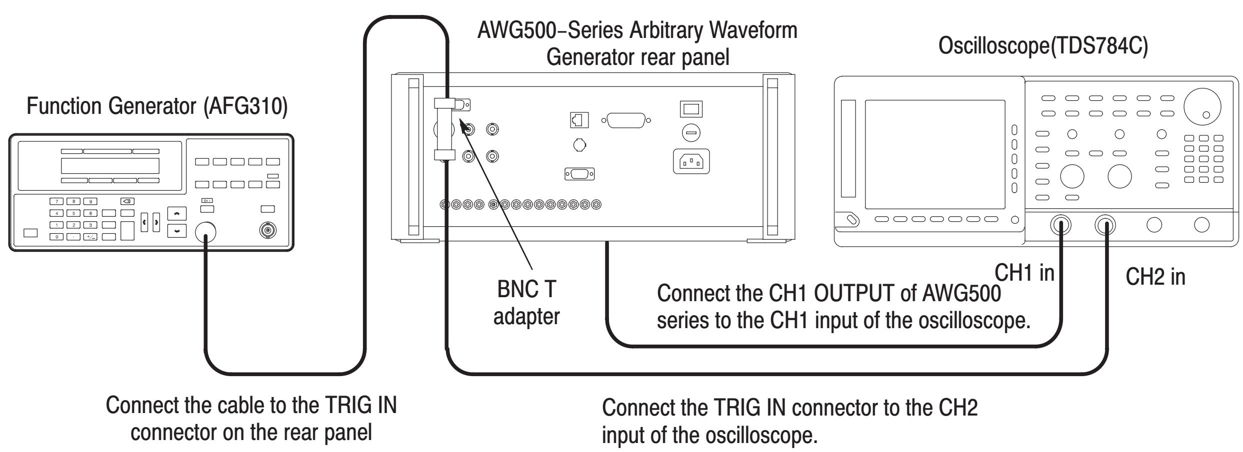


Figure B–16: Trigger input initial test hookup

d. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Push the **Default Setup** (front).

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	500 mV/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH2 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	2 ms/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

e. Set the function generator as follows:

Function	Pulse
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	100 Hz
Amplitude	1.0 V (2 V in open circuit)
Offset	(Adjust such as a pulse 4.65 V in amplitude referenced to ground)
Output	Off

2. Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator and load the waveform file.

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side).

c. Load the TRIG.WFM file**.**

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–10 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

- Verify that the CH1 OUTPUT is off.
  If the CH1 LED is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel) to turn the LED off.

4. Set the trigger level to 5 V by following the substeps below:

a. Set the trigger level.

- Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Level** (side).
- Push **5** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

b. Set the offset level of generator.

- Push generator output **ON**.
- Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the high level of a pulse to be set to 4.65V.

c. Verify that no waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.

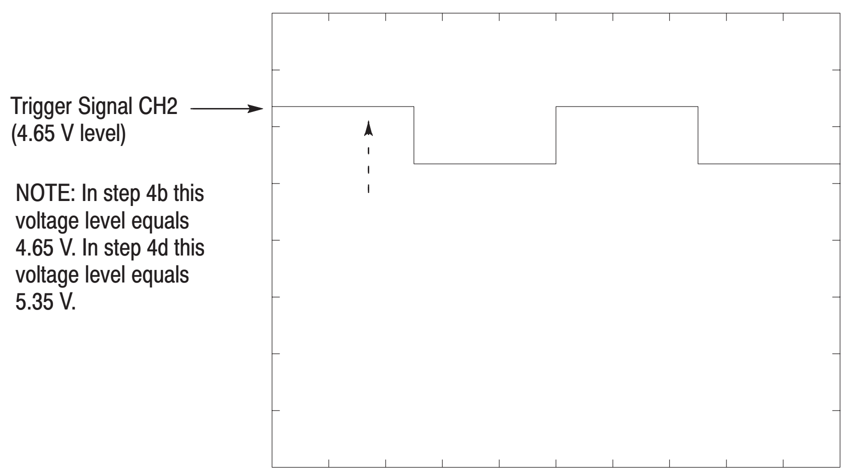


Figure B–17: Trigger Signal (+5V check1)

d. Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the high level of a pulse to be set to 5.35V.

e. Verify that a sine wave is displayed on the oscilloscope.

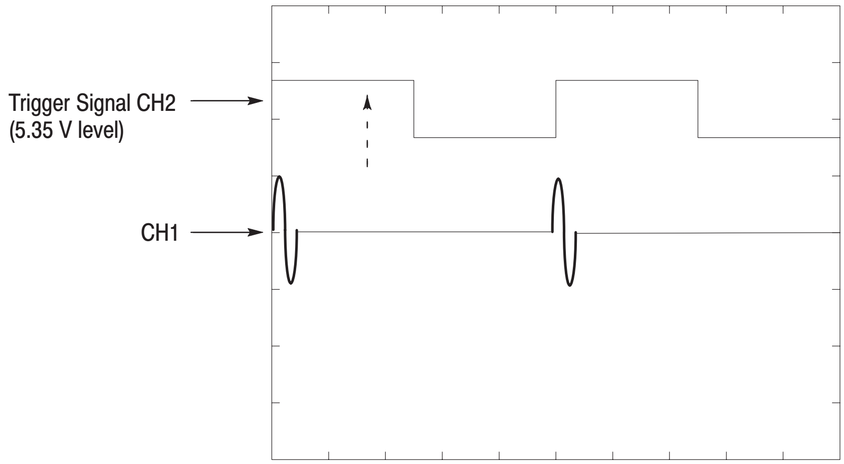


Figure B-18: Trigger Signal (+5V check2)

5. Verify the Trigger level accuracy at –5V by following the substeps below:

   a. Set the trigger level of AWG500.

      - Push **Level** (side).
      - Push **–, 5** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

   b. Set the offset level of generator.

      - Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the low level of a pulse to be set to –4.65V.

   c. Verify that no waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.

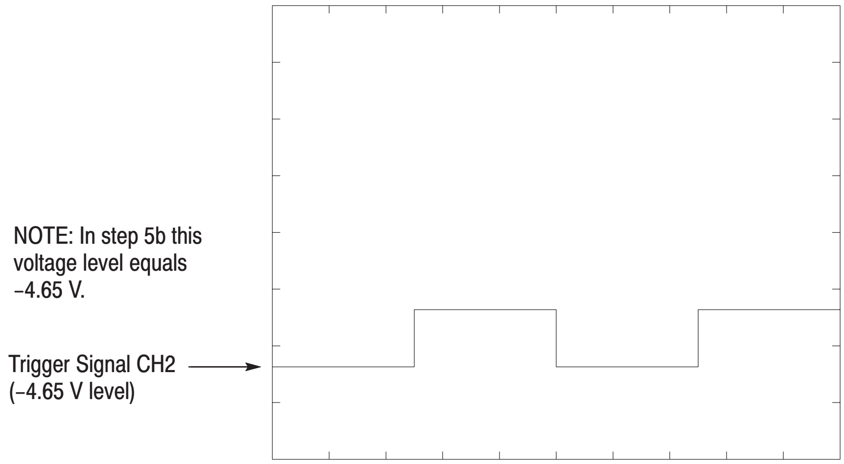


Figure B–19: Trigger Signal (–5V check1)

d. Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the low level of a pulse to be set to –5.35V.

e. Verify that a sine wave is displayed on the oscilloscope.

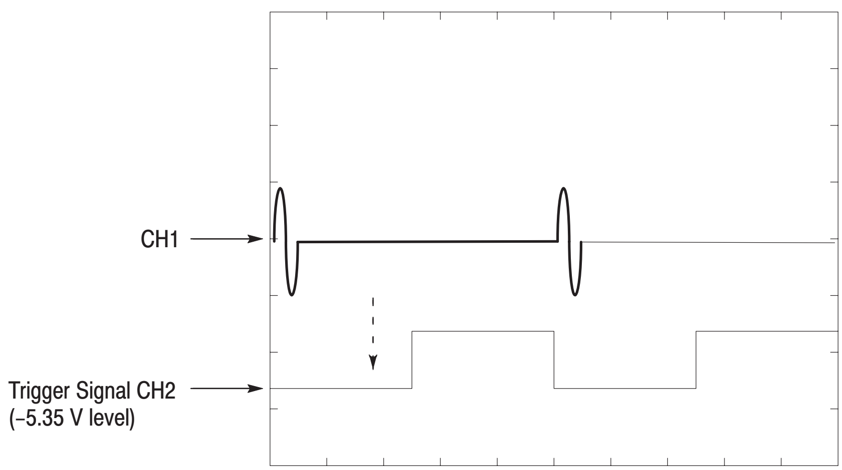


Figure B–20: Trigger Signal (–5V check2)

6. Push the **RUN** button to turn off the RUN LED.

7. Disconnect all the cable.

Event Input and Enhanced Mode Tests

These procedures check the event input signals and enhanced mode operation.

***NOTE**. The event input check with strobe off and strobe input check are structured as a continuous test. After* Check Event Input with Strobe Off, *the next test uses the connections and oscilloscope settings from the last test.*

Check Event Input with Strobe Off

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, an oscilloscope, and custom-made ground closure.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector through the coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–21).

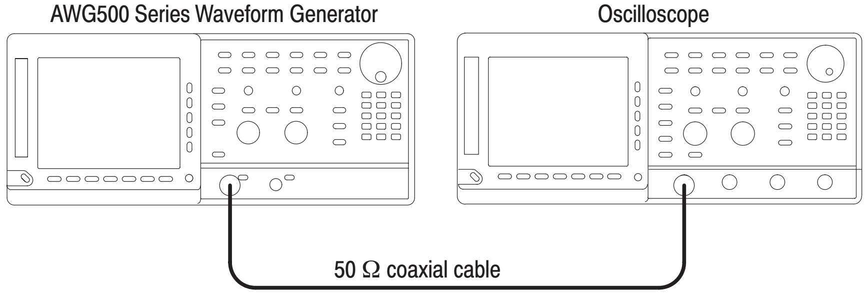


Figure B–21: Event input and enhanced mode initial test hookup

   b. *Connect the ground closure:* Connect the ground closure to the **EVENT IN** connector on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator rear panel.

   c. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	0.5 μs/div

Trigger
- Source CH1
- Coupling . . . . DC
- Slope . . . . Positive
- Level . . . . +100 mV
- Mode . . . . Auto

2. *Set all the switches of the ground closure to open.*

3. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the sequence file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the sequence file:* Load the **PT_EVENT.SEQ** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

   c. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to enhanced mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side) to set the enhanced mode.

4. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

5. *Check the* ***EVENT IN*** *connector pin 0 input*:

   a. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the waveform being displayed on the oscilloscope is as shown in Figure B–22.

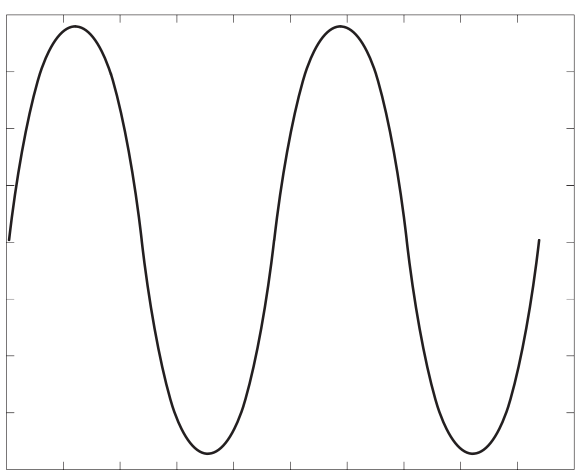


Figure B–22: Waveform while all ground disclosure switches are open

b. *Generate an event signal*: Close the SW1 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the **EVENT IN** connector pin 0.

c. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–23 and that the waveform amplitude is almost as half as that in Figure B–22.

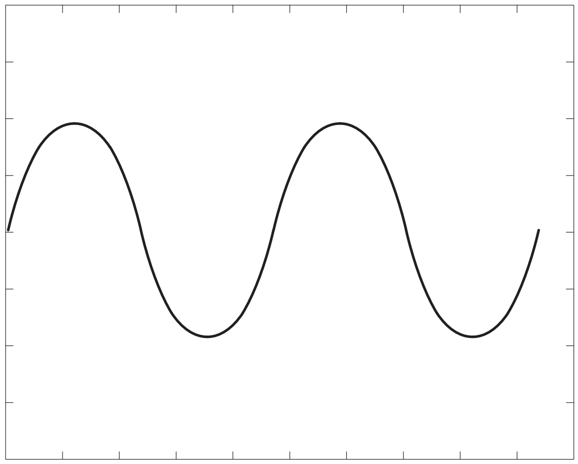


Figure B–23: Waveform output when the SW1 is closed

d. *Degenerate the event signal*: Open the SW1 of the ground closure to degenerate the event signal.

e. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays back the waveform in Figure B–22.

6. *Check the **EVENT IN** connector pin 1 input*:

a. *Generate an event signal*: Close the SW2 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the **EVENT IN** connector pin 1.

b. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–24.

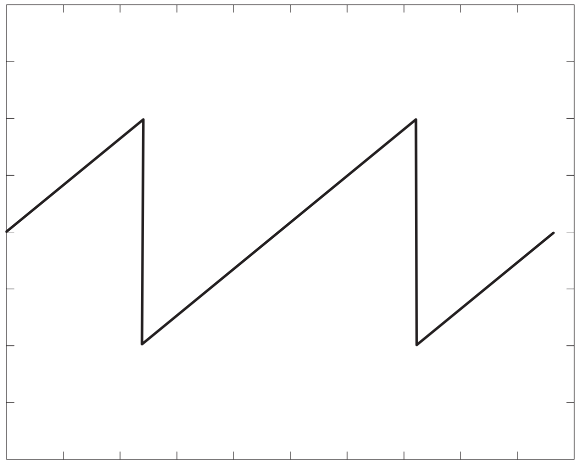


Figure B–24: Waveform output when the SW2 is closed

c. *Degenerate the event signal*: Open the SW2 of the ground closure to degenerate the event signal.

d. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays back the waveform in Figure B–22.

7. *Check the* ***EVENT IN*** *connector pin 2 input*:

a. *Generate an event signal*: Close the SW3 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the **EVENT IN** connector pin 2.

b. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–25.

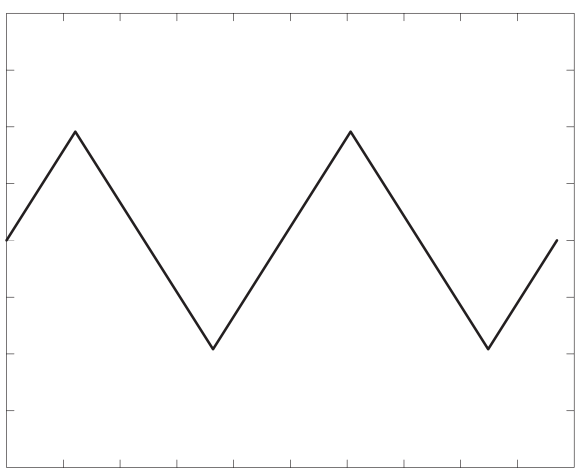


Figure B–25: Waveform output when the SW3 is closed

c. *Degenerate the event signal*: Open the SW3 of the ground closure to degenerate the event signal.

d. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays back the waveform in Figure B–22.

8. *Check the **EVENT IN** connector pin 3 input*:

a. *Generate an event signal*: Close the SW4 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the **EVENT IN** connector pin 3.

b. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–26.

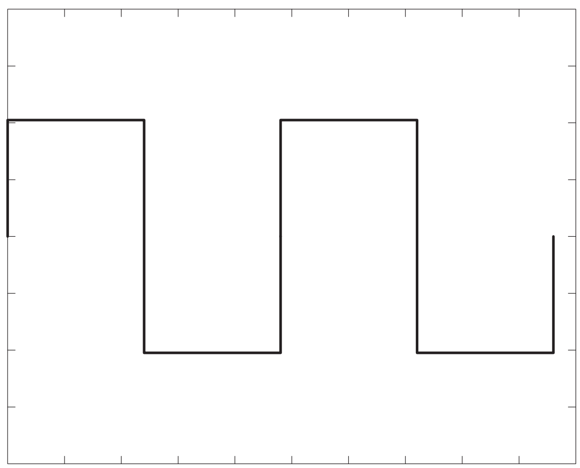


Figure B–26: Waveform output when the SW4 is closed

c. *Degenerate the event signal*: Open the SW4 of the ground closure to degenerate the event signal.

d. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays back the waveform in Figure B–22.

9. *End procedure*: Retain the test hookup and control settings.

Check Strobe Input

1. *Use the test hookup and oscilloscope settings from previous check.*

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the sequence file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*
   Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
   System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the waveform file:* Load the **PT_STROB.SEQ** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

   c. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator to enhanced mode:* Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side) to set the run mode to enhanced.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check the **EVENT IN** connector strobe pin input*:

   a. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the waveform being displayed on the oscilloscope is as shown in Figure B–27.

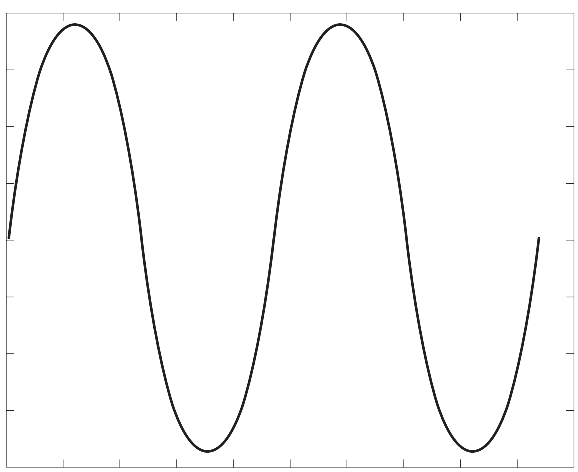


Figure B–27: Initial waveform output

   b. *Generate a strobe signal*: Close the SW5 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the **EVENT IN** connector strobe pin.

   c. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays the dc waveform as shown in Figure B–28.

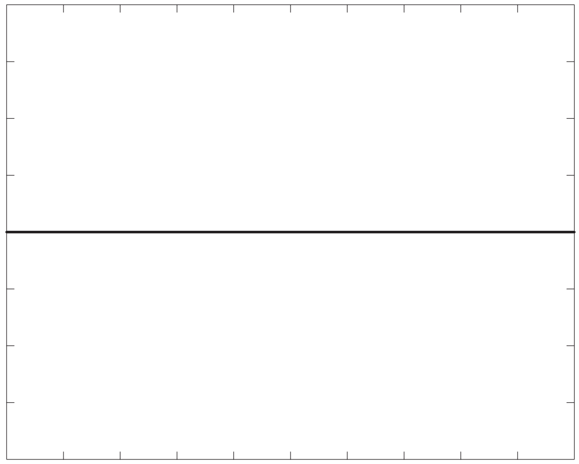


Figure B–28: DC waveform output when the SW5 is closed

d. *Degenerate the strobe signal*: Open the SW5 of the ground closure to degenerate the strobe signal on the **EVENT IN** connector strobe pin.

e. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the dc waveform is kept displaying on the oscilloscope.

f. *Generate a strobe signal*: Close the SW5 of the ground closure again.

g. *Confirm the waveform on the oscilloscope*: Confirm that the oscilloscope displays back the waveform in Figure B–27.

5. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope and ground closure.

10 MHz Reference Input Tests

These procedures check the 10 MHz reference input function of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a frequency counter, and a function generator.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator meets the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the frequency counter:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CLOCK OUT** connector through the coaxial cable to the input A connector on the frequency counter.

   b. *Hook up the function generator:*

      - Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **10 MHz REF IN** connector though a coaxial cable to the function generator output connector (see Figure B–29).

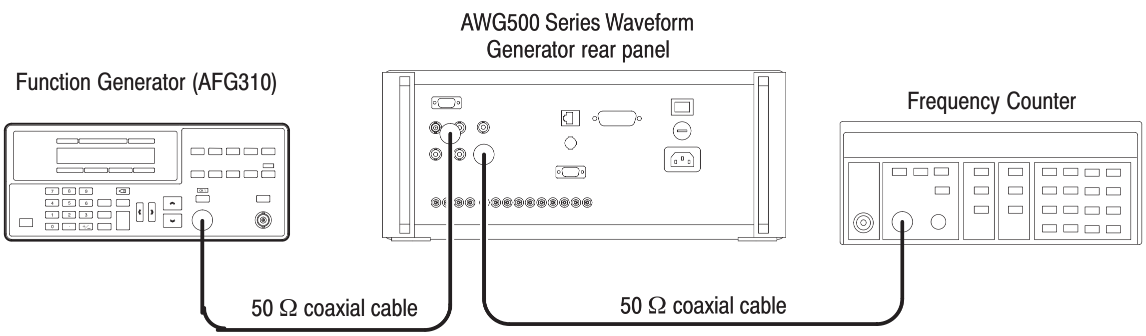


Figure B–29: 10 MHz reference initial test hookup

   c. *Set the frequency counter controls:*

      INPUT A
      Coupling . . . . AC
      FUNCTION . . . . A FREQ
      Gate time . . . . 0.2 s
      Level . . . . 0 V

d. *Set the function generator (AFG310) controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	10 MHz
Amplitude	2.0 V (4 V into open circuit)
Offset	0 V
Output	On

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select the file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

c. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator clock reference to external:*

- Push **HORIZONTAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Clock Ref** (side) so that the clock reference is set to **External**.
- Push the **Clock** side button.
- *Enter numeric value of 50M:* Push **5**, **0**, **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output:* Push the **RUN** button so that the LED above the RUN button lights.

4. *Check the clock output frequency with 10.0 MHz reference:* Check that the frequency counter reading is 50.0 MHz ± 10 kHz.

5. *Modify the function generator controls:*

Frequency	10.1 MHz

6. *Check the clock output frequency with 10.1 MHz reference:* Check that the frequency counter reading is 50.5 MHz ± 10 kHz.

7. *End procedure:* Turn the function generator output off and disconnect the function generator and frequency counter.

External Clock Input Tests

These procedures check the External clock input function of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, an adapter (N male to BNC femal), a signal generator, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator meets the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector through the coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–30).

   b. *Hook up the function generator:*

      - Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **EXT CLOCK IN** connector through a coaxial cable to the signal generator output connector with a N–BNC adapter(see Figure B–30).

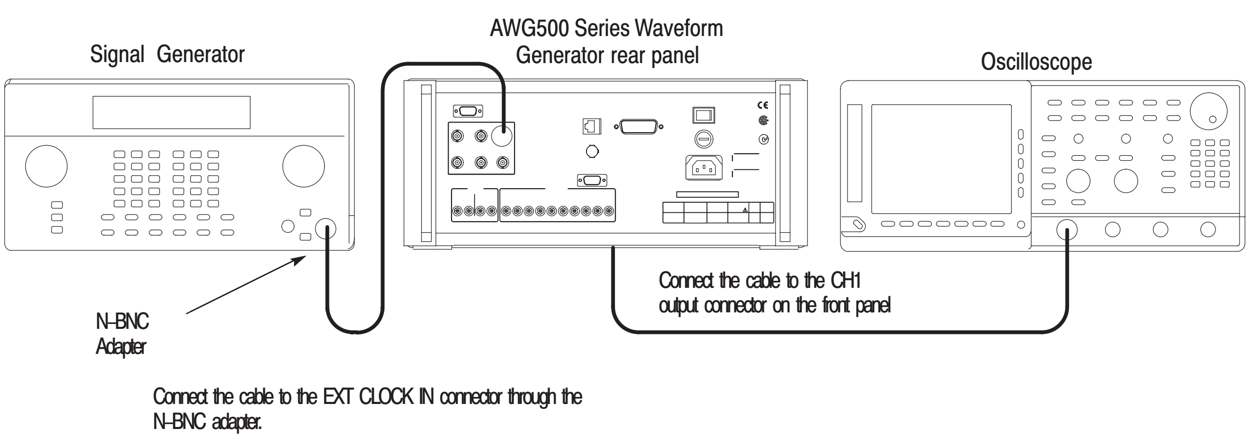


Figure B–30: External clock input initial test hookup

   c. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω

Horizontal
- Sweep . . . . 500 ns/div

Trigger
- Source CH1
- Coupling . . . . DC
- Slope . . . . Positive
- Level . . . . +100 mV
- Mode . . . . Auto

d. *Set the signal generator controls:*

Mode . . . . Continuous
Parameters . . . .
- Frequency . . . . 1 GHz
- Amplitude . . . . 0.25 V_{p-p}

Output . . . . On

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select the file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

c. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator clock source to external:* Push **HORIZONTAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Clock Src** (side) so that the clock reference is set to **External**.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check against limits:* Check that the amplitude of the sine wave displayed on the oscilloscope is 5 vertical divisions and that the waveform of one cycle per 2 horizontal divisions is displayed.

5. *End procedure:* Turn the signal generator output off and disconnect the signal generator .

Add Input Tests

This procedure checks the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator Add Input function.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω terminator, a BNC-to-dual banana adapter, Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and a DMM.
Prerequisites	The AWG500-Series Waveform Generator meets the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the function generator:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **ADD IN** connector though a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the function generator output connector.

   b. *Hook up DMM:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output through a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and an adapter (BNC-to-dual banana) to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–31).

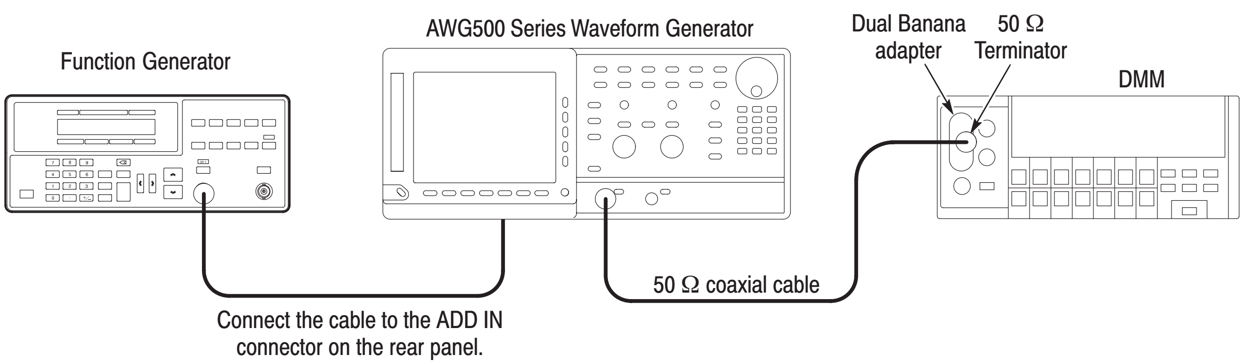


Figure B–31: Add operation initial test hookup

   c. *Set the DMM controls:*

      Mode . . . . VDC
      Range . . . . 2 V
      Input . . . . Front

d. *Set the function generator (AFG310) controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	1 kHz
Amplitude	0 V
Offset	1.0 V
Output	Off

2. *Set AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→**System** (bottom)→ **Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Set the amplitude settings:*

- Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Amplitude** (side).
- Push **0**, **.**, **0, 2** and **ENTER** keys in order (0.02).

c. *Connect the ADD IN connector to CH1 output:*

- Push **ADD/Direct Out...** (side) → **External** (side).

d. *Select the waveform file:* Load the **DC0.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator CH1 output:* Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons so that the LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector light.

4. *Check the output level corresponds to the input level:*

a. *Check the level when the function generator output is off:*

- *Check the reading on DMM:* Check that the value is within the range from –10 mV to +10 mV, and note this reading value.

b. *Enable function generator output:* Turn on the function generator output.

c. *Check the level when the function generator output is on:*

- *Check the reading on DMM:* Check that the reading of the DMM minus the value read in step 4.a is within the range between 0.95 V and 1.05 V.

5. *End procedure:* Turn off the function generator output, and disconnect the function generator and DMM.

Marker Output Tests

These procedures check the accuracy of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator marker output level.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **MARKER OUT:CH1 M1** connector through a SMB-to-BNC coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–32).

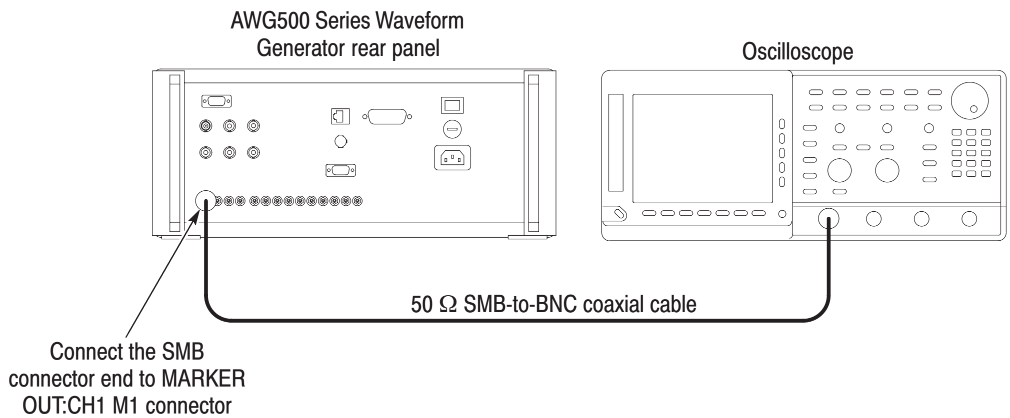


Figure B–32: Marker output initial test hookup

b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical CH1
- CH1 coupling . . . . DC
- CH1 scale . . . . 1 V/div
- CH1 input impedance . . . . 50 Ω
- CH1 offset . . . . 0 V

Horizontal
- Sweep . . . . 2 μs/div

Trigger
- Source CH1
- Coupling . . . . AC

Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*
Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select the waveform for the CH1:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

c. *Select the waveform for the CH2 (for the AWG520 only):*

- Push the **CH2** button.
- *Select the waveform:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

d. *Set the clock frequency:*

- Push **HORIZONTAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Clock** (side).
- *Enter numeric value of 100M:* Push **1**, **0**, **0** and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order.

e. *Set the marker controls for the CH1:*

- Push the **CH1** button.
- Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Marker...** (side)→ **Marker1 Low Level** (side).
- *Enter numeric value of –2:* Push **–, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order.
- Push the **Marker2 Low Level** side button.
- *Enter numeric value of –2:* Push **–, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

f. *Set the marker controls for the CH2:* Push **CH2** button instead of CH1 to do the procedures in step 2.e.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output:* Push the **RUN** , **CH1 OUT** and **CH2 OUT** button so that the RUN LED, CH1 OUT LED and CH2 OUT LED light.

***NOTE**. At the marker level measurements from an oscilloscope, do not measure the high and low level voltages that contain the ringing by overshoot or undershoot. Always perform the measurements after the level has been stabled.*

4. *Check CH1 marker output level accuracy:*

a. *Check Marker 1 output level:*

- Check that the reading for the low level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between –2.2 V and –1.8 V.
- *Check Marker 1 output high level:* Check that the reading for the high level on the oscilloscope screen is in the range between 1.8 V and 2.2 V.

b. *Change the hook up:* Disconnect the SMB-to-BNC cable from the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **MARKER OUT:CH1 M1** connector and connect it to the **MARKER OUT:CH1 M2** connector

c. *Check Marker 2 output level:*

- Check that the reading for the low level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between –2.2 V and –1.8 V.
- *Check Marker 1 output high level:* Check that the reading for the high level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between 1.8 V and 2.2 V.

5. *Check CH2 marker output level accuracy (for the AWG520 only):*

a. *Change the hook up:* Disconnect the SMB-to-BNC cable from the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **MARKER OUT:CH1 M2** connector and connect it to the **MARKER OUT:CH2 M1** connector

b. *Check Marker 1 output level:*

- *Check Marker 1 output low level:* Check that the reading for the low level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between –2.2 V and –1.8 V.
- *Check Marker 1 output high level:* Check that the reading for the high level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between 1.8 V and 2.2 V.

c. *Change the hook up:* Disconnect the SMB-to-BNC cable from the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **MARKER OUT:CH2 M1** connector and connect it to the **MARKER OUT:CH2 M2** connector

d. *Check Marker 2 output level:*

- *Check Marker 1 output low level:* Check that the reading for the low level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between –2.2 V and –1.8 V.
- *Check Marker 1 output high level:* Check that the reading for the high level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between 1.8 V and 2.2 V.

6. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Marker Delay Tests

These procedures check the marker delay function of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cables and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **MARKER OUT CH1:M1** and **M2** outputs through 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cables to the oscilloscope CH1 and CH2 input connectors, respectively (see Figure B–33).

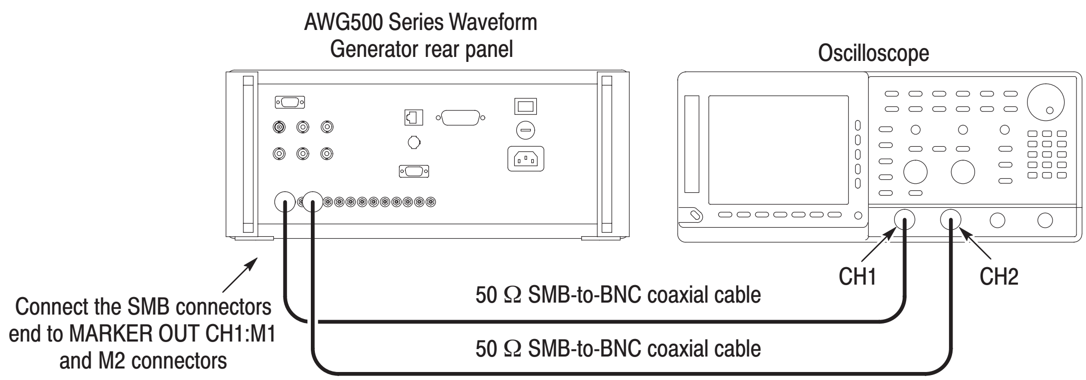


Figure B–33: Digital data output initial test hookup

   b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 and CH2 coupling	DC
CH1 and CH2 scale	1 V/div
CH1 and CH2 offset	0 V
CH1 and CH2 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	500 ps/div
Trigger	
Source	CH2
Coupling	DC

Slope	Positive
Level	1 V
Mode	Normal

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the waveform for the CH1:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output:* Push the **RUN** button so that the RUN LED lights.

4. *Check the CH1 Marker 1 delay function works:*

   a. Push **HORIZONTAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Marker 1 Delay** (side)

   b. Continuously change the Marker 1 delay from 0 s to 2.0 ns by turning the general purpose knob.

   c. Confirm that the Marker 1 output delay relative to the Marker 2 output varies from 0 s to about 2.0 ns on the oscilloscope screen.

5. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator and oscilloscope controls:*

   a. *Enter numeric value of 0 s:* Push **0** and **ENTER** keys to set the Marker 1 Delay back to 0 s.

   b. *Change the oscilloscope controls:* Change the oscilloscope trigger source from CH2 to CH1.

Trigger	
Source	CH1

6. *Check the CH1 Marker 2 delay function works:*

   a. Push the **Marker 2 Delay** side button.

   b. Continuously change the Marker 2 delay from 0 s to 2.0 ns by turning the general purpose knob.

   c. Confirm that the Marker 2 output delay relative to the Marker 1 output varies from 0 s to about 2.0 ns on the oscilloscope screen.

7. *Check the CH2 Marker delay if your instrument model is the AWG520:*

   a. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator and oscilloscope controls:*

      - *Enter numeric value of 0 s:* Push **0** and **ENTER** keys to set the Marker 2 Delay back to 0 s.

      - *Change the oscilloscope controls:* Change the oscilloscope trigger source from CH1 to CH2.

      Trigger
      Source CH2

   b. *Change the cable connection on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator:*

      - Disconnect the cable from the **MARKER OUT CH1: M1**, and connect the cable to the **MARKER OUT CH2: M1**.

      - Disconnect the cable from the **MARKER OUT CH1: M2**, and connect the cable to the **MARKER OUT CH2: M2**.

   c. Repeat the *Marker Delay Tests* for the CH2, in step 2.b.

8. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Digital Data Output Tests (Option 03 Only)

These procedures check the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator digital data output level accuracy and skew.

Check Output Levels

Equipment required	A 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cable, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **DIGITAL DATA OUT:D0** output through a 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cable to the oscilloscope input connector (see Figure B–34).

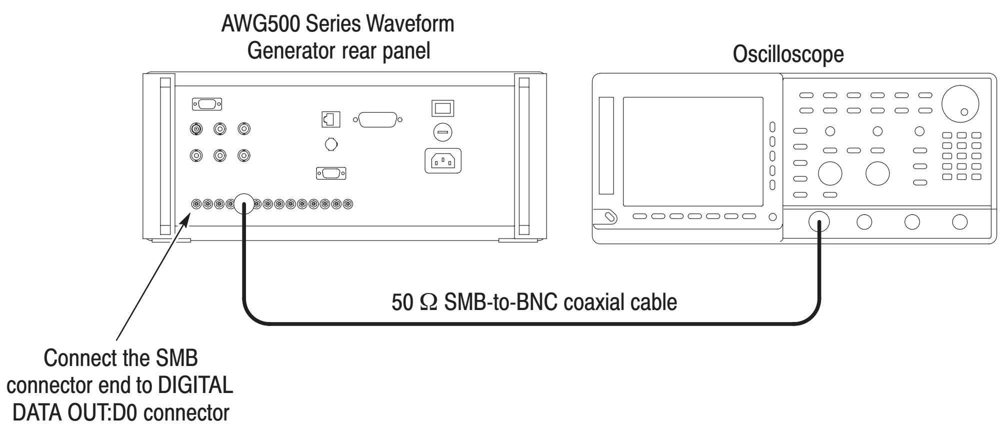


Figure B–34: Digital data output level initial test hookup

b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical CH1
- CH1 coupling . . . . DC
- CH1 scale . . . . 1 V/div
- CH1 offset . . . . 0 V
- CH1 input impedance . . . . 50 Ω

Horizontal
- Sweep . . . . 1 μs/div

Trigger
- Source CH1

Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*

a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. *Select waveform file for DIGITAL:*

- Push the **DIGITAL** button.
- *Select the waveform for the DIGITAL:* Load the **DOUT.PAT** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

c. *Set the digital data output low level:*

- *Set the low level:* Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front–panel)→ **Low Level** (side).
- *Enter numeric value of –2:* Push **–, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

d. *Turn on the digital data out:* Push the **Output** side button so that the Output is set to On.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output:* Push the **RUN** button so that the LEDs above the RUN button lights.

***NOTE**. At the output level measurements from an oscilloscope, do not measure the high and low level voltages that contain the ringing by overshoot or undershoot. Always perform the measurements after the level has been stabled.*

4. *Check the digital data output level accuracy:*

a. *Check the D0 output level:*

- *Check the low level:* Check the reading for the low level on the oscilloscope screen is within the range between –2.2 V and –1.8 V.
- *Check the high level:* Check the reading for the high level on the oscilloscope screen is in the range between 1.8 V and 2.2 V.

b. *Check the output level from D1 to D9:*

- *Change the cable connection:* Disconnect the SMB-to-BNC cable from the **DIGITAL DATA OUT:D0** connector and connect it to the

D1 connector. Proceed this step as changing the cable connection from D1 to D9

- *Check the low level, high level and period:* Do the procedures in step 4.a for each of **DIGITAL DATA OUT** connectors from **D1** to **D9**.

5. *End procedure:* Retain the AWG520 settings.

Check Skew

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cables (same length), and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **DIGITAL DATA OUT:D0** and **D1** outputs through 50 Ω SMB-to-BNC coaxial cables with the same length to the oscilloscope CH1 and CH2 input connectors, respectively (see Figure B–35).

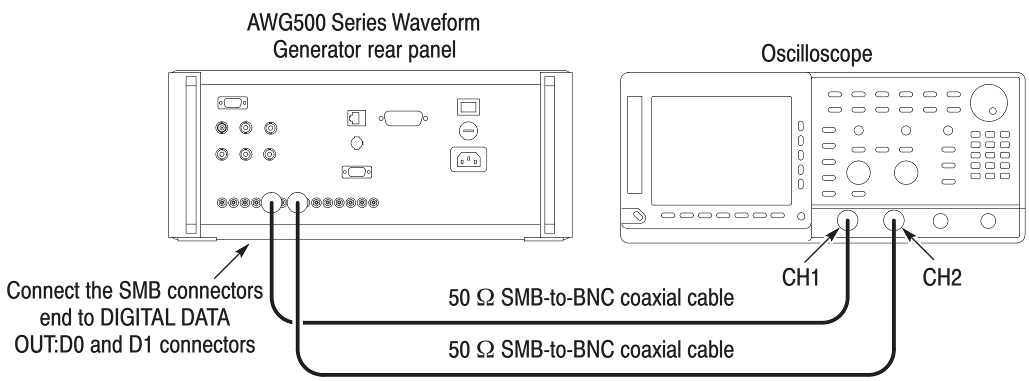


Figure B–35: Digital data output initial test hookup

b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 and CH2 coupling	DC
CH1 and CH2 scale	1 V/div
CH1 and CH2 offset	0 V
CH1 and Ch2 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	0.5 μs/div

Trigger
- Source CH1
- Coupling . . . . AC
- Slope . . . . Positive
- Level . . . . 0 V
- Mode . . . . Auto

2. *Measure the delay time at any combination of two digital data outputs:*

a. *W*rite the delay time read from the oscilloscope screen.

b. Do the step a as changing the cable from the oscilloscope CH2 connector to **Dx** to **D9**.

The **Dx** means the connector just right to the connector currently connected to the oscilloscope CH1 connector. For example, if the **D4** is connected to the oscilloscope CH1 connector in step c, **Dx** will be **D5**.

c. Do the step a and b for any two digital data outputs as changing the cable from the oscilloscope CH1 connector to **D0** to **D8**.

3. *Check the skew:*

a. *Find the maximum delay:* Find the maximum delay time from the values measured in step2 .

b. *Check the skew:* Check that the maximum delay time is equal to or less than 1 ns.

4. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Clock Output Tests

These procedures check the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator clock output signal.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **CLOCK OUT** output through a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the oscilloscope input connector (see Figure B–36).

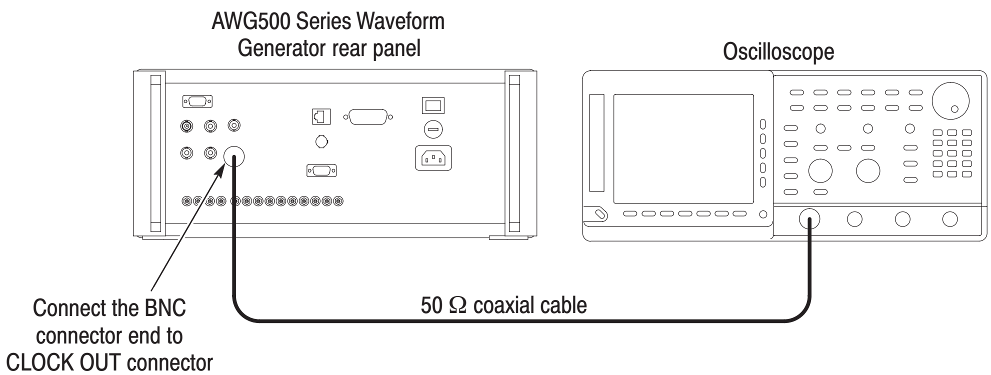


Figure B–36: Clock output initial test hookup

b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH1 offset	–1.3 V
CH1 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	5 ns/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive

Level . . . . 0 V
Mode . . . . Auto

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the waveform file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

   c. *Set the clock frequency:*

      - Push **HORIZONTAL MENU** (front–panel)→**Clock** (side).
      - *Enter numeric value of 50M:* Push **5**, **0** and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order.

3. *Turn on the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator output:* Push the **RUN** button so that the LEDs above the **RUN** button lights.

4. *Check the clock output signal: Check that the clock signal amplitude is equal to or larger than 0.5 V, and the clock signal period is 20 ns.*

5. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Noise Output Tests

This procedure checks the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator noise output characteristics.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a DC block, an adapter (N male to BNC female), and a spectrum analyzer.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the spectrum analyzer:* Connect the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator **NOISE OUT** connector through the coaxial cable, adapter, and DC Block to the input connector on the spectrum analyzer (see Figure B–37).

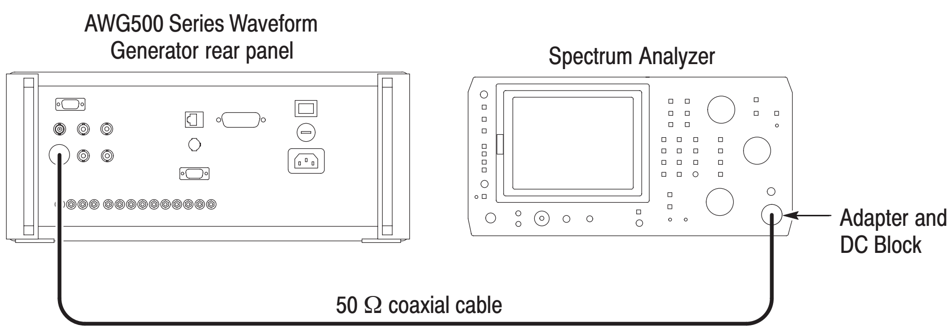


Figure B–37: Noise output initial test hookup

b. *Set spectrum analyzer controls:*

Center frequency	100 MHz
Full span	500 MHz
Vertical	10 dB/div
Reference level	0 dB/div
RF attenuation	20 dB
Video filter	10 kHz
Resolution BW	1 MHz

2. *Set the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator controls:* Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
   System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. *Select the waveform file:* Load the **MODE.WFM** as referring to the procedures on page B–10.

   c. *Set the noise on:*

      - Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→**NOISE** (bottom)→**Level** (side).
      - Set the noise level to **–105 dBm/Hz** using the general purpose knob.

   d. *Set the noise on:* Push the **Output** side button so that the **On** is selected

3. *Check noise level:*

   a. *Change the unit in the spectrum analyzer*: Change the unit to dBm/Hz when the dBm is currently set.

   b. *Check noise Level:* Check that the noise level of the spectrum displayed on the spectrum analyzer is –105 dBm/Hz $\pm$2.5 dBm/Hz at 100 MHz.

4. *End procedure:* Disconnect the spectrum analyzer.

Appendix C: Inspection and Cleaning

Inspect and clean the instrument as often as operating conditions require. The collection of dirt can cause instrument overheating and breakdown. Dirt acts as an insulating blanket, preventing efficient heat dissipation. Dirt also provides an electrical conduction path that can cause an instrument failure, especially under high-humidity conditions.

CAUTION. *Avoid the use of chemical cleaning agents that might damage the plastics used in this instrument. Use only deionized water when cleaning the menu buttons or front-panel buttons. Use a ethyl alcohol solution as a cleaner and rinse with deionized water.*

Exterior Inspection

Using Table C–1 as a guide, inspect the outside of the instrument for damage, wear, and missing parts. You should thoroughly check instruments that appear to have been dropped or otherwise abused to verify correct operation and performance. Immediately repair defects that could cause personal injury or lead to further damage to the instrument.

Table C–1: External Inspection Check List

Item	Inspect for	Repair action
Cabinet, front panel, and cover	Cracks, scratches, deformations, damaged hardware or gaskets	Replace defective module
Front-panel knobs	Missing, damaged, or loose knobs	Repair or replace missing or defective knobs
Connectors	Broken shells, cracked insulation, and deformed contacts. Dirt in connectors	Replace defective modules. Clear or wash out dirt
Carrying handle and cabinet feet	Correct operation	Replace defective module
Accessories	Missing items or parts of items, bent pins, broken or frayed cables, and damaged connectors	Replace damaged or missing items, frayed cables, and defective modules

Cleaning the Instrument Exterior

WARNING. *To avoid injury or death, unplug the power cord from line voltage before cleaning the instrument. Avoid getting moisture inside the instrument during external cleaning. Use only enough liquid to dampen the cloth or applicator.*

1. Remove loose dust on the outside of the instrument with a lint-free cloth.
2. Remove remaining dirt with a lint free cloth dampened in a general purpose detergent-and-water solution. Do not use abrasive cleaners.
3. Clean the monitor screen with a lint-free cloth dampened with either ethyl alcohol or, preferably, a gentle, general purpose detergent-and-water solution.

Cleaning the Instrument Interior

Only qualified personnel should access the inside of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator for inspection and cleaning, refer to the *Maintenance* section in the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator service manual.

Appendix D: Repacking for Shipment

If this instrument is shipped by commercial transportation, use the original packaging material. Unpack the instrument carefully from the shipping container to save the carton and packaging material for this purpose.

If the original packaging is unfit for use or is not available, repackage the instrument as follows:

1. Obtain a corrugated cardboard shipping carton having inside dimensions at least six inches greater than the instrument dimensions and having a carton test strength of at least 170 kg (375 pounds).
2. If the instrument is being shipped to a Tektronix Service Center for repair or calibration, attach a tag to the instrument showing the following: owner of the instrument (with address), the name of a person at your firm who may be contacted if additional information is needed, complete instrument type and serial number, and a description of the service required.
3. Wrap the instrument with polyethylene sheeting or equivalent to protect the outside finish and prevent entry of packing materials into the instrument.
4. Cushion the instrument on all sides by tightly packing dunnage or urethane foam between the carton and the instrument, allowing for three inches of padding on each side (including top and bottom).
5. Seal the carton with shipping tape or with an industrial stapler.
6. Mark the address of the Tektronix Service Center and your return address on the carton in one or more prominent locations.

NOTE*. Do not ship the instrument with a diskette inside the floppy disk drive. When the diskette is inside the drive, the disk release button sticks out. This makes the button more prone to damage than otherwise.*

Appendix E: Sample Waveforms

The files listed below are included in the route directory of the sample waveform library disk (063-2981-XX) that comes with the instrument.

There are 22 waveform and equation files. If a waveform file (with the extension **.WFM**) has the same name as an equation file (with the extension **.EQU**), the waveform file was derived by compiling that equation file.

Table E–1: Waveform and equation files in the sample disk

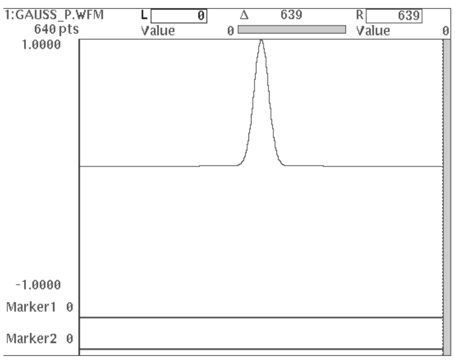
No	Waveform name	File name	
1	Gaussian Pulse	GAUSS_P.EQU	GAUSS_P.WFM
2	Lorents Pulse	LORENTZ.EQU	LORENTZ.WFM
3	Sampling Function SIN(X)/X Pulse	SINC.EQU	SINC.WFM
4	Squared Sine Pulse	SQU_SIN.EQU	SQU_SIN.WFM
5	Double Exponential Pulse	D_EXP.EQU	D_EXP.WFM
6	Nyquist Pulse	NYQUIST.EQU	NYQUIST.WFM
7	Linear Frequency Sweep	LIN_SWP.EQU	LIN_SWP.WFM
8	Log Frequency Sweep	LOG_SWP.EQU	LOG_SWP.WFM
9	Amplitude Modulation	AM.EQU	AM.WFM
10	Frequency Modulation	FM.EQU	FM.WFM
11	Pulse Width Modulation		PWM.WFM
12	Pseudo–random Pulse		PRBS9.WFM
13	Waveform for Magnetic Disk Signal		DISK.WFM
14	Isolated pulse for Disk application	PR4.EQU	
15	Isolated pulse for Disk application	PR4.EQU	
16	Isolated pulse for Disk application	PR4.EQU	
17	Isolated pulse for Network application		E1.WFM
18	Isolated pulse for Network application		DS1.WFM
19	Isolated pulse for Network application		DS1A.WFM
20	Isolated pulse for Network application		DS2.WFM
21	Isolated pulse for Network application		DS3.WFM
22	Isolated pulse for Network application		STS–1.WFM

These sample waveform and equation files can be copied, distributed, or modified according to your purposes.

Waveform File Descriptions

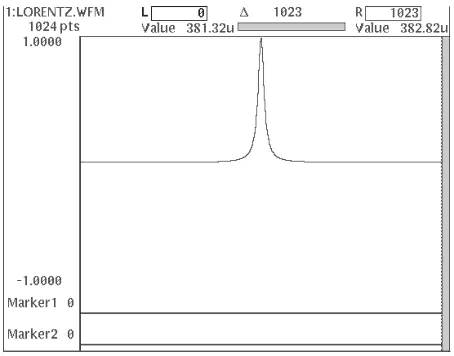
Here we will describe the 22 representative waveform files. Some of the waveform files were obtained by creating an equation file in the equation editor and then compiling it to create a waveform file. Others were created in the waveform editor or disk application. To output a waveform file, select the file in the SETUP menu.

Table E–2: Gaussian pulse



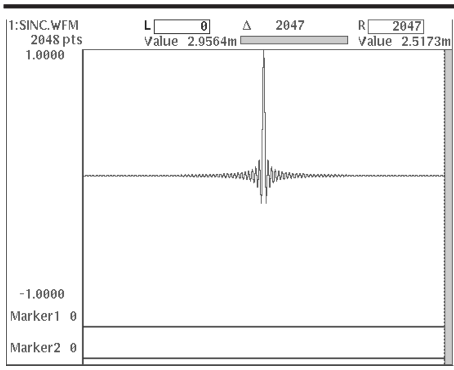
File name	GAUSS_P.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	size = 640 clock = 1e9 k0 = 30e–9 'pulse width k1 = 320e–9 'peak location "gauss_p.wfm" = exp(–log(2) * ((2* (time – k1) / k0) ^ 2))	
Descriptions	The waveform generated when the pulse width is taken to be t_{w50} and the peak location is taken to be 0 can be expressed as $V(t) = exp\left\{-In(2) \cdot \left(\frac{2t}{t_{w50}}\right)^2\right\}$. Substituting $\sigma = \frac{t_{w50}}{2\sqrt{2\ In(2)}}$ gives, and taking the Fourier transform gives $f(t) = exp\left(-\frac{t^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$ $F(j\omega) = \sqrt{2\pi}\,\sigma \cdot exp\left(-\frac{\omega^2\sigma^2}{2}\right)$. This shows that this signal has a form in the frequency domain as well.	
Example	When t_{w50} is 30 ns, the bandwidth will be 10.4 MHz.	
Settings	Waveform points: 640, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 640 ns	

Table E-3: Lorents pulse



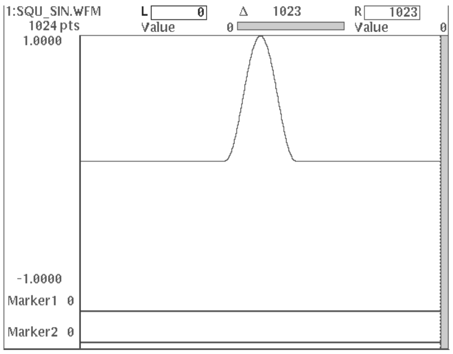
File name	LORENTZ_P.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	size = 1024 clock = 1e9 k0 = 20e–9 'pulse width k1 = 512e–9 'peak location "lorentz.wfm" = 1 / (1+(2*(time – k1) / k0) ^ 2)	
Descriptions	When the pulse width is taken to be t_{w50}, the waveform can be expressed by the following formula: $V(t) = \frac{1}{1 + \left(2\frac{t}{t_{w50}}\right)^2}$	
Settings	Waveform points: 1024, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 1024 ns	

Table E-4: Sampling function SIN(X)/X pulse



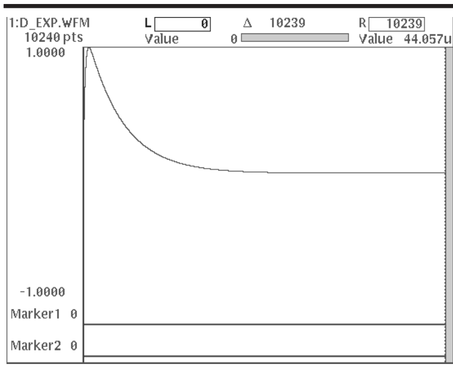
File name	SINC.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	size = 2048 clock = 1e9 k0 = 50e6 'sine frequency k1 = 1024e–9 'peak location "sinc.wfm" = sinc(2 * pi * k0 * (time – k1))	
Descriptions	In general, this waveform is expressed by the following formula: $V(t) = \frac{\sin(2\pi ft)}{2\pi ft}$ This is the impulse response for the ideal low pass filter for the frequency bandwidth f. At least 42 periods are required in order to use a vertical resolution of 8 bits.	
Settings	Waveform points: 2048, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 2048 ns	

Table E–5: Squared sine pulse



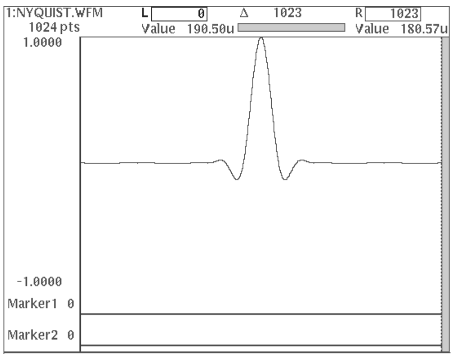
File name	SQU_SIN.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e9 size = 412 ”tmp1” = 0 size = 200 ”tmp2” = (cos (2 * pi * (scale – 0.5)) + 1) / 2 ”tmp3” = join (”tmp1”, ”tmp2”) ”squ_sin.wfm” = join (”tmp3”, ”tmp1”) delete (”tmp1”) delete (”tmp2”) delete (”tmp3”)	
Descriptions		
Settings	Waveform points: 1024, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 412 ns	

Table E–6: Double exponential pulse



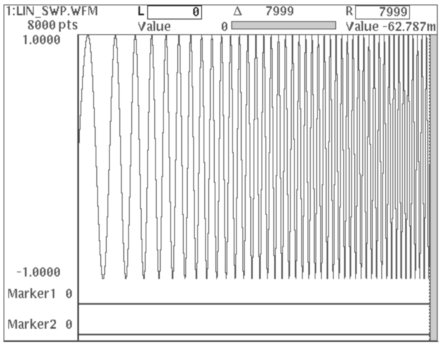
File name	D_EXP.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e9 size = 10240 k1 = 50e–9 ’rise time constant k2 = 1000e–9 ’fall time constant ”tmp” = exp (–time / k2) – exp (–time /k1) ”d_exp.efm” = norm (”tmp”) delete (”tmp”)	
Descriptions	This is the waveform when a charged capacitor is discharged to the RC circuit. When the time constants for charging and discharging are taken to be τ_1 and τ_2, respectively, the waveform can be expressed by the following formula: $V(t) = exp\left(-\frac{t}{\tau_2}\right) - exp\left(-\frac{t}{\tau_1}\right)$	
Settings	Waveform points: 10240, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 10240 ns	

Table E–7: Nyquist pulse



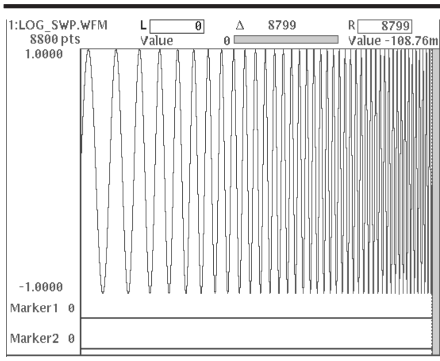
File name	NYQUIST.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e9 size = 1024 k0 = 50e–9 ’data period k1 = 512e–9 ’peak location a = 0.5 ’excess bandwidth factor 0 to 0.5 ”t” = (time – k1) / k0 ”nyquist.wfm” = cos(a * pi * ”t”) / (1 – (2 * a * ”t”) ^ 2) * sinc(pi * ”t”) delete (”t”)	
Descriptions	This is the impulse response of a wave shaping Nyquist filter. The shoulder characteristics of this filter are referred to as ”cosine roll-off” characteristics, and the bandwidth used can be varied. This waveform can be expressed by the following formula. $V(t) = \dfrac{\cos\left(\frac{\pi\alpha t}{T}\right)}{1-\left(\frac{2\alpha t}{T}\right)^2} \cdot \dfrac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right)}{\frac{\pi t}{T}}$ Here T is the data period and α is a value between 0 and 1. A wider band is required for values closer to 1, where ripple is reduced and implementation is easier.	
Settings	Waveform points: 1024, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 1024 ns	

Table E–8: Linear frequency sweep



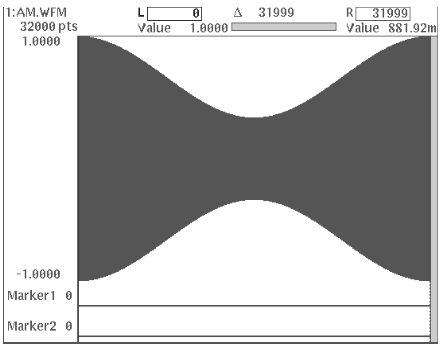
File name	LIN_SWP.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e9 size = 8000 k0 = 8e–6 ’sweep period k1 = 1e6 ’start frequency k2 = 10e6 ’end frequency ”lin_swp.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * k1 * time + 2 * pi * (k2 – k1) * (time ^ 2)/2/k0)	
Descriptions	This waveform can be expressed generally by the following formula. $V(t) = sin\left(2\pi f_1 t + 2\pi f_2 \int_0^t \frac{t}{T} dt + \phi_0\right)$ Here f_1 is the starting frequency, f_2 is the ending frequency, Φ_0 is the initial phase, and T is the sweep period. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the sweep period is set to be close to an integer multiple of the reciprocal of the average frequency $\frac{f_1 + f_2}{2}$.	
Settings	Waveform points: 8000, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 8000 ns	

Table E–9: Log frequency sweep



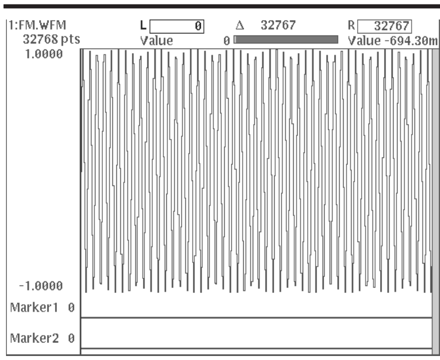
File name	LOG_SWP.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 800e6 size = 8800 k0 = 11e–6 ’sweep period k1 = 1e6 ’start frequency k2 = 10e6 ’end frequency k3 = log (k2 / k1) ”log_swp.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * k1 * k0 / k3 * (exp (k3 * scale) –1))	
Descriptions	This waveform can be expressed generally by the following formula. $V(t) = sin\left(2\pi f_1 \int_0^t exp\left(\frac{t}{T} \cdot In\frac{f_2}{f_1}\right) dt + \phi_0\right)$ Here f_1 is the starting frequency, f_2 is the ending frequency, Φ_0 is the initial phase, and T is the sweep period. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the sweep period is set to be close to an integer multiple of the reciprocal of the average frequency $\frac{f_2 - f_1}{In\frac{f_2}{f_1}}$.	
Settings	Waveform points: 8800, Clock frequency: 800 MHz, Output time: 11 μs	

Table E–10: Amplitude modulation



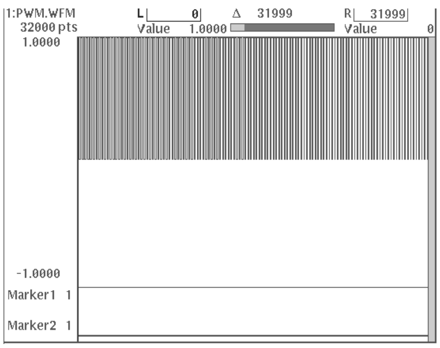
File name	AM.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1.28e6 size = 32000 k1 = 4000 ’modulation frequency k2 = 10e6 ’carrier frequency a = 0.5 ’modulation degree ”tmp” = (1 + a * cos(2 * pi * k1 * time)) * cos(2 * pi * k2 * time) ”am.wfm” = norm(”tmp”) delete (”tmp”)	
Descriptions	This example shows a double sideband (DSB) amplitude modulated waveform with a modulation factor of 0.5. The modulating signal is a cosine wave.	
Settings	Waveform points: 32000, Clock frequency: 128 MHz, Output time: 0.25 ms	

Table E–11: Frequency modulation



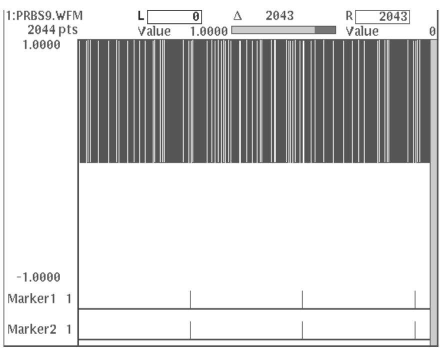
File name	FM.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 819.2e6 size = 32768 k0 = 25e3 ’modulation frequency k1 = 100e6 ’carrier frequency k2 = 60.12e3 ’frequency deviation ”fm.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * k1 * time + k2 / k0 * sin(2 * pi * k0 * time))	
Descriptions	k0 is the frequency of the cosine wave that is used to modulate a sine wave of frequency k1. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the carrier frequency times the modulating signal period is set to be an integer. The modulation index is given by k2/k0.	
Settings	Waveform points: 32768, Clock frequency: 819.2 MHz, Output time: 40 μs	

Table E–12: Pulse width modulation



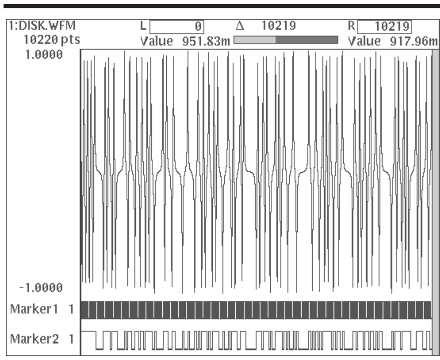
File name	PWM.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	The waveform editor is used to create a ramp wave of 1000 periods and a sine wave of 1 period, and these two waveforms are compared to create the PWM.WFM waveform.	
Settings	Waveform points: 32000, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 32 μs	

Table E–13: Pseudo-random pulse



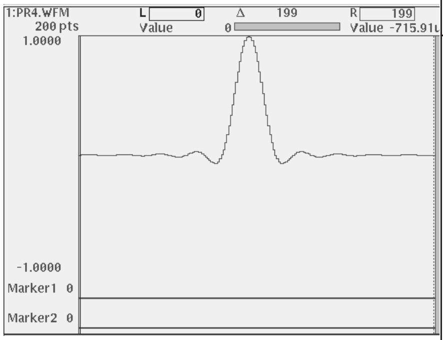
File name	PRBS9.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	An M-series pseudo-random signal is created using the waveform editor's timing display shift register generator function. Register length = 15 The encoding is NRZ.	
Settings	Waveform points: 2044 (2^9–1) x 4, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 2.044 μs	

Table E–14: Waveform for magnetic disk signal



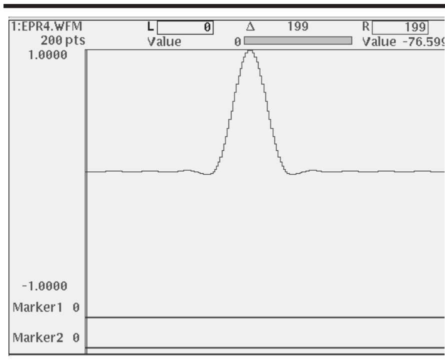
File name	DISK.WFM	Made with disk application
Descriptions	Creates a disk signal pattern with NRZ-I modulation using the disk application. This signal is created with default parameter settings. Samples/Cell 20 — NLTS 0% Cell Period 20 ns — NLTS+ 0% TAA+ 1.0 — NLTS– 0% TAA– –1.0 — Asymmetry 0% PW50+ 50 % PW50– 50% — The encoding is NRZ-I. A signal with the same pattern is set for the marker 1 as well.	
Settings	Waveform points: 10220, Clock frequency: 1.0 GHz, Output time: 10220 ns	

Table E–15: Isolated pulse for disk application



File name	PR4.EQU	Made with equation editor
Equation	’PR4 Pulse spcell = 10 ’Samples/Cell cperiod = 10e–9 ’Cell Period [sec] ncells = 20 ’Number of Cells clock = spcell/cperiod ’Samples/Cell / Cell Period [Hz] size = spcell*ncells ’Samples/Cell * Number of Cells k0 = ncells*pi ’Number of Cells * PI k1 = 0.5 a = pi/4 ”PR4.WFM” = a * (sinc(k0*(scale–k1)) + sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+pi))	
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the PR4. This sample equation makes the PR4.WFM waveform with 200 waveform points (Samples/Cell × Number of Cells).	
Settings		

Table E–16: Isolated pulse for disk application



File name	EPR4.EQU	Made with equation editor
Equation	’EPR4 Pulse spcell = 10 ’Samples/Cell cperiod = 10e–9 ’Cell Period [sec] ncells = 20 ’Number of Cells clock = spcell/cperiod ’Samples/Cell / Cell Period [Hz] size = spcell*ncells ’Samples/Cell * Number of Cells k0 = ncells*pi ’Number of Cells * PI k1 = 0.5 a = 0.5 ”EPR4.WFM” = a * (sinc(k0*(scale–k1)) + 2*sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+pi) +sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+2*pi))	
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the EPR4. This sample equation makes the EPR4.WFM waveform with 200 waveform points (Samples/Cell × Number of Cells).	
Settings		

Table E-17: Isolated pulse for disk application

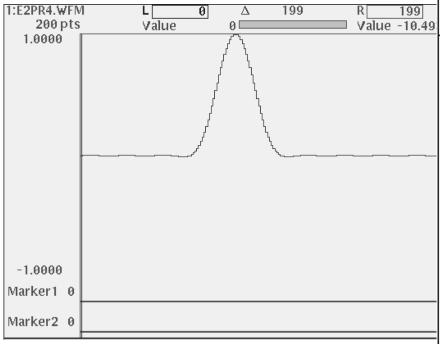
	**File name**	E2PR4.EQU	Made with equation editor
	Equation	'E2PR4 Pulse spcell = 10 'Samples/Cell cperiod = 10e-9 'Cell Period [sec] ncells = 20 'Number of Cells clock = spcell/cperiod 'Samples/Cell / Cell Period [Hz] size = spcell*ncells 'Samples/Cell * Number of Cells k0 = ncells*pi 'Number of Cells * PI k1 = 0.5 a = pi*3/32 "E2PR4.WFM" = a * (sinc(k0*(scale-k1)) + 3*sinc(k0*(scale-k1)+pi) + 3*sinc(k0*(scale-k1)+2*pi) + sinc(k0*(scale-k1)+3*pi))	
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the EPR4. This sample equation makes the EPR4.WFM waveform with 200 waveform points (Samples/Cell × Number of Cells).	
	Settings		

Table E-18: Isolated pulse for network application

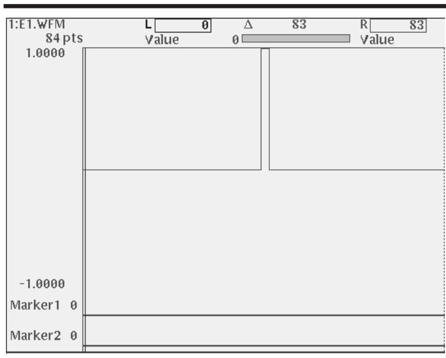
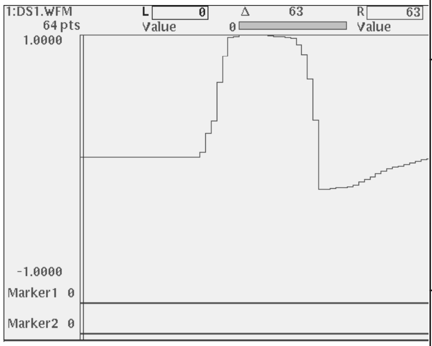
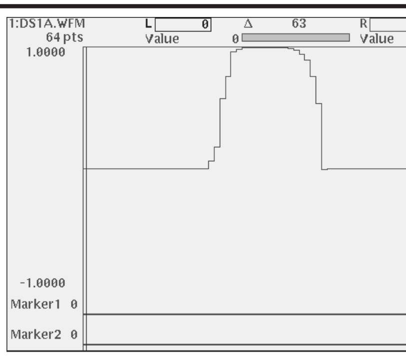
	**File name**	E1.WFM	Made with waveform editor
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the ITU-T E1. The number of waveform points is 84. This isolated pulse is applied to ITU-T E2, ITU-T E3, and T1.102 DS1C.	
	Settings		

Table E–19: Isolated pulse for network application



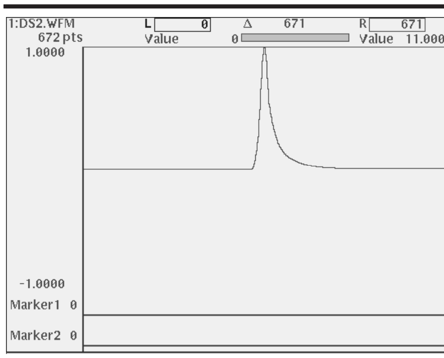
File name	DS1.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 DS1. The number of waveform points is 64.	
Settings		

Table E–20: Isolated pulse for network application



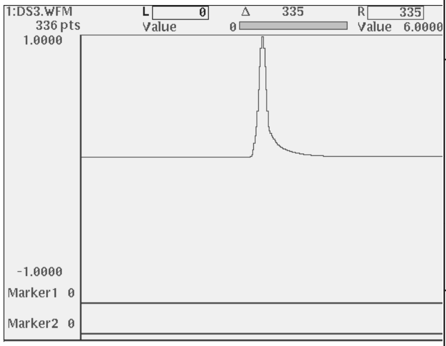
File name	DS1A.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 DS1A. The number of waveform points is 64.	
Settings		

Table E–21: Isolated pulse for network application



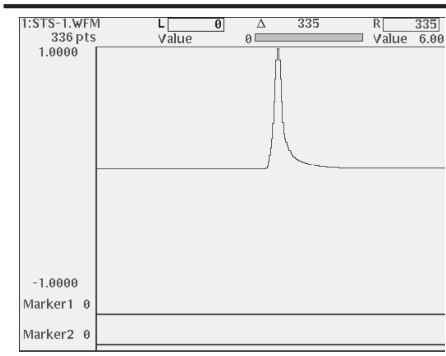
File name	DS2.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 DS2. The number of waveform points is 672.	
Settings		

Table E–22: Isolated pulse for network application



File name	DS3.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 DS3. The number of waveform points is 336.	
Settings		

Table E–23: Isolated pulse for network application



File name	STS–1.WFM	Made with waveform editor
Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 STS–1. The number of waveform points is 336.	
Settings		

Appendix F: Theory of Operation

This Appendix presents an overview of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator hardware, data structures, and operating modes to allow you to take full advantage of the AWG500-Series Waveform Generator.

Block Diagrams

Figure F–1 and F–2 show the main hardware blocks that make up the AWG510 and AWG520, respectively. This section describes these hardware blocks to provide the background knowledge necessary to use the instrument effectively.

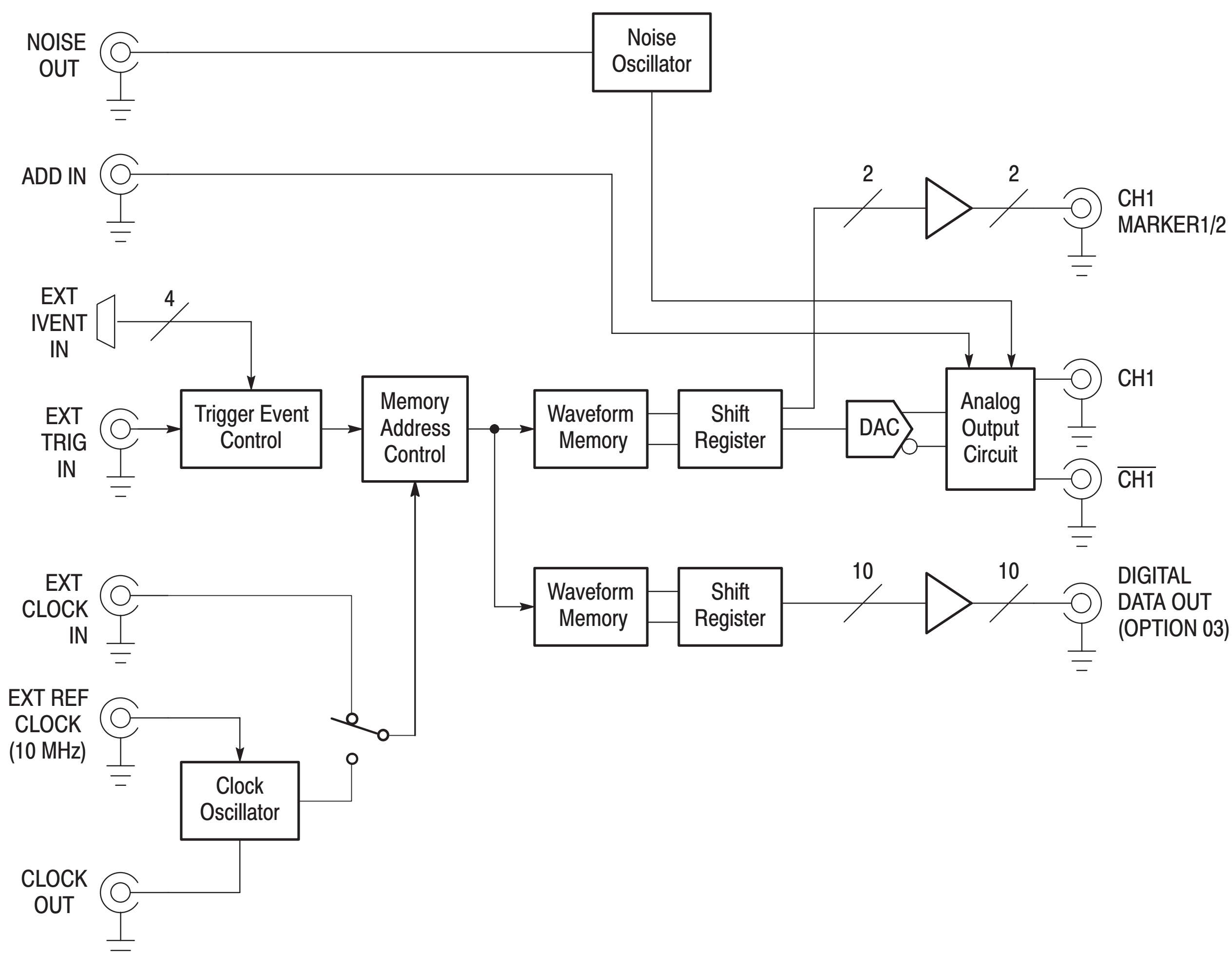


Figure F–1: AWG510 block diagram

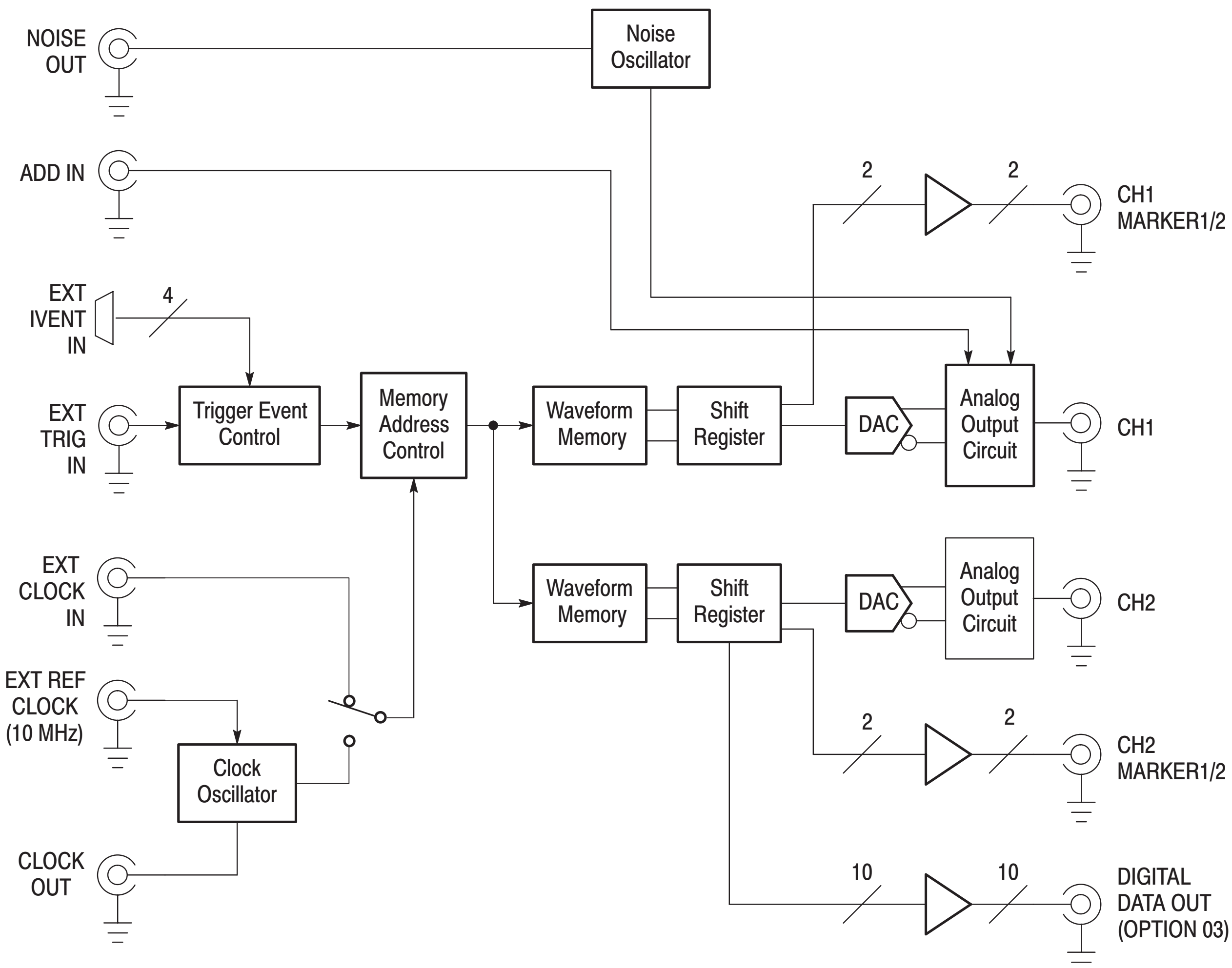


Figure F–2: AWG520 block diagram

CPU

The CPU Unit block controls the whole instrument, that contains the ROM, RAM, HDD, and external interfaces blocks.

The external interface addresses remote control via the GPIB, floppy disk connection, 10BASE-T Ethernet connection, user interface through the display screen and the front–panel, etc.

Clock Oscillator

The internal clock is derived from the reference clock oscillator or from the external reference clock connected 10MHz REF IN connector, which uses VCO, DDS (direct digital synthesis), and PLL circuit. A high-quality clock with a frequency of 50 kHz to 1 GHz, a resolution of 8 digits, and a low-jitter are being provided using the divider. Figure F–3 shows the clock oscillator configuration.

You can select either the internal or external reference clock source by using the SETUP horizontal menu.

If you select the external source, the reference signal connected to the 10 MHz REF In connector on the rear panel will be used.

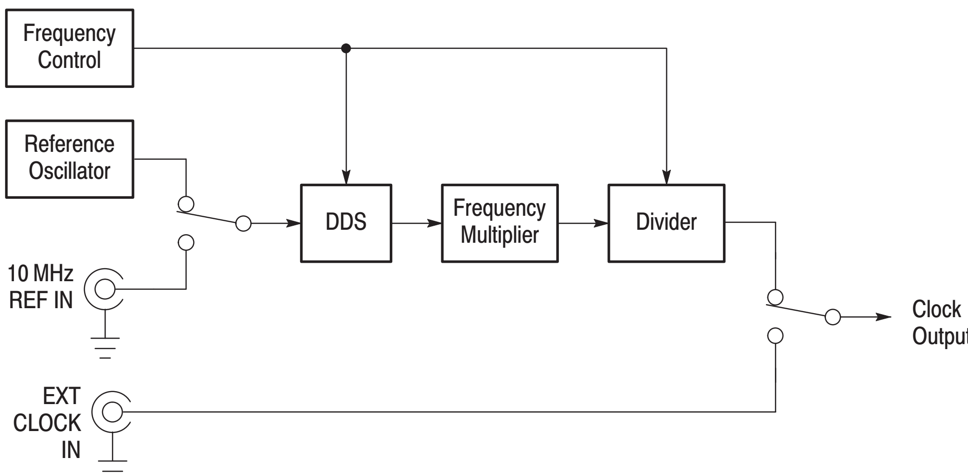


Figure F-3: Clock oscillator configuration.

External Clock input

If you select the external clock source by using the SETUP Horizontal Clock source, the external clock signal connected to the EXT CLOCK IN connector on the rear panel will be used.

Memory Address Control

This Memory Address Control controls the addresses used to read waveform memory data.

This block loads into the Address Counter the first address of the waveform loaded into the waveform memory. It loads the waveform data length to the Length Counter. The Address Counter specifies the point from which the waveform was generated, and the Length Counter the waveform ending position.

The Address and Length Counters operate with clocks produced by quarter frequency-division for the clocks from the clock oscillator.

If the repeat count value has been loaded in the Repeat Counter, the waveform is generated the specified number of times.

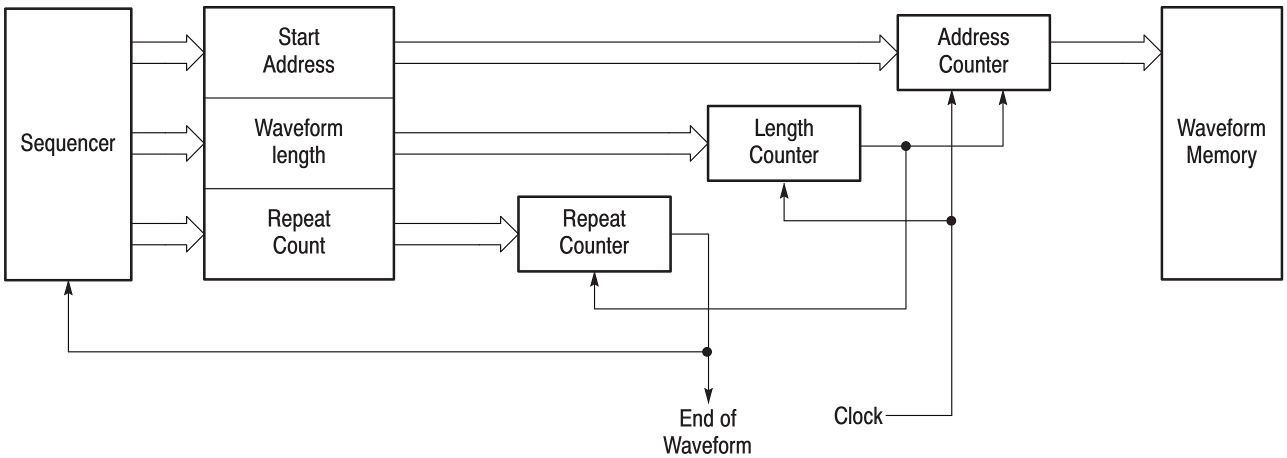


Figure F-4: Relationship between memory address control and waveform memory

This block also controls the sequence to the event signals generated in Enhanced Mode.

Trigger Control

The Trigger Control block controls Memory Address Control in the operation mode you specified from the RUN MODE menu.

RUN modes

Selecting a RUN mode from the SETUP menu causes one of the following to operate the Waveform Generator:

Table F-1: Run modes

Modes	Descriptions
Continuous	Consecutively output regardless of existence of a trigger signal.
Triggered	The output signal is obtained only once when one of the following is input: ■ An external trigger signal from the rear panel's TRIG IN connector. ■ A trigger signal generated with the front-panel's FORCE TRIGGER button. ■ A trigger command from the GPIB. ■ If the SEQUENCE has been defined, the TRIGGERED output is obtained only once according to the definition.

Table F-1: Run modes (Cont.)

Modes	Descriptions
Gated	The waveform is output only while: ■ An external trigger signal from the rear panel's TRIG IN connector or ■ A gate signal through the front-panel's FORCE TRIGGER button is TRUE.
Enhanced	The waveform is obtained, in the order defined with the sequence, based on: ■ A trigger signal (for example, an external trigger signal from the rear panel's TRIG IN connector) and ■ An event signal from the rear panel's EVENT IN connector.

Waveform Memory and Shift Register

The Waveform Memory block has 10 bits for waveform data and 2 bits per channel for markers, thus a total length of of 4M points. You can set any value from 256 points to 4 M points for the length of waveform data. It must be in increments of 4.

The Shift Register block is used to read waveform data from waveform memory at a rate up to 1 GS/s.

Analog Circuit and Noise Oscillator

The Analog Circuit block contains the Filter, Attenuator, Output Amplifier, and Offset Circuits, used to process signals generated from the DA Converter. It also contains the Adder Circuit, used to add the ADD IN signal coming from the rear panel ADD IN connector and the noise signals generated from the internal noise oscillator.

The noise signals from the internal noise oscillator are output through the NOISE OUT connector on the rear panel, and can be used as the ADD IN signal by controlling the gain.

Digital Data Output (Option 03)

For the AWG510, the 10-bit data is sent to another channel; for the AWG520, it is sent to the CH2 DAC. You can vary the output level using the SETUP menu.

Signal Output Process

This section describes operation of the instrument and the user operations flow up to the waveform output from the Waveform Generator.

First, the user should load the desired waveform data to be output into the waveform memory. New waveform data can be created using waveform editors incorporated in the Waveform Generator. It can also be created by combining:

- A sample waveform data distributed with floppy disks,
- Precreated waveform data on the built-in hard disk, and
- Waveform data measured or created by another equipment, which has been read via the network

According to the event control, the waveform data loaded into the waveform memory is fetched at the specified clock rate. This is done in the order in which the memory address controls were specified. After subjected to DA conversion, this data is sent to the Analog Circuit.

The waveform is output based on the amplitude, offset, and filter specified in the Analog Circuit. Signals from the built-in noise generator or externally from the ADD IN connector can be added to the waveform before being output.

Markers and optional digital data are output without passing through the DA Converter, resulting in change in amplitude and/or delay (for markers).

Waveform Data Structure

Each Waveform Generator file may be for either an analog (extension .WFM) or digital pattern (extension .PAT). For analog waveform, the DAC's full scale is represented as –1.0 to 1.0. This range is held with a resolution of 10 bits. The two pieces of marker information, as well as waveform data, are included. Any digital waveform is held as a total of 12-bit data (10-bit data and 2-bit marker).

About waveform and pattern files

You can load both the waveform and pattern file to output a waveform to the analog and digital output terminals. When you load a waveform file, the instrument converts to 10–bit digital pattern and stores into the waveform memory, while the instrument stores data in the pattern file into the waveform memory without any conversion.

The difference between these two files is just an internal format and editor to be edited. The waveform file format composes of 4–byte little endian and 1–byte for each point data and markers. The 4–bytes point data is expressed as IEEE488.2 floating point number. In the other hand, the pattern file format composes of 2–bytes including data and markers.

instrument, because the file volume of the pattern file is always less than that of the waveform file even though they are the same data length.

However, when you use waveform data to generate another waveform by mathematical operation such as multiplying, dividing, adding, etc., you must keep the waveform data as waveform file. The waveform file format exists for keeping the data precision in mathematical operations.

For more details about file format, refer to Data Transfer section in AWG500 Programmer Manual.

Waveform Edit

To enable editing, the Waveform Generator provides you with Waveform, Pattern, Sequence, Equation, and Text Editors. See Table F–2 for the explanations of those editors.

Table F–2: Editors

Editors	Descriptions
Waveform Editor	The Waveform Editor lets you create or edit a waveform that is being displayed on the screen. It enables you to create any waveform by operation such as cut and paste, partial inversion about the horizontal or vertical axis, shift, or scaling. This operation can be based on a standard waveform, such as a sine or rectangular wave, or the pre–created waveform. The Waveform Editor also has a unique feature that is capable of editing a waveform with waveform calculation functions (absolute value of waveform, differentiation/integration, convolution, correlation, addition/subtraction/multiplication between waveforms, etc.).
Pattern Editor	The Pattern Editor displays a digital signal pattern with a pattern data placed in 10-bit creation waveform memory; it creates a digital signal pattern according to the High/Low settings you made for the individual bits. In addition to the functions supported by the Waveform Editor, the Pattern Editor is capable of generating frequently used digital signals unique to digital signals and pseudo random patterns.
Sequence Editor	The Sequence Editor lets you create a more complex waveforms by combining a few types of waveform data you have created using Waveform and/or Pattern Editors. This editor also enables a Waveform listing jump and output stop to take place. They follow the external event information from the EVENT IN connector as well as the number of repetitions and the order for the individual pieces of waveform data.
Text Editor	The Text Editor creates a equation, more exactly, a waveform by a method of equations. When a equation has been created using this editor, you need to perform compiling. The Text Editor also enables you to edit a plain ASCII file. It should be used to edit ASCII-format waveform data created with another equipment as well as this instrument itself.

Quick Edit

The Quick Editor lets you modify and/or output any part of a waveform you are currently editing with the Waveform Editor. This is done in real time. The data between cursors can be scaled or shifted vertically and/or horizontally (Expand/Shift).

Appendix G: Sequence File Text Format

The sequence file saved by the sequence editor is an ASCII text file having the format described below. You can create a sequence file easily on a PC or other computer with an ASCII text editor.

```
MAGIC 3002
LINES <number>
<line description>
<line description>
      ...
<line description>
TABLE_JUMP 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
LOGIC_JUMP –1,–1,–1,–1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Header

The header line MAGIC 3002 lets the instrument recognize a text file as the sequence. This number must be put in the first line.

Line Descriptions

The LINES provides the information that the sequence is composed of a number of lines. From the third line to the line specified by <number> +2 are the sequence lines you should edit in the in the sequence editor.

The <line description> composes of 6 fields delimited by comma (,):

<F1>, <F2>, <F3>, <F4>, <F5>, <F6>

CH1 and CH2. The <F1> is a waveform file name for the CH1 and <F2> for the CH2. The waveform file name must be parenthesized with double–quotation.

```
<F1>::=
<F2>::=”<waveform file name>” | ”<pattern file name>” |
                ”<sequence file name>”
```

For example,

”SINE.WFM”, ”TRIANGLE.WFM”, ...

”GAUSSN.WFM”, ””, ...

””, ”TRIALGLE.WFM”, ...

When you do not define a file, *NULL* string (””) must be placed.

Repeat Count. The <F3> is Repeat Count field.

<F3>:=<Repeat Count>|<Infinity>

<Repeat Count>::= 1 to 65536
<Infinity>::= 0

Enhanced Controls. The <F4> to <F6> are Repeat Count, Wait Trigger, Goto One, and Logic Jump, respectively.

<F4>::=<Wait Trigger>

<Wait Trigger>::= 1 (On) or 0 (Off)

<F5>::=<Goto One>

<Goto One>::= 1 (On) or 0 (Off)

<F6>::=<Logic Jump>

<Logic Jump>::= <Line Number> (range: 1 to 8000)
0 (No definition)
–1 (Jump to next line)

Note that the Logic Jump setting is effective depending on the jump settings described in next paragraph.

Jump Settings

After the line descriptions, you place the jump setting descriptions as follows. They can be omitted when you use the current settings.

```
TABLE_JUMP 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
LOGIC_JUMP –1,–1,–1,–1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Jump Table Definition. The 16 entries of the table definition follow the table jump header TABLE_JUMP and a space, and must be delimited by comma (,):

TABLE_JUMP <space> <LLLL>, <LLLH>, <LLHL>, <LLHH>, <LHLL>, <LHLH>, <LHHL>, <LHHH>, <HLLL>, <HLLH>, <HLHL>, <HLHH>, <HHLL>, <HHLH>, <HHHL>, <HHHH>

Each of these entries must be:

<Entry>::= <Line Number> (range: 1 to 8000)
0 (No definition)

Logic Jump Definition. The 4 entries of the logic table definition follow the logic jump header LOGIC_JUMP and a space, and must be delimited by comma (,):

Logic Jump <space> <Pin-0 logic>, <Pin-1 logic>,
<Pin-2 logic>, <Pin-3 logic>

<Pin-n logic>::= –1 (for X, don’t care),
0 (for L, low state) or
1 (for H, high state)

Jump Mode Selection. The jump table or logic jump definition you define is effective depending on the jump mode setting as follows:

JUMP_MODE <space> <jump mode>

<jump mode>::= TABLE, LOGIC or SOFTWARE

Jump Timing and Strobe Settings.

JUMP_TIMING <space> <timing>

<timing>::= SYNC or ASYNC

STROBE <space> <strobe>

<strobe>::= 0 (for Off) or
1 (for On)

Examples

Two examples are shown here. They are the text versions of the sequence files that you can find in *Tutorial 6* of the *Operating Basics* section in this manual.

SUBSEQ.SEQ.

```
MAGIC 3002
LINES 4
”SQUARE.WFM”, ””, 40000, 0, 0, 0
”RAMP.WFM”, ””, 60000, 0, 0, 0
”TRIANGLE.WFM”, ””, 60000, 0, 0, 0
”SINE.WFM”, ””, 30000, 0, 0, 0
TABLE_JUMP 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,
LOGIC_JUMP –1, –1, –1, –1,
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Using the current instrument default settings, you can rewrite the above file as follows:

```
MAGIC 3002
LINES 4
”SQUARE.WFM”, ””, 40000
”RAMP.WFM”, ””, 60000
”TRIANGLE.WFM”, ””, 60000
”SINE.WFM”, ””, 30000
```

MAINSEQ.SEQ.

```
MAGIC 3002
LINES 4
”SUBSEQ.SEQ”,””,2,1,–1
”RAMP.WFM”,””,0,0,0,0
”TRIANGLE.WFM”,””,40000,0,1,4
”SINE.WFM”,””,60000,0,0,–1
TABLE_JUMP 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
LOGIC_JUMP –1,–1,–1,–1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Appendix H: Miscellaneous

This appendix covers the following items.

- Sampling theorem
- Differentiation
- Integration
- Convolution
- Correlation
- Code Conversion

Sampling Theorem

When the signal is continuous and the highest frequency component of the signal is f_0, sampling with Te1/2f_0 loses none of the data contained in the signal. T is the sampling interval. This theorem is well known as the sampling theorem. If data is created to meet this theorem, the necessary signal can be obtained.

$$X(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(nt) \frac{\sin\{(2\pi/T)(t-nT/2)\}}{(2\pi/T)(t-nT/2)}$$

A continuous analog signal x(t) can be reproduced from the digital data with the above equation. In the Waveform Generator, this is realized using a D/A converter.

Differentiation

The diff() function calculates the central deviation as the differential value. The equation below expresses the central deviation when the function f(x) is given at even intervals of Δx.

$$f'(x) = \frac{f(x+\Delta x)-f(x-\Delta x)}{(2\Delta x)}$$

In actual practice, when function f(x)is expressed by n values, the differential value $f'(x_i)$ at point x_i is given by the following equation:

$$f'(x_i) = n\frac{\{f(x_{i+1}) - f(x_{i-1})\}}{2}$$

Here, ”n” is the number of waveform points and ”i” is an integer in the range, i = 1, 2, ..., n.

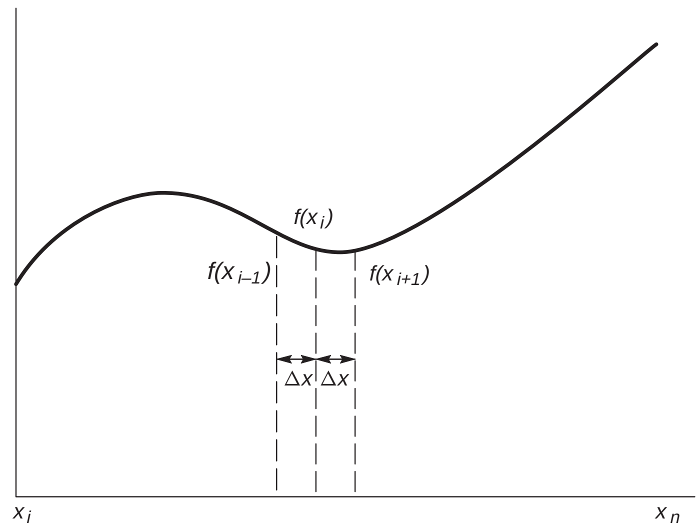


Figure H–1: Equation differentiation

The values at the first and last points are obtained not from the center deviation, but from the following equations:

First point

$$f'(x_1) = \frac{n\{-3f(x_1) + 4f(x_2) - f(x_3)\}}{2}$$

Last point

$$f'(x_n) = \frac{n\{f(x_{n-2}) - 4f(x_{n-1}) + 3f(x_n)\}}{2}$$

Integration

The integ() function integrates numerically based on a trapezoidal formula. The trapezoidal formula is expressed with the following equation:

$$\int f(x)dx = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{f(x_{i-1}) + f(x_i)}{2} \cdot \Delta x$$

$$= \Delta \frac{x}{2}\{f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \ldots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)\}$$

Here, n is the number of waveform points and i is an integer in the range i = 1, 2, ..., n.

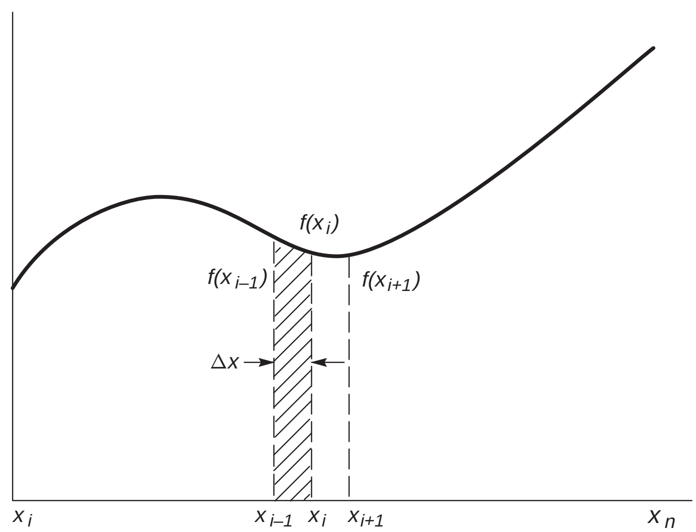


Figure H–2: Equation integration

The integration is actually calculated with the following formula.

$$\int f(x)dx = 1/2\{f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \ldots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)\}$$

However, the imaginary initial value $f(x_0)$ always takes a value of 0.

Convolution

The operation expressed by the following equation is called convolution. With respect to a discrete system, convolution y(n) of a certain waveform x(n) and a second one h(i) is expressed by the following equation. N is the number of items of data.

$$y\ (n)\ =\ \sum_{I=0}^{N-1} x(i)h(n\ +\ i)$$

Periodic. The Periodic enables you to specify whether the two-waveforms must be regarded as periodic during calculation. Below is an example showing differences between non-periodic and periodic waveforms.

Waveform A = a0, a1, a2, a3, a4 (5 points)
Waveform B = b0, b1, b2 (3 points)

For non-periodic case:

A×B =
a0b0,
a0b1+a1b0,
a0b2+a1b1+a2b0,
a1b2+a2b1+a3b0,
a2b2+a3b1+a4b0,
a3b2+a4b1,
a4b2,
0, (8 points)

The data length of the waveform created is the total of the number of points of the two-waveform files.

For periodic case:

A×B =
a0b2+a1b1+a2b0,
a1b2+a2b1+a3b0,
a2b2+a3b1+a4b0,
a3b2+a4b1+a0b0,
a4b2+a0b1+a1b0,
(5 points)

Waveforms A and B are regarded as periodic during calculation. The count of the operation of sum of products is equivalent to the length of the shorter waveform. The resulting waveform's cycle equals the same as the longer waveform. The actually output segment of the waveform corresponds to one cycle. The starting point value of the waveform equals the sum of products that is obtained with the starting point values of waveforms A and B added.

Correlation

The operation expressed by the following equation is called correlation. With respect to a discrete system, correlation y(n) of a certain waveform x(n) and a second one h(i) is expressed by the following equation. N is the number of items of data.

$$y\ (n)\ =\ \sum_{I=0}^{N-1} x(i)h(n\ +\ i)$$

Periodic. Periodic enables you to specify whether the two-waveforms must be regarded as periodic during calculation. Below is an example showing differences between nonperiodic and periodic waveforms.

Waveform A = a0, a1, a2, a3, a4 (5 points)
Waveform B = b0, b1, b2 (3 points)

For non-periodic case:

A×B = a0b2,
a0b1+a1b2,
a0b0+a1b1+a2b2,
a1b0+a2b1+a3b2,
a2b0+a3b1+a4b2,
a3b0+a4b1,
a4b0,
0, (8 points)

The data length of the waveform created is the total of the number of points of the two-waveform files.

For periodic case:

A×B = a0b0+a1b1+a2b2,
a1b0+a2b1+a3b2,
a2b0+a3b1+a4b2,
a3b0+a4b1+a0b2,
a4b0+a0b1+a1b2,
(5 points)

Waveforms A and B are regarded as periodic during calculation. The count of the operation of sum of products is equivalent to the length of the shorter waveform. The resulting waveform’s cycle equals the same as the longer waveform. The actually output segment of the waveform corresponds to one cycle. The starting point value of the waveform equals the sum of products that is obtained with the starting point values of waveforms A and B added.

Unlike convolution, the result of A×B and B×A are different in correlation. B×A is calculated as follows (B and A are those from the above example):

For nonperiodic case:

A×B = b0a4,
b0a3+b1a4,
b0a2+b1a3+b2a4,
b0a1+b1a2+b2a3,
b0a0+b1a1+b2a2,
b1a0+b2a1,
b2a0,
0, (8 points)

For periodic case:

A×B = b0a0+b1a1+b2a2,
b0a4+b1a0+b2a1,
b0a3+b1a4+b2a0,
b0a2+b1a3+b2a4,
b0a1+b1a2+b2a3,
(5 points)

Waveforms A and B are regarded as periodic during calculation. The count of the operation of sum of products is equivalent to the length of the shorter waveform. The resulting waveform's cycle equals the same as the longer waveform. The actually output segment of the waveform corresponds to one cycle. The starting point value of the waveform equals the sum of products that is obtained with the starting point values of waveforms A and B added.

Code Conversion

On the AWG510 and AWG520 Arbitrary Waveform Generator, it is possible to select the coding system used when pattern strings are output. If the code will be affected by the immediately preceding data, the data item just before the first item of data will be calculated as 0. The following tables show the coding systems.

Using the code conversion table, bit pattern can be converted to another. Figure H–3 shows an image how the code conversion table is used.

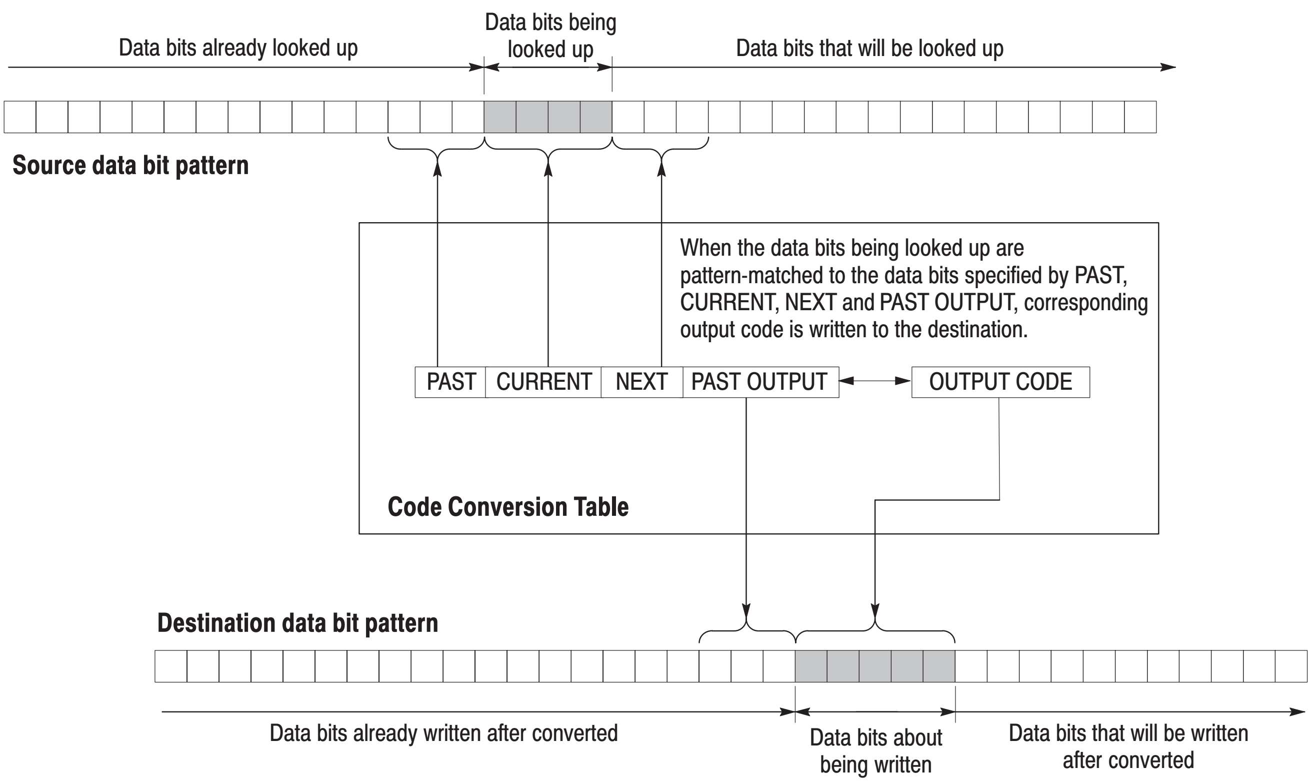


Figure H–3: Conversion image example

Examples

In following examples, data bits to be written in the tables are introduced. And input and output data bit pattern example is following each table.

- Inverting bit of the **NRZ** data.

Past	Current	Next	P.OUT	Output code
	0			1
	1			0

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1

- Converting NRZ data to **NRZI**.

Past	Current	Next	P.OUT	Output code
	1		0	1
	1		1	0
	0		0	0
	0		1	1

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1

- Converting NRZ data to **NRZI**. Two bit are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	1		0	01
	1		1	10
	0		0	00
	0		1	11

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	00	01	11	11	10	01	11	11	11

- Converting NRZ data to **FM**. Two bit are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0		0	11
	0		1	00
	1		0	10
	1		1	01

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	11	01	00	11	01	01	00	11	00

- Converting NRZ data to **BI-PHASE**. Two bit are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0			01
	1			10

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	01	10	01	01	10	10	01	01	01

- Converting NRZ data to **RZ**. Two bit are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0			00
	1			10

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	00	10	00	00	10	10	00	00	00

- Output bit is always set to 1 when input bit changes from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
0	1			1
1	0			1
	1			0
	0			0

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0

- Converting NRZ data to **1-7 RLL (Run-length Limited Codes)**.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0000		1	100000
	0000		0	011111
	0001		00	111111
	0001		01	111111
	0001		10	000000
	0001		11	000000
	0010		01	111110
	0010		10	000001
	0010		00	111110
	0010		11	000001
	0011		1	100001
	0011		0	011110
	01		1	100
	01		0	011
	10		01	111
	10		10	000
	10		00	111
	10		11	000
	11		01	110
	11		10	001
	11		00	110
	11		11	001
	0			0
	1			1

Example											
Input	01	10	11	0010	10	0011	11	0001	0011	10	0000
Output	011	000	110	000001	111	100001	110	000000	011110	000	011111

Code Conversion Table Text Files

The code conversion table is a just text file. You can easily create the code conversion tables also using a text editor on your PC or other computer. Here is the examples of the code conversion table text files that are also used in *Tutorial 6* on page 3–87.

nrz.txt	nrzi.txt	nrzi.txt
,0,,,1 ,1,,,0	,1,,0,1 ,1,,1,0 ,0,,0,0 ,0,,1,1	,1,,0,01 ,1,,1,10 ,0,,0,00 ,0,,1,11
fm.txt	**bi–phase.txt**	**rz.txt**
,0,,0,11 ,0,,1,00 ,1,,0,10 ,1,,1,01	,0,,,01 ,1,,,10	,0,,,00 ,1,,,10
special.txt	**1–7rill.txt**	
0,1,,,1 1,0,,,1 ,1,,,0 ,0,,,0	,0000,,1,100000 ,0000,,0,011111 ,0001,,00,111111 ,0001,,01,111111 ,0001,,10,000000 ,0001,,11,000000 ,0010,,01,111110 ,0010,,10,000001 ,0010,,00,111110 ,0010,,11,000001 ,0011,,1,100001 ,0011,,0,011110 ,01,,1,100 ,01,,0,011 ,10,,01,111 ,10,,10,000 ,10,,00,111 ,10,,11,000 ,11,,01,110 ,11,,10,001 ,11,,00,110 ,11,,11,001 ,0,,,0 ,1,,,1	

Index

D